THIRD EDITION

Rapid Instructional Design

Learning ID Fast and Right

George M. Piskurich

WILEY

Rapid Instructional Design

Learning ID Fast and Right

THIRD EDITION

George M. Piskurich

WILEY

Cover image: Abstract Speed Motion © iStock.com/nadia
Cover design: Wiley

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Copyright © 2015 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600, or on the web at www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: While the publisher and author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations or warranties with the respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom.

For general information about our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at (800) 762-2974, outside the United States at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at http://booksupport.wiley.com. For more information about Wiley products, visit www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data is on file.

978-1-118-97397-4 (pbk.)
978-1-118-97414-8 (ebk.)
978-1-118-97413-1 (ebk.)

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Tool List / vii

Preface for the Third Edition / xiii

Introduction / xv
Purpose / xv
Audiences / xvi
Special Elements / xvii
Organization of the Book / xix

Chapter 1 What Is This Instructional Design Stuff Anyway? / 1
Why Instructional Design? / 2
What Is Instructional Design? / 3
A Few Definitions / 5
Advantages of Instructional Design / 9
Disadvantages of Instructional Design / 13

Chapter 2 Before You Do Anything: Pre-Instructional Design Activities / 17
Organizational Needs / 18
Performance Assessment / 23
Assessing Training Needs / 33
Choosing Needs to Address / 39
The Needs Assessment Report / 42
Quick and Dirty Cost/Benefit Analysis / 47
Training Needs Analysis / 54

Chapter 3 Do You Know What You Need to Do? Analysis / 63
Data-Collection Methods / 64
Why Analyze? / 73
Types of Analysis / 73
Computer-Aided Analysis / 102

Chapter 4 How to Do It: Design / 107
Make the Right Decision Now / 107
Delivery Decision / 108
Objectives / 128
Design Documents / 143
Course Descriptions / 161
Gathering Content / 162
Adding Structure: The Instructional Plan / 168
Trainee Evaluation (Test Questions and Tests) / 178
Hints for Designing in Various Formats / 196

Chapter 5 Doing It Right: Development / 203
End Products of Development / 203
The Facilitator Guide as an End Product / 205
Scripts and Storyboards / 231
Participant Packages and Other Print Materials / 235
Other Media / 239
Hints for Developing Material / 247

Chapter 6 Getting It Where It Does the Most Good: Implementation / 263
Beta Tests and Pilots / 263
Reviews Revisited / 279
Common Implementation Issues / 282
Other Instructor-Led Classroom Implementation Needs / 287
Hints for Implementation / 299
Field Trips / 306

Chapter 7 Did It Do Any Good? Evaluation / 311
Why Evaluation? / 311
The Key to Good Evaluation / 312
Types of Evaluation / 315
Evaluation of Self-Instruction Programs / 334
Revisions: What to Do with What You've Learned / 338
Hints for Evaluating / 344

Chapter 8 Doing It Faster: More Rapid Design Shortcuts / 353
Software for Instructional Design / 354
Analysis Software / 355
Test Development Software / 355
Miscellaneous Software / 356
Rapid Prototyping / 356
Learning Objects/Granular Training / 357
Public Courses / 358
Off-The-Shelf Programs / 358
Technology Vendors / 358
Performance Support–Based "Training" / 359
Problem-Based Learning (PBL) / 361
Training Management Systems/Learning Management Systems (LMS)/Learning Content Management Systems (LCMS) / 361
Digital Cameras / 362
What Does an ID Do? / 362
Miscellaneous / 364

Chapter 9 Asynchronous e-Learning Design / 367
Definitions / 367
Creating and Implementing an e-Learning System / 369
Determining a Comprehensive e-Learning Strategy / 371
Designing and Developing Good Programs / 373
Learning Management Systems and Learning Content Management Systems / 374
Preparing the Organization Globally for e-Learning / 378
Self-Direction and e-Learning / 380
Planning for a Smooth, Successful Implementation / 384
Creating an Effective Monitoring and Evaluation Plan / 385
Asynchronous e-Learning Design and Development / 387
Analysis / 387
Material Development / 390
Learner Evaluation / 397
Learner Interfaces / 398
Beta Tests and Pilots / 399
Software / 400
Repurposing / 401
Evaluating Asynchronous e-Learning Programs / 403
Summary / 403

Chapter 10 Synchronous e-Learning Design / 409
Advantages / 409
Disadvantages and Misconceptions / 410
Design Considerations for Synchronous e-Learning / 413
Mini-Interactions / 414
Repurposing and Redesigning Synchronous e-Learning Programs / 415
Other Synchronous Activities / 416
More Detailed Facilitator Guides / 419
Learner Guide / 422
General Technology Considerations / 423
Media / 425
Designing Continuing Interactions / 430
Audience Analysis / 432
Implementation / 434
Online Learning: A Special Type of e-Learning / 446
What the Learners Say / 451

Chapter 11 New Design Applications / 453
Flipped Classrooms / 453
Mobile Learning / 457
Virtual Learning Environments / 461
Social Network–Based Learning / 463
Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs) / 466
Communities of Practice / 468
Informal Learning / 469
The Cloud / 471

Glossary / 475

Suggested Readings / 499

Other Resources / 511

About the Author / 517

Index / 519

Tool List

Chapter 1

Checklist: Do I Need Instructional Design? / 15

Chapter 2

Performance Assessment Questions / 32
Training Needs Assessment Questions for Management / 34
Training Needs Assessment Questions for Individual Contributors / 35
Training Needs Assessment Template for Managers / 36
Needs Assessment Instrument (Performance vs. Training) / 36
Subject-Matter Expert Selection Form / 39
Needs Consideration Questions / 41
Selection Criteria Worksheet for Level 4 Evaluation / 42
Outline Template for a Training Needs Assessment Report / 44
Training Needs Assessment Report / 45
Items to Consider When Calculating Training Costs / 49
Some Average Costs for Training Resources and Time for Development / 50
High-Level Assessment/Analysis Terminology / 55
Training Needs Analysis Template / 56

Complex Training Analysis Document / 57
Program Analysis Report (Short) / 61

Chapter 3

Observation Form / 72
Job Analysis Template / 81
Criticality Matrix Example / 82
Job and Criticality Analysis Form / 83
Task Analysis Form 1 / 86
Data That May Be Collected During a Job/Task Analysis / 88
Task Analysis Form 2 / 88
Training Task Analysis Template / 90
Learning Analysis Template / 91
Audience Analysis Questions (for Managers/Initiators) / 94
Audience Analysis Template / 95
Top Audience Characteristics / 97
Audience Analysis Report / 98
Job Analysis Template / 102

Chapter 4

Classroom Training / 111
On-the-Job Training / 111
Self-Instruction / 112
Technology-Based Training / 112
e-Learning (Instructor-Led or Self-Instruction) / 113
Job Performance Aids / 113
Selecting Delivery Method by Project Constraints / 119
Final Criteria for Delivery Selection / 122
Behavioral Verbs / 134
Design Document Template / 143
Simple Design Document Template / 145

Complex Design Document Template / 145
Formal Design Document / 147
SME Roles in Instructional Design / 165
Content Roadmap / 170
Trainer Certification Checklist / 182
Operations Department Final Checklist / 183
Objective Checklist / 184
Designing in Various Testing Formats / 186
Questions / 191
Test Question Critiquing List / 193

Chapter 5

Sample Facilitator Guide / 205
Facilitator Guide Development Job Aid / 229
Checklist for Developing Print Material / 238
Course Materials Reference List / 240
ISD Quality Review / 240
Checklist for Reviewing Facilitator Guides or Trainer Manuals / 246
Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development / 256
Hints for Better DVD (Multimedia) Program Development / 257
e-Learning Design Hints / 259
Video Shot List/Log / 261
Video Production Checklist / 261

Chapter 6

Running a Beta Test / 267
Beta Test Questions / 267
Beta Test/Pilot Review Checklist / 272
Instructional Designer's Pilot Observation Tool / 274
Pilot Observer Evaluation Sheet / 276
Pilot Participant Survey / 277

Pilot Presenter Evaluation / 279
Instructor Feedback Observation Form / 288
Faculty Strategy Plan Template / 290
Instructor Checklist / 291
Self-Instruction Facilitator Checklist / 293
Conducting a Distributed Self-Instructional Implementation / 302
Operating a Learning Center / 303
Field Trip Checklist / 306

Chapter 7

Reaction Instrument 1 / 318
Reaction Instrument 2 / 318
Reaction Instrument 3 / 319
Reaction Instrument 4 / 319
e-Learning Level 1 Evaluation Instrument / 321
Transfer to Job Instrument 1 / 326
Transfer to Job Instrument 2 / 327
Transfer to Job Instrument 3 / 328
Level 3 Evaluation Instrument for Managers / 329
Store Manager Questionnaire / 335
Survey on Self-Instructional Packages / 336
Course Maintenance Planning / 342
Evaluation for Self-Instruction / 345
Self-Instructional Learning Facilitator Survey / 345
Blended Level 1 Evaluation / 349

Chapter 8

Seven Rules for Good Instructional Design / 365

Chapter 9

Questions to Consider When Analyzing Your Organization's Readiness for e-Learning / 372

Preparing to Be an Asynchronous e-Learner Job Aid / 383

e-Learning Self-Assessment / 384

Self-Directed Learning Plan / 389

Web-Based Training Layout / 391

e-Learning Design Hints / 404

Questions for e-learning System Development / 405

Your Twenty Questions for e-Learning Checklist / 406

Chapter 10

Facilitator Guide Template / 420

Media Formats / 426

Continuing Interaction Activity / 431

Job Aid: General Virtual Facilitation Skills / 435

Job Aid: Facilitating Virtual Interactions / 436

Virtual Facilitator Self-Assessment / 438

Tips for Interacting Successfully Online / 442

A Self-Assessment of Personal Synchronous e-learning Characteristics / 443

Synchronous Class Initiation Checklist / 444

Online Decision Job Aid / 450

Preface for the Third Edition

I find it kind of hard to believe that the first edition of this book came out in 2000, and the second edition in 2006. In those fourteen years, and even in the last six, so much has changed in the field of instructional design. Delivery systems that were the gold standard when the first edition was published have almost disappeared, others that were barely on the cutting edge are now not just normal everyday deliveries, but required knowledge for instructional design (ID), and still others that weren't even a ghost of a whisper when the second edition came out are now mainstream enough to be at least a possibility in the ID tool kit.

Yet, even with all these changes, the basics of instructional design remain. ISD and ADDIE have been challenged more times than I can count in those fourteen years by various methodologies and their associated acronyms that have appeared, flourished for a time, then died away as designers went back to what they knew worked. Today we have AGILE and SAM, both of which have very strong and useful conceptualizations going for them, but that are, in the end, based on the tried-and-true ISD concepts of analysis, design, development, implementation, and evaluation.

That being said, why a third edition of this book? Well, first, those prickly new delivery systems need to be addressed. They range from the somewhat simple concept of flipped classrooms to the mysteries of "the Cloud" and what it means to the designer. In between is the philosophical concept of "social network based learning," and how you use it, control it (if that's possible, and

if you really want to) and how to design for it. So this edition will discuss these concepts as they affect the designer, at least as much as we can, considering that they are so new that there hasn't been all that much practical application done with them yet.

Second, some of the templates and figures needed a bit of revision, as time and the discipline have passed them by. I'm afraid I went a bit overboard on this, as you'll find over twenty-five new templates, checklists, and figures in this edition, ranging from a checklist on how to design a field trip to a new blended learning evaluation instrument.

And finally, there was a need to correct some mistakes (as those who have been using the first and second editions have been telling me) and rectify some omissions, such as planning for communicating and marketing programs, and the important task of training facilitators to facilitate.

We also took the instructor's guide out and put it online, so the book is not quite as hefty (although it won't be as good a doorstop) and to make it easy for you to download and use the templates and such.

So here's hoping this edition continues the purpose of the previous two in helping to make you a better instructional designer, and doing that more effectively and efficiently, as any good instructional design should.

— George

Introduction

PURPOSE

The purpose of this book is to consider how to make both the learning and doing of instructional design faster. Proper instructional design is an absolutely critical, but very time-consuming, aspect of any training process, so finding techniques to do it right—but rapidly—is important, and the benefits of employing these techniques are pretty obvious.

This book covers all the basics of instructional design, from analysis to evaluation, and perhaps just a little more, but does so without the theory, with plenty of practical checklists, and with many hints on how to design better and more quickly in this age of technology-based training.

Some might say that in dealing with basic instructional design this book is treading on much furrowed ground. Although this might be the case, we will be using a somewhat different type of plow; and perhaps it is time to revisit that ground, particularly from a new perspective.

At a recent international training conference exposition, I took a tour of the various publishers' booths and asked for books on instructional design. There weren't many to choose from, and most of the ones I did find were based on this or that new theory of learning. It seems that the most utilized and recommended basic instructional design book is still Dick and Carey's (1990) *The Systematic Design of Instruction*, which, even in its third edition, is ten years old.

By no means am I suggesting that this book should or will replace Dick and Carey; the focus, audience, and tone are all very different. However, the intent is pretty much the same: to discuss the most effective methods for designing instruction, albeit in this case, how to design more rapidly.

Instructional design is a difficult topic to write about at best. It seems that no matter what you say or how you say it you'll miss the mark for someone. You'll be too theoretical for some, yet not theoretical enough for others; too simplistic in your explanations or not basic enough; too focused on the needs of the new designer, or the needs of experienced practitioners; and what about the "sometimes designer"; and so on.

Add to this quandary the concept of *rapid* instructional design with questions such as: What can you skip in the design process? What had you better *not* skip unless you truly know what you're doing? Can it be rapid and still be right?, and you're simply asking for more trouble. So what can I say except, "We're asking."

AUDIENCES

The concept of rapid instructional design means different things to different people, and therefore there are a number of intended audiences for this book.

The first and perhaps foremost are those I term *occasional* designers. These are individuals who, because of their subject-matter expertise, are called on to train others from time to time, and not just to "do" the training, but to create it. For you, this book will present a basic instructional design methodology that will help you to create effective training. By "effective" we mean training that meets the needs of your trainees and of those who assigned you this task. The process will be rapid because we've left out the theory and provided numerous checklists to help you through the process.

The second audience is those individuals who, without really planning it or in most cases being prepared for it, have become training professionals. I've met many of you in my wanderings. Sometimes you're assigned to a training position for a year or two as part of your career development or because the company needs you there. Others have been excellent occasional trainers who for one reason or another find themselves permanently assigned to a training function, or who become personally responsible for all the training for their work groups.

What you all have in common is that you want to do a good job, but you need the right tools. This book will provide you with those tools—everything from analyzing your work group or company for training needs to evaluating programs to make sure those needs have been met—and all the design and development required in between. Once again, we'll do it rapidly, with minimal theory and maximum practical information in the form of hints for doing what needs to be done better and faster.

The third audience is comprised of those who need to know about instructional design but are not, and probably never will be, practitioners. This includes managers and administrators who must make decisions about

what training their work groups require and how to do it most efficiently, human resources professionals who need to understand a bit about instructional design as part of their job responsibilities, and my sales colleagues in training and consulting organizations who are responsible for helping their clients understand what this instructional design "stuff" (particularly new technology training) is all about.

The final audience is seasoned practitioners who are looking for rapid methods for doing instructional design. We will not be exploring these concepts in detail in this book, but we will recognize and discuss them. We'll explore how they fit into the basic instructional design process, both as we encounter them, and in the last chapter.

SPECIAL ELEMENTS

To deal with these various audiences and their varied needs, this book has some special elements in it. One of the most obvious is the icons. There are two basic types of icons that you might see at the beginning of a section or sub-section. The first is a . This means that this area is *not critical for an occasional designer*. If you are a reader who is basically a subject-matter expert asked to design and teach a specific course, when you see the icon you can probably skip this section with no harm done. It's not that the concepts discussed in these sections are not important to instructional design, it's just that because you are designing a single course for which you are the expert, the topic has been decided on, and no one will teach it but you, doing everything in these sections would be overkill, or not particularly useful for you. Remember, we are affecting *rapid* instructional design here, so you should only do what you really need to do for your training situation.

This process is called *situational instructional design*, and we could fill the entire book with all the various instructional design situations and what you should do in each. However, for the sake of creating a book that might be read, instead of one that makes a great doorstop, we'll only deal with this one general situation as it relates to one of our chosen audiences. Once again, if you are a subject-matter expert, designing and instructing for a topic that has been assigned to you, you can skip the areas marked with a .

You'll also find areas marked with the icon without a slash. These are areas of *special interest to you as an occasional designer*. Most often they will be places where we'll tell you how you can shortcut the concept we are discussing, due to your particular situation.

The second type of icon is an . A means that the information following is a rapid design *shortcut*. This is mainly for readers who are seasoned practitioners, to help them find the rapid design aspects of the book without reading through a lot of what they already know. It does not mean that those

readers who are in our other audiences should not read these pieces; there is almost always some useful information in a section for everyone. However, using the rapid techniques might not be the best approach for an inexperienced designer.

For our other audiences, you should be able to utilize just about everything in the book somewhere along the line in your instructional design processes.

A second special element, besides the icons, is the recommended resources. Each is what I consider to be the best book, magazine article, or website for further information on the topic. You'll find them in every chapter whenever I have a recommendation for a new topic or concept as it's introduced. These resources are mainly for those readers who need to know more, such as those of you who have just taken on full-time training or training management responsibilities. The full references are provided at the end of the book, within sections and alphabetical by title.

Now I don't want to start a big controversy with my recommendations, so please note that these are only my opinions, and only in relation to the specific audiences we just discussed. Please don't call, write, or e-mail asking why I didn't choose such and such, or how could I have missed so and so. I'll be more than glad to hear from you concerning nearly anything else in the book, or instructional design, or training in general.

Another special element is the *hints* at the end of some of the chapters. One of the difficulties in talking about instructional design is that sooner or later you get off on tangents, particularly when you begin to discuss delivery systems. As we wanted to make the basic information in this book as simple and straightforward as possible for the new or occasional designer, we took many of these "branches" and simply made bulleted lists for them, included in the hints area. Some of these lists are pretty extensive, particularly when discussing media formats, but don't forget that they are resources, not intended to be read as a list. Refer to them as required for your needs. Simply reading through them will not be particularly effective.

There is also a Glossary. The definitions there are a combination of ones that are more or less accepted and others that are simply practical. Some are mine; some are borrowed in part or whole from others. We'll note within a chapter when a certain usage might be more relevant for this book. However, the Glossary goes well beyond this to explore a number of possible terms and definitions. For example, we'll use "trainee" rather than "student" and "trainer" instead of "instructor" in most cases in this book, but you'll find all of these terms in the Glossary.

The Suggested Readings at the end of the book are exactly that, not references or a bibliography. They are divided by topical area to make it easier

for you to use, although some books tend to spill over into a number of topics. They are alphabetized, not prioritized.

The Other Resources listing at the end of the book contains mostly websites that have information on the various topics and some pointers to periodicals or groups that can help you if you need to explore a concept in greater detail, or if you just like electronic communications better than print.

ORGANIZATION OF THE BOOK

The problem with organizing any instructional design book is that the instructional design process is not what it seems, or at least not what most people make it out to be. It is not a simple linear method that starts with analysis and moves on through stages to evaluation, even though that's what you see in most models. Instead, it's more like a connected circle with the end feeding back into the beginning, or even a web with all of the aspects interconnected and leading to parts of each other.

But because a book is linear, the organization of instructional design herein will be as well, using the tried-and-true five-component design model of analysis, design, development, implementation, and evaluation. We'll start with a basic introduction and some thoughts on why instructional design is important. Don't get this "why" confused with theory. I think it's important here and there to have a brief discussion of *why* you want to do certain aspects of instructional design, particularly the process as a whole; but we won't be looking at the theory behind the why, just the practical necessity.

Believe it or not this is a good place for the first of those rapid design hints we just discussed. Because instructional design is like a web, you don't have to complete all of one component before moving on to the next. For example, you may choose to begin developing some of your training material even as you're finishing the analysis component. You may need to do a little rewriting at the end, but the majority of what you do will be fine, and you won't have wasted time waiting for all the analysis data to be in before moving on.

Chapter 2 deals with what might be termed pre-design activities, that is, things that need to be done before you actually begin to design your program. This includes concepts such as training needs assessments, performance assessments, and cost/benefit analysis. If you're an occasional designer, most of Chapter 2 will be less important to you; whereas if you are newly in charge of a training function, the information here will be critical. Follow the icons and use your own situation as your guide.

Many experts would say that Chapter 3 is the real beginning of instructional design, the component known as analysis. Of course, just as many would say that Chapter 2 is the real beginning, as much of what we accomplish there feeds into analysis. Anyway, we'll look at the various types of analysis, what

they are used for, and the methods for doing them. There are a number of them and all are important, although some will be more critical than others, depending on your particular situation.

Chapter 4 is a very long chapter because it deals with a number of critical design issues. We start with another analysis that determines what delivery system will be most effective for your training tasks and your organization. This in itself is controversial, as some designers balk at deciding on a delivery system before writing objectives and content. However, with all the technology variations that are available for delivering training today, and their associated cost in both dollars and time, we feel that a delivery decision is a critical early step in the design component.

We'll move from there to objectives, design documents, test questions, and instructional plans to complete the design component. This is actually a more-or-less random stopping point for Chapter 4. Some of these concepts could just as easily fit into the delivery component, while others interrelate so much that it is hard to tell where they go, but we had to stop somewhere.

Chapter 5 is the delivery component, which is concerned with the actual development of the training materials. We follow a lesson plan format here. Even though lesson plans are basically a classroom delivery product, they make a good outline for on-the-job training (OJT) and for technology-based training (TBT) as well, which covers most of the other major delivery systems. We discuss openings, motivation, activities, summaries, and some evaluation aspects.

Because development is the component during which you add media, the hints section is pretty formidable here. We cover ideas on everything from flip charts to satellite-mediated broadcasts, with plenty of attention on the technologies such as multimedia and net-based training. (*Note*: There is a lot of terminology flying around concerning the process of Internet, intranet, and web-based training. In this book, we will use the term *net-based training* to mean any type of training for which a computer network is the delivery system. This might include intranets, Internets, and webs. If there is a particular reason for focusing on one of these processes over the others it will be called out specifically.)

Chapter 6 is concerned with program implementation. However, it begins with information on pilots and beta testing. Once again, some would say that this material belongs with evaluation (Chapter 7) or even development, as—like many instructional design activities—it has a lot of connections to both. We chose the implementation connection, as this is the first time you'll actually see your training implemented. Chapter 6 continues with some general concerns; and the hints section contains ideas for various types of implementations.

Chapter 7 deals with evaluation, both evaluation of the trainees, which is discussed in various other chapters as well, and of the training program itself. Reasons for doing evaluations, what might be evaluated, and how to evaluate are covered, as well as evaluating self-instructional programs, which requires a somewhat different approach. Thoughts on revising programs and program materials end the chapter and bring us back full circle to analysis, which is the end product of evaluation.

The purpose of Chapter 8 is to provide you with a little more detail on a number of rapid design techniques. This chapter is more for the experienced designer, but the concepts may be interesting to all readers. These short discussions are not meant to make you an expert on these methods, but rather to supply you with enough information to decide whether they are useful for you, and with the suggested readings, to send you on your way to learning more about them.

Chapters 9 and 10 consider the design of two newer and widely used delivery systems, asynchronous and synchronous e-learning.

Chapter 11 considers some of the newer technology and delivery concepts that have come into use since the first edition was published.

As we noted earlier, instructional design, particularly rapid instructional design, is not an easy concept to discuss. It is highly situational, often depending on the level of knowledge of the designer, the organizational environment, the needs of the trainees, the responsibilities of the trainers, and other even less tangible things. We hope that this book will help you deal with these complexities and make your instructional designing the best, and fastest, it can be.

Chapter 1

What Is This Instructional Design Stuff Anyway?

This chapter will help you to:

- Discover why you need instructional design
- Begin to see what instructional design is
- Consider the advantages and disadvantages of instructional design

There is an old saying that if you don't know where you are going, any road will get you there. This is a fine philosophy if you are spending the summer between your junior and senior year "experiencing" Europe or if you have embarked on an Australian "walk-about," but when you are developing training programs it leaves a lot to be desired.

One of the purposes of instructional design is to provide both an appropriate destination, and the right road to get you there, whenever you are responsible for creating a training program. Your destination is usually some form of learning that your trainees will accomplish, while the road is one of the many paths that instruction can follow to facilitate that learning.

Instructional design stripped to its basics is simply a process for helping you to create effective training in an efficient manner. It is a system, perhaps more accurately a number of systems, that help you ask the right questions, make the right decisions, and produce a product that is as useful and useable as your situation requires and allows.

Some people refer to instructional design as the "science" of instruction because it follows a set of theories and methods and is concerned with inputs and outputs. Other people see instructional design as an "art" because the best designs usually have a direct relationship to the creativity and talent of

the designer. Still others see it as "a good thing to do if we have the time," but it can't get in the way of producing the training.

How you see instructional design is up to you. In this book we will not champion one view over another, or even one definition as the "most correct." What we will do is try to convince you that creating a training program without using instructional design principles is inviting failure. Once that is (we hope) accomplished, we will explore the most basic of those principles, not from a theoretical point of view, but rather from the direction of how to apply them, rapidly and successfully.

In fact, if you are seeking instructional design theory you've probably come to the wrong source; you may want to read Dick and Carey's *Systematic Design of Instruction* (1990). One of those basic instructional design principles we mentioned is to *know your target audience*. This book's target audiences were described in the introduction. Primarily, they are individuals with little to no instructional design experience who need to learn to do it right, but fast. For the most part you are not permanent training professionals planning to make a career out of instructional design, so the theory is not as important as the actual practice.

Our audience analysis (we'll be talking a lot more about analysis in the next couple of chapters) tells us that you are much more preoccupied with *how* it is done than with what is behind the doing. Not that you aren't interested in the theory, but you just don't have the time to explore these aspects when everyone is expecting your training program yesterday. So terms such as adult learning theory, learning styles, and even cognitive science may appear here from time to time, but we won't be discussing them in any detail. We will spend most of our time considering how to apply good instructional design principles specifically to the various ways you can deliver training, such as classroom training, on-the-job training, self-instruction, and technology-based training.

However, for the more experienced practitioner, we'll also discuss ways to speed up the instructional design process through simple hints and larger scale methods, such as instructional design software, learning object-based design, rapid prototyping, and performance-support-based design. If you are an experienced instructional designer, or plan to be someday, you might want to at least check out the shortcut icons and hang around for Chapter 8 to pick up some new ideas and shortcuts.

WHY INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN?

So why should you concern yourself with instructional design? Perhaps the best reason I can give is one we've all experienced: the course, class, seminar, or other training event that sounded good on paper, but that you left (and that left you) wondering why you ever came. There are a number of reasons for

this universal phenomena, but in the end they all boil down to one cause: *poor instructional design*. Did the class not meet the objectives stated in the course description? Poor instructional design. Did the test at the end of the program not make any sense? Poor instructional design. Did the instructor meander from topic to topic with no clear pattern to what was being discussed? Poor instructional design. Was the material over your head, or too basic—blame it on poor instructional design. (OK, I admit there may be other reasons as well, but poor instructional design is often the most critical reason, and because this is a book on how to become a better instructional designer, allow me just a little overstatement.)

On an individual basis, these ineffective learning experiences are annoying, but when considered for a company-wide training course it is rather painful, particularly to the bottom line; and multiplied by five or a dozen or fifty training courses, it is appalling. Hundreds of thousands of precious training hours are wasted every year telling participants what they already know or things they cannot use.

The cost in wasted time, wasted money, and wasted opportunities is staggering—all because the person responsible for the program did not know, or did not take advantage of, a few mostly common sense rules for creating good training.

ASTD notes in their *2013 State of the Industry Report* that over one and one-half billion dollars was spent by organizations on training in 2012. If even 5 percent of this expenditure was made on bad training because of poor instructional design (and chances are the real amount is well over that), knowing how to do it right would have saved companies over $75 million!

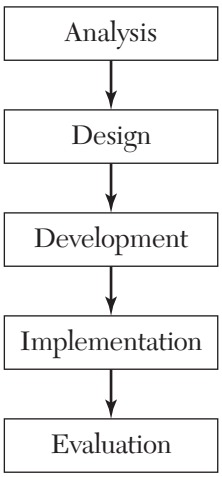
What instructional design will do for you, the training course developer, is to help you guard against making such mistakes. It will help you create good, clear objectives for your program that can be understood and mastered by your trainees. It will help you develop evaluations that truly test for the knowledge and skills that your objectives are based on. It will help you or whoever instructs the course to facilitate the participants' learning effectively and efficiently and, most important, it will help you make sure that what is in your program is what your trainees need to learn. This reduces wasted time, wasted money, and wasted opportunities for helping to develop more effective employees who, through their knowledge and skills, increase corporate profitability.

WHAT IS INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN?

Earlier we discussed instructional design in generalities: a science, an art, a way to create training. These are all fine concepts, and perhaps good definitions, but instructional design is really a *set of rules,* you could say *procedures,*

for creating training that does what it is supposed to do. Some of those procedures have to do with finding out *what* the training is supposed to do (you might call it determining the goals of the training), while other procedures deal with letting the participant know what those goals are. Still other procedures ensure that everything in the training focuses on those goals, and one more set monitors how we know that the goals have been achieved.

Instructional design is a way to plan your training program from the moment you have the idea for it (or the idea is given to you) until the moment you complete your revisions of your first effort and get ready to run the program again. It is a working model that you can use to manage the concepts and tasks that are part of a successful training process.

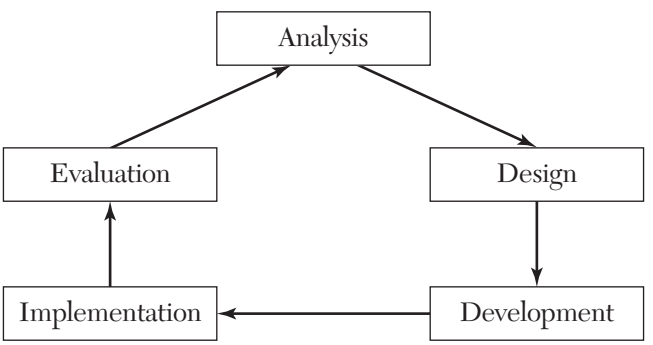


Instructional Systems Design Straight Line Model.

There are many ways to do instructional design, probably about as many as there are good instructional designers, but each way follows the same basic principles, and it's those principles that we will explore here. No matter whether you are training technicians, service workers, or managers, or whether you will be utilizing classes, on-the-job training, e-learning, or satellites, you will need to use these principles in one form or another to make your training a success.

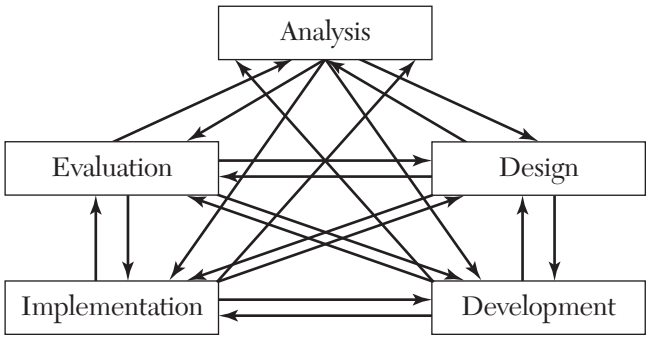
Those principles were developed by the military in the 1940s, and set down as a method of instructional design called Instructional Systems Design or ISD. The graphic on the left depicts the ISD process with its five phases of Analysis, Design, Development, Implementation, and Evaluation.

As time went on, designers began to realize that, while the phases were a pretty good representation of how instructional design worked, the straight line model with a beginning and an end was not realistic. Evaluation usually led to more analysis, which created the need for re-design, and so on. So we began to look at ISD like this:



Instructional Systems Design Cyclic Model.

However, to confuse you a bit, and because it mirrors the reality of ISD as an iterative process in which we keep making and re-making decisions all through the five phases as we create our design, I offer you my rendition of the ISD model.



Instructional Systems Design Spiderweb Model.

I affectionately refer to this as the ISD spider web model, and challenge you that if you can recite an instance for each of the arrows in which you would move from one phase to the other, then you probably don't need to continue reading this book.

In the final analysis, instructional design requires only specific behavioral outcomes, a way to measure them, and reviews and revision to make sure the training effectively covers the outcomes. Everything else is just icing on the cake, though as all of us with a sweet tooth know, the icing is what makes the cake.

Here is an overview look at some of the major aspects of that icing. It doesn't exactly follow how we'll discuss instructional design in this book, but it gives you a good idea of the complexities of the process.

A FEW DEFINITIONS

Before we get into the advantages of instructional design, we'd better take some time to develop a couple of definitions. An *instructor* (as we'll use the term in this book) is the person who stands in front of a class or a person and performs the main role of disseminator of content information. There is obviously a lot more to training than just that, and—as we all know from sad experience—there are instructors, and then there are INSTRUCTORS, but for now let's just leave it there.

The term *facilitator* is meant to also describe an individual who stands up before others in a training setting, but whose main role is to assist in helping them to learn, rather than to disseminate content information. This is not to

Possible ISD Activities and Outputs

Plan	Analyze	Design
Goals		
• Leaders consulted to determine needs based on business objectives • Learning opportunities linked to business needs • Plan created	• Learning solutions that match performance needs identified and analyzed	• Completed design document for the learning intervention
Key Activities		

• Identify strategic business objectives
• Identify KPI's and how they are measured
• Produce a performance analysis
• Confirm relationship of business needs to performance gaps and underlying causes
• Identify learning and non-learning needs
• Conduct a high-level curriculum assessment
• Estimate cost, scope and resources of possible learning interventions
• Prioritize interventions
• Create overall plan
	• Perform a gap analysis/root cause analysis
	• Analyze target audience, job, tasks, and performance
	• Decide on preliminary design solution
	• Refine costs, scope, and resources required
	• Create preliminary project plan
	• Define needs for project team, vendor, and stakeholder interaction
	• Create evaluation strategy with emphasis on KPIs
	• Contract possible vendors if needed
	• Kick-off meeting
		• Formulate learning objectives
		• Finalize design solutions and delivery
		• Create design document
		• Hold SME meetings
		• Create draft plans for
		  ◦ Implementation
		  ◦ Evaluation
		  ◦ Communications

Key Outputs		

• Strategic leadership meetings
• Performance analysis
• High-level analysis document
  ◦ Identification of applicable KPIs and measures
  ◦ High-level budget
  ◦ Probable delivery system
• Curriculum assessment report
	• Project plan
	• Learning needs analysis document
	• Other analysis documents as required
	• Resource requirements
	• Evaluation strategy
	• Vendor contract
		• Updated project plan
		• Design document
		• Preliminary course roadmap
		• Implementation plan
		• Content outline
		• Evaluation plan
		• Updated budget
		• Communications plan

Develop	Implement	Evaluate
Goals		
• Learning materials complete and intervention ready to pilot	• Intervention piloted and delivered	• Course applicability confirmed • Performance improvement verified • Course improvement opportunities determined
Key Activities		
• Create prototype if required • Develop content and deliverables • Conduct ID quality review • Determine facilitator requirements • Select and train faculty • Technology readiness and testing • Finalize implementation plan • Conduct and evaluate beta tests • Develop evaluation reports • Determine review and revision parameters	• Pilot and pilot review • Plan schedule of offerings • Begin communications • Engage business in implementation • Launch program • Deliver program • Launch evaluation plan • Transition to continued implementation process	• Assemble evaluation data • Review evaluation data • Determine course applicability • Determine impact on performance • Determine changes in KPIs that might be related to training • Identify business improvement opportunities suggested by evaluation data • Identify improvement required
Key Outputs		
• Completed course roadmap • Storyboard • Facilitator strategy (selection and training) • Final course materials • Beta tests • Maintenance plan • Program documentation • Quality reviews by ID	• Pilot review • Course schedule • Communications • Launch	• Evaluation reports • Evaluation analysis • Improvement recommendations

say that an instructor doesn't assist in learning, or that facilitators don't provide content information at times, but these aren't their main responsibilities. Lectures are given by instructors; classroom simulation or role-play activities are expedited by facilitators. Instructors almost always have to be content experts; facilitators do not.

We'll use the term *facilitator* often in this book, as this is the role a good designer tries to design for, even if he or she throws some instruction into the mix. We'll use the term *trainer* to mean a facilitator as well. For example, an on-the-job training (OJT) trainer for our purposes will be basically a facilitator, even though he or she may occasionally provide some content information.

A *designer* is the person who puts the training together for the instructor, facilitator, trainer, or whomever. Often the designer is also the trainer; just as often he or she is not. If the designer is the trainer, this makes instructional design simpler and more treacherous, as trainer/designers tend to take a lot of liberties with the instructional design process, knowing they can deal with any shortcomings "on the fly" during the class. If the trainer and designer are not the same person, then instructional design is more difficult, but normally less inconsistent, as the designer needs to spell everything out in detail for the trainer if the training is to be done right.

The designer's function can be broken down into lots of sub-functions, such as material developer, evaluator, writer, artist, and so on, many of which theorists would argue have nothing to do with "true" design. However, as I mentioned earlier, we will not deal much with theory in this book, so for simplicity's sake we'll group all these functions under the designer role.

Another role is that of *subject-matter expert* or SME. An SME is, as the name suggests, a person who, mainly due to experience, knows a lot about the content to be taught. A designer will team with an SME to help in the development of content and for review purposes. A trainer or facilitator may consult an SME concerning thorny issues in the content, or just to get some good ideas to use during the class, some "examples from the trenches."

In far too many cases in training, people who are SMEs are given the role of designer or trainer or both, simply because they are SMEs. They may know little about how to put training together—and even less about how to run an effective training class—but because they have expertise in how to do the job, they're elected, appointed, or volunteered. They usually teach what they think is important (and it often is, although it may not be everything needed or important for this particular audience). They tend to teach it the way they have been taught, or the way they are most comfortable learning (which may be wrong, or at least not effective for the content or the audience). In other words, they are very often not practitioners of good instructional design.

If you find yourself in this predicament, please don't feel that we are criticizing you. We are definitely criticizing the people who put you there, but it certainly isn't your fault that you've been told to do something you have not been trained to do. No one would ask you to drive a bulldozer or fly an airplane without the proper training, but this does not hold true for training. Books such as this one can help SMEs become good designers, and there are other books that will make them better facilitators. (See Bob Pike's *Creative Training Techniques*, 1994.) But SMEs are *subject-matter experts*, and that does not make them facilitators or designers.

If you are in this circumstance, take heart. As the old saying goes (slightly paraphrased), "The fact that you are here and recognize that you have a problem means the situation is not beyond hope." An advantage of instructional design is that it can help make SMEs into good designers.

ADVANTAGES OF INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN

Now, on to advantages. The main advantage of instructional design is simple: it assists you in correctly doing what you need to do. In the case of developing a training program, this means creating training that helps your trainees learn the things they need to know. This sounds pretty obvious, but that doesn't mean it always happens.

Frequently, when developing training, the trainer, who is often charged with designing the training as well, makes the decisions as to what the trainees need to know based on his or her experience and the amount of time he or she has been given to deliver the training. These may be accurate guesses or not, but invariably in such an approach some aspects—at times critical ones—are missed or deleted due to time constraints. The advantage of instructional design is that it does not rely on one person's concept of what the trainees need to know, and so it is more likely that the final product will be the right one.

We can take this advantage even further when we consider not just what is in a program (often called the *content*), but the program itself and the other programs that make up a training curriculum. Someone must decide who needs to take what courses and how many of them. Instructional design procedures make this overall decision more systematic and thus more accurate.

Cost-Effectiveness

Ensuring cost-effective training is another advantage of using instructional design. One way it does this is obvious. If you are training people on what they really need to know, and not just what someone thinks they need to know, then you are wasting less training time and, in this case, time is truly money.

It costs a lot of money to run training programs. Some estimates put the cost of private training in the United States alone at over $58 billion a year!

You need money to pay trainers, for classroom space, and for materials and equipment. You also need to pay trainees to be at the training, and often must hire other people to replace them while they are away. There are travel costs, food costs, and a number of specific cost issues, depending on your particular company. If following proper instructional design principles can save even 10 percent of these expenditures (and often the savings are much, much more dramatic), the effect on the bottom line of an organization can be quite significant.

And you can add on to all of these direct costs what I consider to be the number one hidden cost of poor training: *lost productivity*. Workers who are poorly trained make mistakes, create scrap, lose customers, and have accidents. Workers who are not well trained seldom reach their potential, costing the company untold dollars in possible profits.

Instructional design won't solve all your cost, productivity, and profitability problems, but it will give you a fighting chance by helping to ensure that the workforce at least knows what it is supposed to do and how to do it.

Time-Effectiveness

Instructional design can also help your training become more time-effective. We've already mentioned the main way it does this—simply through providing training that meets the right needs of the right people, thus not wasting their time or the trainer's. But it can do more than that. Instructional design also helps you provide training when it is needed, and in a way that the trainees can best use it.

The antithesis of this aspect of instructional design is the old "Everyone needs training on this, so we'll run a class on it every Tuesday and Friday" training plan. Instructional design helps you to ask questions such as, "Is a class the best approach, or should we use on-the-job training or computer-based training for this material?" and "Are Tuesdays and Fridays the right days, or should it be Mondays, or should it be available when the trainees need it no matter what the day?" (a concept called *just-in-time* training).

Instructional design can also be time-effective for the designer. This statement may seem to be in conflict with its major disadvantage, taking more time to do, as discussed in the next section, but we are talking absolutes here. If you absolutely do not care how effective the training is as long as it gets done, then instructional design takes longer than just having someone get up before a group and talk. However, if you want the absolutely best training possible, then instructional design is a time-effective method for achieving this, and the more you use its procedures, the better you will become at them and the faster you will become at creating not just training, but the *right* training.

Instructional design also includes various shortcuts to make the designer even more time-effective once he or she has mastered the basics. One of these, often termed object-oriented learning, allows you to create a segment of training once, but use it over and over again in a number of different programs and training situations. This may sound pretty simple, but unless you follow good instructional design procedures, you will find that this concept will not work well, if at all.

Another shortcut is the use of template-based instructional design software to help you design. Knowing instructional design to begin with makes the use of these programs easier and more effective. We will discuss both of these concepts, as well as some other instructional design shortcuts, in a later chapter.

Learning Effectiveness

Now I know that this sounds like some of that theory we said we weren't getting into, but it really isn't. Learning effectiveness relates to some of the time-effectiveness processes we discussed earlier. An advantage of using instructional design is that it helps you choose the most effective way to present your content, which can be translated as the easiest way for the trainees to learn it.

We've all attended training during which the instructor delivered hour after hour of content on a process that if they had just let us sit down and work we could have learned in half the time. Instructional design helps you look at what is to be learned and decide the best method for learning it. Instead of a classroom, it might be a laboratory or a simulation or even a piece of virtual reality training or no training at all but simply a job aid that can be used back on the job when the trainee is actually performing the task.

This is what learning effectiveness is about, determining the best way for the trainee to learn based on what content needs to be learned and what the trainee will be doing with the new knowledge after the learning is finished.

Training Effectiveness Evaluation

We've been discussing the advantages of instructional design based on its various types of effectiveness: cost, time, and learning. Another advantage is that you can use instructional design to create a valid and useful evaluation of the training itself and therefore determine whether your training truly was effective. Most training evaluations, particularly those that are not based on instructional design, consider evaluation to be limited to finding out whether the trainees liked the course. A few even go so far as to ask the trainees if they feel they "got" something from it.

Through the use of instructional design procedures, you will create objectives for the course that you can use as the basis of evaluation, determining which objectives the trainees have met. Because instructional design bases these objectives on job tasks or competencies, you can relate your training to the job requirements and then evaluate whether the trainees are using what they've learned. Another set of instructional design procedures helps you consider whether the training is worth doing at all, that is, do the benefits of the training outweigh the costs. Using this information, you can evaluate your training even further, analyzing whether it lived up to its cost/benefit expectations. All of these processes are less useful, harder to measure, and often not particularly valid if proper instructional design procedures are not used when the training is created.

Competitive Advantage

Other advantages of instructional design are related to the fact that some organizations consider good training to be a competitive advantage. An industry where this seems to be a golden rule is information technology. The best companies, often characterized as those with exemplary training, are continuously having their trained people "pirated" by other companies. These top companies will use the promise of more training, leading to further job skill development and possible promotion, to keep their people in-house and to attract new employees as well.

I know of one old-line manufacturing company that recently began a franchising venture. When asked why they felt their franchise was more valuable than their competitor's, they replied, "Our name recognition, our reputation for quality, and our training system, which will guarantee that both of these other advantages remain intact for the franchisee." Did someone say, "Sounds like instructional design at work?" Good!

Business Integration

Using instructional design also creates training that is related to the goals and objectives of the organization. This is begun early in the instructional design process and follows through to how the training is evaluated. It means that the training received by your trainees will not only help them, but will help your company achieve its vision and the goals related to it.

Consistency

The last set of advantages in using instructional design relate to consistency. With instructional design, the quality of your training is consistent. All of your

programs will be at the level of quality that your instructional design procedures dictate.

Your programs will also be consistent over time and place. No longer will one trainer teach one set of content for a program while another, six months later or 6,000 miles away, teaches something different. This consistency will create even greater quality, not only in your training, but in whatever the training helps your company to do.

DISADVANTAGES OF INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN

We've already mentioned the major disadvantage of instructional design, that it takes time. It takes time to learn how to follow the instructional design procedures and time to implement them when you create training. However, if you consider the alternative of producing possibly (perhaps probably) ineffective training if you don't use instructional design, then this disadvantage may be less critical than it first appears.

Sure, that's easy for me to say, sitting here writing this book. I'm not out there with you, being told by your supervisor that the training is needed yesterday, being asked by the department manager why you need to talk to all those busy people before the "classes start," being second-guessed as to why we simply can't use our "all-knowing" SME by putting him in front of a classroom. Well, nobody said the job was easy or, if they did, it's because they never tried it themselves. Remember the old saying: You can only have two of these three: fast, cheap, good.

I have no magic answer to the problem of time. Let's face it, if it wasn't more difficult and time-consuming to use instructional design, we'd all be using it already, and I'd have to find a new topic for this book. Who can argue with what instructional design does, except from the point of view that it takes so long to do it. I'm reminded of a boss I had early in my career who really believed in instructional design, but became so frustrated one day that he looked at me and said, "It really does take too long to do things right."

There are days when I think he may have been right, but then I remember that it is better to spend one person's time now than to waste ten people's time later. Yes, it does take longer to use instructional design to do it right, but it's worth it.

Resources

A much less significant disadvantage of instructional design is that it takes more and other resources to accomplish. Unlike what we might call, "SME-based training," in which only one person is involved in construction, delivery, evaluation, and everything else that may need to be done, good

instructional design requires a number of resources. These might include a designer; an instructor who may be different from the designer; an SME, if the designer is not the one to provide content and review; other reviewers; target audience members to analyze; job incumbents to talk to; and the list goes on and on. Fortunately, none of these resources, with the exception of the first two or three, are required to contribute a lot of their time to the instructional design process. For them it may be an hour or two—or at most a day. Yet what they do contribute, when used properly, can multiply the effectiveness of the training considerably.

Another consideration in balancing this disadvantage around resource utilization is that instructional design can often save your resources. For example, if your best manager spends three days a month every month teaching his or her management specialty to new managers, those are days the manager is not doing what he or she does best, managing. One process of instructional design is to look at situations like this and ask whether there isn't a way to make more effective use of that manager's time. One answer might be to put him or her on video or in an e-learning program or possibly cutting the classes to once a month through the use of a distance learning technology. This is the type of thing instructional design helps you do.

You may not find an efficiency in every situation, and the use of resources may far outweigh the little you save, but don't lose track of what instructional design provides in the end for the use of resources, the most effective and efficient training you can create, and the savings, which can be extraordinary.

Overcoming Disadvantages

I mentioned earlier that I don't have a magic answer to the disadvantages of instructional design; and the claims of "true believers" from the days of film strips to today's web-based training concerning the virtues of their pet technologies not withstanding, I don't think there is one. What this book will do for you is twofold. First, it will present instructional design with practically none of the theory that is at its foundation in order to decrease your learning time. That's not to say that the theory isn't important (it is) or that you wouldn't be a better designer if you knew it (you would). It is simply a response to the fact that you are pressed for time, particularly if designing training is not your main job function, and that you can be a good—even an excellent—designer without the theory. This will affect that first disadvantage, the amount of time needed to learn instructional design.

Second, to deal with the disadvantage of the time needed to do instructional design, this book will provide you with a number of helpful hints and shortcuts to use. Some of these will be contained within the chapter content;

others will be found at the end of the chapters in the form of checklists and ideas. Still others of a more general nature will make up the entire last chapter. To start you off, here's a checklist that can help you determine whether you need instructional design at all.

DO I NEED INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN?

Instructions: Answer each of the following questions with yes, no, or not sure.

☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	I know who my trainees are and what their specific needs are.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	I know all the content that the trainees require from my programs.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	My trainees always know what is expected of them.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	The materials I create are exactly what the content and trainees require.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	I always know and use the most effective approach when delivering the required training.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	I know whether my trainees learned what they needed to learn.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	I know whether my training is being used back on the job.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	I always create the most cost-effective training.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	The training I create is always the most time effective for me and the trainees.
☐ Yes	☐ No	☐ NS	My training is meeting the needs of my organization.

If you answered "no" or "not sure" to any of these questions, you can probably use some aspect of instructional design. If you answered "no" or "not sure" to several of them, you need the whole instructional design approach. Read on, *s'il vous plait*, and remember:

> *Give a man a fish and he'll eat for a day. Teach him how to fish and he'll eat as long as there are fish in the pool. But design a training program that helps him learn how to stock and manage his pool, and there is no telling how far he might go.*

Chapter 2

Before You Do Anything: Pre-Instructional Design Activities

This chapter will help you to:

- Differentiate the various kinds of assessments that you can do
- Determine company needs through an organizational needs assessment
- Find out what a performance assessment does and what human performance technology is
- Determine your organization's training needs
- Create a needs analysis report
- Do a "quick and dirty" training cost/benefit analysis

Well, if you're reading this it should mean that we've achieved at least part of the first objective of this book, convincing you that instructional design is important. In this chapter it's possible that we'll convince you it's also not worth the effort, simply because it seems to take so much time to do it right. I say this only slightly with tongue in cheek. You are probably anxious to start creating some training, but by the end of this chapter you are likely to feel as if you are no further along toward this goal than you were when you started. However, that is a misconception.

This chapter may not give you the information you need to "jump right in" and start putting training stuff together, but it will provide you with a workable blueprint for your training. Some of the things we'll discuss here will help you

ensure that your training won't fail when it is implemented due to a lack of interest on the part of your organization. Other concepts will help you determine what your final training should look like in relation to what your company wants and needs it to look like. You don't want to build a fifty-room mansion when what your company needs is a two-story colonial.

If you are an occasional designer, as we defined this role in the introduction, most of the work that this chapter covers has been (or should have been) done for you. If you don't foresee this current responsibility leading to further involvement in training, you might want to scan through this chapter, stopping only at those areas that have the icon. However, if your training responsibility goes beyond one, single-topic course with you as the only instructor, you'll want to consider this chapter in detail. What we'll discuss may be the deciding factor in making your training recognized as a successful, need-fulfilling process in your organization.

ORGANIZATIONAL NEEDS

And that brings up the first question you ask in the pre-design phase of instructional design: "What *does* your organization need?" There are a number of terms for this process, although the two most commonly used are *needs analysis* and *needs assessment*. There have been entire books written on the difference between these two concepts, but for our purpose of rapid instructional design we will consider them to be the same. (Chapter 2: Business Analysis, in *HPI Essentials*. which I edited.)

Determining your organizational needs will help you to determine what training you need to do. More importantly, it will help you determine what training you don't need to do, either because the organizational need cannot be addressed by training or because the organization cannot support the training that is needed. Let's look at an example. Suppose your manager comes to you and says that the company has to increase its production by 5 percent to meet the new customer orders that have come in. He feels that you should run a training program to bring some of the new people "up to speed" on the way you do your work, as you are the most productive member of the department. You tell him that you and your colleagues are having problems getting enough material to work with from other groups as it is, and that making them more efficient won't necessarily make the group more productive. Instead, material flow needs to be looked at and somehow enhanced.

What you've done on a very small scale is an organizational needs assessment. You've discovered an organizational need (or at least your supervisor has told you of it) and considered ways to meet it, this time rejecting training as a possible solution.

Of course, it's usually a lot more complicated than this example, but the basics are the same. Anyone in charge of a training function, or given responsibility for some aspect of a training process, should analyze what organizational needs exist and how these needs can best be met.

To Whom to Talk and What to Ask

The place to start an organizational needs assessment is at the top, or at least as close to the top as you can go. Ask the highest level of management that you can reach for their thoughts on organizational needs. However, don't make the mistake that many assessors make of beginning these conversations with the question: "What training needs do you have?" This seems like a pertinent question, but it is often too limiting and not really what you are looking for in this type of assessment. A better question is something on the lines of: "What organizational (or departmental, or group) business problems are critical to you and your staff at the moment?" Or, from a different focus: "What opportunities exist in your business unit that you would like to take advantage of?" Focus in even more by asking about customers and what their needs are, or about competitors and what they do well that your company doesn't quite match.

If you are in a product-centered environment, one possible approach is to discuss plans for new products. Will there be changes on the manufacturing side, the sales side, in distribution, in customer service, or for the customers and their employees? What will these changes mean as far as organizational, training, or individual performance needs are concerned?

Your goal is to develop as complete a list as possible of organizational needs (not necessarily training needs—we'll determine that later) from multiple levels in the company. The more often one is mentioned, the more critical it probably is and the more attention should be paid to it.

This list is the beginning of your training blueprint. It will help you to sketch out general areas of need in the organization and to take a first look at what needs may be most critical. It will become a plan that you can follow as you build your training process and make decisions on how big it will be, how complex, and what it will look like.

Organizational Needs and the Occasional Designer

This organizational needs assessment process is all well and good, but what if you have already been assigned to develop a particular training program? How does an assessment of organizational needs relate to your responsibility? Well, there are two possible answers here. The first is that perhaps someone has

done an assessment and decided that what you've been charged with doing is in reaction to a valid organizational need. From that assessment, you can find out more about the need and why training was chosen as a solution. This information will provide you with background, help you to outline your program, and allow you to create the proper blueprint, so you won't build the wrong kind of training structure, even if its only for a single program.

The second answer is a bit less concrete, but just as important. If your research (asking a few questions such as, "What need are we addressing?") seems to indicate that there is no connection between what you've been asked to do and an organizational need, you can do a sort of retro-assessment to determine whether the program you will be creating has a worthwhile purpose. As in our previous example, your assessment may indicate that a training program is not what is needed at all, or that the program you've been asked to develop will not meet an organizational need. Alternatives to conducting training might include:

- Creating feedback mechanisms
- Developing job aids
- Implementing incentive and recognition systems
- Revising employee selection systems
- Redesigning the organization

Determining that training is or is not the right response to a need and bringing it to the attention of the right people can save your company a lot of time and money (remember, this was one of the main advantages of using instructional design or, in this case, pre-instructional design) and will save you a lot of the frustration that is inherent in developing a training program that no one can actually benefit from.

Here is a real-life example of what happens when you don't take the time to do even a quick organizational assessment of an already stated training need. (Some of the following examples have been adapted from case studies in *Leading Organizational Change* by Elwood Holton III.)

> Because they were adding an entire new line of business to their offerings, the senior management at a large bank requested that their training department provide project management training to their branch managers. The department selected a proven project management consultant to do a two-day classroom training program.
>
> The senior vice president for marketing sat in on the first day, and half-way through called the training manager aside to criticize the length of the program, the approach the consultant was using, and the lack of

computer-based training as an alternative to the classroom. She canceled the training.

In this case, if a representative from training had spent a little time doing an organizational needs assessment or even a retro-assessment, he or she would have found out that what was really needed was product knowledge training with a bit of project management thrown in. This would have saved the company a lot of misspent resources and the training group a lot of headaches.

How to Do an Organizational Needs Assessment

How do you do an organizational needs assessment? Basically, there are about as many ways as there are people doing them. The simplest way is to ask the right people the right questions. The most complicated, but often the most complete, is to develop a survey form that can be distributed, collected, analyzed, and followed up on. In between these extremes are oral surveys, focus groups, observations, and a whole raft of variations and combinations of these basic methods. Here are some examples of how other companies have done and used an organizational needs assessment:

The training director for a customer-service-based organization performed a high-level organizational needs assessment by meeting individually with the organization's top eight officers, which covered the major divisions of the company. In the meetings, he asked for their understanding of the organization's basic philosophy, culture, and strategic goals. He also requested information on whom they saw as the organization's customers and their work group's customers. He created a series of customer-service needs using the officers' comments and information gathered from the front line on how the customers were being served. This led to a redefinition of customer service for the organization and a training session related to a customer identification model that helped each division redefine its role in the customer-satisfaction process.

An HRD department did an analysis of its own training programs by performing an organizational needs analysis and then comparing what was being done to the results of the survey instrument that was used that asked questions such as:

- How does the organization perform in relation to the expectations of our shareholders?
- How do we react to these expectations?
- What is our core mission?
- What would be our ideal future?
- What is our realistic future?
- How can we reduce the difference between the two?

Outcomes of this organizational analysis included changes in quality inspection techniques, increased safety and maintenance training, expansion of the corporate intranet to an extranet, and development of a team-based problem-solving methodology.

For a more formal organizational assessment, you can start by doing a comparison chart of your organization that might look something like this:

The Business Should:		*The Business Currently:*	
Performances the Business Needs:		Performances As They Are Now:	
Factors to Consider That Might Affect Progress Toward the Should:	External	**Internal**	**Talent**

For example:

The Business Should:			*The Business Currently:*	
Expand sales by 30%			Sales up less than 2%	
Implement new sales software tool			Currently no tool in use	
Comply with HSSE travel regulations			Regulations not enforced	
Performances the Business Needs:			*Performances As They Are Now:*	
Drive collaboration across sales teams			Sales teams in regional silos	
Full utilization of software tool			Most associates not using computers	

Demonstrate knowledge of HSSE regs			HSSE regulations ignored	
Factors to Consider That Might Affect Progress Toward the Should:	*External*		*Internal*	*Talent*
	Market declining		Sales force turnover	No training programs
	Increased competition		Ineffective management	HSSE expertise
	Regulations in flux		Low computer literacy	
			Limited communications	

Retro-Assessment

If you are doing what we've termed a retro-assessment to fill in the background on a program you've been asked to create, you'll probably want to stay with the "ask the right questions" approach to assessment, as it is quick and relatively simple. Of course, the first question is: "What corporate need is this program going to address?" Add follow-up questions based on the answer. Who you ask is often dependent on who is available to you, but try to go as far up the line as you can, at least to the person who requested the training in the first place (often termed the *stakeholder*). Ask your supervisor to set things up or to act as a surrogate if your corporate structure won't allow you to talk directly to people at some levels.

A rapid design shortcut for an organizational assessment is to interview the top people most and first. If you can get to the CEO and his or her direct reports, and if they seem in agreement on what the organizational needs are, then you probably have what you want. You might validate your findings with a person or two from other levels, but basically you should be there.

PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT

Another method for determining organizational needs is termed performance assessment. (*First Things Fast: A Handbook for Performance Analysis* by Allison Rossett, 1997.) The difference between an organizational assessment and

a performance assessment is not large, but can be very significant depending on the type of training you are considering. In a performance assessment, instead of trying to determine the somewhat general concept of organizational needs, your focus is on performance itself. This might be the performance of the organization, a department, a work group, a job classification, or individual contributors.

Another word on terminology here. This process is called *performance analysis* or *front-end analysis* just as often as it is called performance assessment. We are using the term "assessment" simply to differentiate what we are discussing here from the analysis processes that are described in Chapter 3. So if you hear someone discussing performance analysis, don't be confused; it's the same thing.

There are three basic performance areas that need to be considered in any performance assessment:

- **The Organization,** which includes culture, structure, policies, procedures, rewards, incentives, mission, values, goals, and operating strategy.
- **Business Processes,** which include work flow, job design, required inputs, desired outputs, outlying processes that provide performer support (HRD, Accounting, HSSE, etc.), performance management processes
- **Individual Aspects,** including individual performance goals, knowledge and skills, work environment, support tools, coaching, performer demographics

Performance Gap Assessment

One type of performance assessment is the performance gap assessment ("What Is Your Problem?: Seven Steps to Analyze and Define Performance Problems" by Anne Marrelli in *Performance & Instruction*, 1993). The key aspect here is to look for the *difference* between what the performance should be and what it is now. This "performance gap" will help you determine what training needs (if any) there are. Let's look at a couple of examples:

> A telecommunications company was having problems keeping up with orders for its new cellular phone. The analysis indicated that the reason was not the number of phones coming off the line, but rather the number of rejects when the products went through final testing. A performance analysis was done in which the analyst first discussed the proper assembly technique with in-plant experts and then observed what was happening on the line. Later he discussed what he observed with both supervisors and line employees. The performance gap was that when the circuit board supply was used up it was taking too long for new boards to be delivered; thus, the employees

were only spot-welding two of the four contact points in order to catch up with the demand that was created when they didn't have a circuit board supply, assuming two would be enough, which was not true. A combination of better materials management and retraining was used to bridge the performance gap.

A finance company was finding that the number of companion products sold to current customers was well below the industry average. The company conducted a performance analysis by developing a survey in which customer service representatives were asked a number of questions concerning their work, including items such as the following:

I. Directions
   - Can you find information related to how to perform your job?
   - Is the information simple and not buried in unneeded data?
   - Is the information up-to-date?

II. Feedback
   - Do you understand the standards you are expected to meet?
   - Is the feedback you receive related to these standards?
   - Is it timely?
   - Is it specific enough?
   - Is it constructive?

III. Tools and Equipment
   - Do you have the right tools to do your job?
   - Do they work properly?

IV. Resources
   - Do you have adequate materials and supplies to do your job?
   - Are they the right materials and supplies?
   - Are there any environmental problems that reduce your efficiency?

V. Incentives
   - Is your pay competitive?
   - Are your bonuses and raises based on performance?
   - Are there meaningful nonmonetary incentives?
   - Are there negative consequences for poor performance?

VI. Knowledge
   - Do you have the knowledge you need to do your job well?
   - Have you mastered the skills you need to perform your job?
   - Do you have the right job aids?
   - Do you understand the big picture for the company and how your job fits in?

VII. Motivation

- When you first began work for the company, did you want to do your job properly?
- Do you still desire to do so?

The analysis discovered that the performance gap was a combination of lack of knowledge and lack of motivation due to lack of incentive. A revised bonus program, retraining, and a performance support system were used to close the gap.

If you are an occasional designer and want a quick approach to a performance gap assessment, try this list of steps:

1. Identify the problem.
2. Analyze the tasks and conditions of the job.
3. Analyze the current performance levels.
4. Identify the causes of the problem.
5. Identify the desired performance outcome.
6. Identify the expectations of your training as related to the outcome.

If even this is too much for the time you have, you can break gap assessment down to two questions:

1. What performances do we need to change?
2. What behaviors in the organization do we need to change to change those performances?

This quick performance assessment method (the first one, not the second one) can also be a rapid design technique if you find that you don't have time to do a full performance analysis or don't really need one, but want to assess a specific performance gap.

After you have determined that a performance gap exists, you'll need to do some cause analysis (*HPI Essentials,* 2002, Chapter 5). There are any number of ways to do this, from the somewhat famous root cause analysis methodology to affinity diagrams and the ever popular "5 Whys." We won't go into a how-to discussion here, there are resources in the suggested readings section or you can go to your QC group for what will almost certainly be a very detailed explanation of these processes. The important point is that without this next level of analysis you will be making a number of assumptions concerning the causes of the performance gap, which may or may not be true, and may or may not send you down the entirely wrong path to closing the gap.

Performance Opportunity Assessment

There are other performance assessments that do not deal with performance gaps, but rather look for "areas of opportunity" (*Transforming Organizations Through Human Performance Technology* by Geary Rummler, 1992), that is, places where the work group being analyzed can improve on what is already good performance. Aspects that often fall under this heading include obtaining market leadership or greater market share, increasing customer satisfaction, reducing time to market, increasing quality, and obtaining new or better competitive advantages. These areas of opportunity assessments often include a training component as part of the solution, but are seldom purely training, so we won't go into detail on them here, but a quick and effective way to do a mini-opportunity analysis is simply to find out what your top performers do that is different from what your average performers do. The data you collect from this simple concept should provide you with a number of performance opportunity possibilities at a level that can be affected by training.

An example of this type of performance analysis was performed by the finance division of a major car manufacturer that had just been congratulated for reducing the number of days needed for closing its books and for being a pioneer in voice response technology for accounts payable. Even with these accolades, division members felt there was potential for improved performance and so undertook a performance analysis process that led them to a new structure in which the employees became more proactive instead of reactive; various bottlenecks were eliminated; and finance delays, particularly related to sales initiatives, were significantly reduced. This was accomplished through a combination of procedural changes and retraining of a significant number of the division's staff.

Sources of Performance Information

Information on performance can come from a number of sources:

- Your company's business information systems can provide a lot of information. Examples would be weekly, monthly, and quarterly reports, budget documents, staffing and scheduling reports, profit-and-loss statements, weekly sales figures, quality control documents, and so forth.
- You can ask supervisors where they see weaknesses in their people who have recently completed any current training.
- You can talk to employees who have been on the job for a time and ask them what they feel was missing from their training or what they wish they had known when they started that they had to learn "the hard way."

- There might also be some good data on maintenance problems, causes of down time, and failure rates at the work group or departmental level that can help you determine whether performance issues exist.
- Another source is test scores from evaluations that company employees take as part of training or a certification program.
- Re-engineering and industrial engineering studies, if they have been done, are a valuable source of information.
- Performance appraisals can provide still more performance information. These documents are often difficult to obtain, as performance appraisals are usually considered confidential. Work with your human resource (HR) department to see whether they can provide you with a synopsis of certain areas or copies of the appraisals with the names removed. This sounds like a lot of trouble, but it can be very useful, not only in considering common problems, but also in seeing performance trends.
- If your company has some type of customer complaint or employee suggestion system, these are also good sources of performance information. The important thing to remember as you analyze these systems is that one comment is not a trend. It's easy to get carried away by focusing in on one or two items that are pretty obvious and easy to deal with. What you really want to do is to look for common suggestions or comments that seem to have a common reference. This doesn't mean you should ignore singular or somewhat off-the-wall comments, as there may be some real insights there. Just don't assume that they are necessarily keys to performance issues.

Performance Data Collection and Measurement

In a gap-based performance assessment, a key issue is objective measurement. Performance can be measured in a number of ways, four of the most common being: outputs, quality, time, and costs. To find a performance gap, you will need to measure both required and actual performance, and you should use the same type of measurement for both aspects.

Data-collection methods for a performance assessment are for the most part the same as any analysis process (see Chapter 3 for details), but there is often a stronger emphasis placed on observation. You can see why this might be the case. You want to know how the actual performance is different from the required performance, and there is no better way (once you understand what the required performance should be) than to observe what is actually going on. This shouldn't be your only data-collection tool, but it is an important one for a performance analysis. Once again, a consideration of top performers and what

they do, this time compared to below average performers via observation, can be one of your most effective data collection and measurement methods.

Benefits of Improved Performance

As part of your performance assessment, you'll also want to determine the benefit of the improved performance to the organization. If the solution to the performance problems you find requires training, you'll use this benefit information to help you make a "first cut" decision on whether the training should be done, and later as part of your cost/benefit analysis to make the final decision on whether you will follow through with the design of a particular training program. If you use the same measurements for the benefit as you used for the required and actual performance, it will make your job a lot easier.

For example, if your required performance was the handling of fifteen calls per hour, although the actual was twelve, use the difference between the two as your benefit to be gained for improved performance, with the proper cost values attached.

Performance gap evaluation is usually much simpler than performance opportunity evaluation. However, even these more abstract performances can be broken down to simpler issues, and benefits can be applied to them in most cases. In the example above, if you were considering a performance opportunity of increasing customer satisfaction, you might break it down to creating three repeat customers a day, each of whom buys $12 in product on his or her repeat visit. Many of the benefits of improved performance are very specific to your particular environment, but they are still there if you look for them (*Rapid Analysis: Matching Solutions to Changing Situations* by Dale Brethower, 1997).

Performance Interventions

The data from your performance information sources should help you to determine the causes of the performance gap. Like organizational assessments, a performance assessment isolates causes or needs that may or may not be training related. When using a performance assessment to determine whether a training need exists, you must ask yourself (or those who would know) a simple question: Can the performance gap be bridged through training? In other words, will a training program change your trainees' current performance to what it should be.

Often the answer is "No," or "Only in part." "No" means what it says: It won't make the difference, so don't implement training. In fact, various studies have suggested that less than 20 percent of performance problems are due to a lack of the knowledge or skills necessary to do the job, that is, the things that

training affects. On the other hand, over 60 percent of performance gaps are caused by lack of feedback to the employee or poorly designed work processes. These are just two of the many other performance interventions that you might apply to bridging the performance gap instead of training, so consider those possibilities instead of a training program. If your charge was to create a training program, then this conclusion may be the end point of your work, as long as you can convince those who charged you with creating training that your performance assessment is accurate—and that training is not the answer.

Non-Training Performance Interventions

On the other hand, if your responsibility was to solve a problem, then you are going to need to use one or more of those other performance interventions, which in most cases means more analysis (*Performance Improvement Maps* by Sanders and Thiagi, 2001). Here is a partial list of other types of performance interventions. They are listed here to give you the flavor of what we're talking about. If your analysis indicates that training is not the answer, call in a specialist in these interventions, often known as a *human performance technologist* (HPT). The HPT can help you and your organization continue with the analysis and design interventions that speak to these non-training issues.

- Career development systems, such as job rotation, mentoring, and assessment centers
- Communications systems, such as bulletin boards, e-mail, and newsletters
- Documentation and standards, including reference manuals, certifications, and standardization practices
- Ergonomic and human factors, such as human-machine interfaces, color coding, interior design, and furniture
- Feedback systems, such as performance appraisal, performance management, peer appraisal, and customer appraisal
- Human development systems, such as literacy programs, retirement programs, and tuition reimbursement
- Training systems such as computer-based instruction, distance learning, and on-the-job training
- Management practices, such as goal setting, supervisory and management philosophy, and strategic planning
- Measurement and evaluation systems, including competency testing, performance standards, and quality systems
- Resource systems, such as benefits programs, budgeting systems, and resource allocation

- Reward and recognition systems, such as bonus systems, commission systems, compensation processes, and incentive systems (*HPI Essentials,* 2002, Chapter 7)

As you can see from the list of performance interventions, there are a number of possible reasons for poor performance that go well beyond training. It might simply be that an employee is missing a tool or that a procedure is no longer adequate. The performer may have all the right skills, knowledge, and experience, but cannot do the task consistently because a key item is missing or does not function properly. These facts would further indicate that training is not the answer.

Categories and Causes of Poor Performance

Generally, reasons for poor performance and therefore performance interventions will be found in one of three major categories: *organizational/environmental causes, motivational/attitude problems,* or *skills/knowledge deficits*. Of these three categories, instructional design is mostly concerned with the third, which can be directly affected by training.

That's not to say that the other categories are not important. For example, the various environmental issues that can affect performance are often overlooked, yet they can affect not only performance, but also the effectiveness of your training. These issues can sometimes be determined by observing your competitors. If their people seem to be able to perform better and are not from a different labor pool or trained any differently, then the problem may be in the environment your company has created in which they perform. You'll need to look for bottlenecks in the work-flow process, lack of responsiveness to issues, or basic inefficiencies that seem to crop up at the actual site where the performance is being done.

An indicator of motivational reasons for a performance gap is employee morale. A poor attitude usually leads to poor performance. High turnover can be an indicator of low morale, as can difficulties in hiring quality people. Look for policies and procedures that create attitude problems. Check on absence and tardiness records. Are they higher than your competitors, and the industry as a whole?

Other questions you can ask as part of your performance assessment include:

- What are the rewards and recognition for good performance?
- What are the personal consequences of poor performance?
- Is there sufficient time to complete this job?
- Does the work provide challenges to the employees?

- Are there sufficient people to complete this job?
- Is there commitment to the job?

This brief discussion is not meant to make you a human performance technologist—or even to help you analyze performance problems. We've included it to help you think about these non-training issues so you can more clearly come to a decision on whether the need or performance gap can be affected by a training program.

Training's Relationship to Other Performance Interventions

A while back we noted that another answer to your performance analysis question, "Can the performance gap be bridged by training," might be "only in part." This answer means that training is part of the solution, but that one or more of the other performance interventions may be needed as well. In fact, this is most commonly the case. It is rare that a performance gap can be bridged without the use of some training. In fact, most of the performance interventions listed earlier require training as part of their implementation.

This makes it more difficult for you as an instructional designer, because you'll need to work with human performance technology specialists and others when designing the training that will augment other performance interventions. However, because the goal is performance improvement (or meeting an organizational need) and not just developing a training program and offering it, the product will be well worth your time and effort.

Following is a list of questions that you can use in making performance assessments. These are a mixed bag, with some aimed at managers, others at performers, some better for gap analysis and others for performance opportunity analysis. Use the ones that work best for your situation or rewrite them to meet your needs. Add your own questions to them and create a customized performance assessment for your organization.

PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

- What should the employees be doing now that they are not doing?
- What are the employees doing now that they should not be doing?
- When the employees are working most effectively, what does it look like?
- What is preventing them from reaching the goal you have envisioned?
- Do they know the standards that are expected of them?
- Are the standards reasonable and achievable?

- Do they have the proper job aids and other performance tools to work to standard?
- What would you like to see changed that would help you to work more effectively?
- What would you like to see invented that would help you work more effectively?
- What are your competitors doing better than you are?
- What do your customers want that you are not providing?

Here is another way to do a quick but effective performance gap analysis from inception to evaluation.

For a simple but useful performance gap analysis, answer the following questions:

- What is it now?
- Why is it a problem?
- Do we want to fix what is or create something new?
- Either way, what change in performance are we looking for, and from whom or what?
- Did we get the change we were looking for?

ASSESSING TRAINING NEEDS

Another type of assessment deals specifically with training needs. This is the assessment that most people think of when they talk about a needs assessment, usually calling it a "training needs assessment" or "analysis." In a nutshell, it basically asks: "What kind of training do you need?" You can guess from the question that it is (or should be) most often asked of possible trainees, or at least of individual performers. Often it is also asked of management, although we have already discussed the danger of this question: missing too much during our exploration of organizational and performance assessments. This does not mean that it is invalid or that you should not do it—only that you should realize its limitations.

There are three basic purposes of a training needs assessment and, while not mutually exclusive by any means, it is important to know which one your assessment is focusing on:

- To determine what the organization's training needs are
- To determine what needs of the organization can be met by training
- To determine what training an individual or work group of learners need

A specific training needs assessment is most useful when your charge for training has already been limited to a certain audience, or even a certain area of the company. For example, if you are an SME who has been charged with developing a specific course or group of courses, you may want to use this type of assessment to find out a little more about what the needs of your trainees might be. Here are two sets of questions you might ask when doing a specific training needs assessment.

TRAINING NEEDS ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS FOR MANAGEMENT

1. Describe the most important business opportunity currently facing your work group.
2. Explain the roadblocks that are keeping you from taking advantage of that opportunity.
3. Describe the most critical business problem currently facing your work group and the roadblocks that may keep you from solving it.
4. In what areas within your work group does there seem to be a gap between expected performance and actual performance.
   Why do you think this is so?
5. Does your work group have any current or anticipated time-critical training needs that you will require assistance in meeting?
6. What training delivery technologies are available for your work group?
7. What is the current training budget for your work group?
8. What training resources do you employ?
   Staff
   Vendors
   Facilities
9. Do you feel the individual contributors in your work group will be capable of, and comfortable in using, computers for their training? Why or why not?
10. What do you consider to be the most important general characteristics of the individual contributors in your work group in relation to training?
    Do they like to attend training? Dislike it?
    Like to learn on their own?
    Feel training is important? A necessary evil?
    Learn new things slowly? Quickly?
    Think that if they don't already know it, they probably don't need it?
11. How do you currently design and deliver training in your work group?
    Are you satisfied with this approach? If not, why not?

TRAINING NEEDS ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS FOR INDIVIDUAL CONTRIBUTORS

- What do you think about the existing training programs?
- How well did the training you received prepare you for the job?
- How could we improve existing training?
- In what way do you like to be trained?
  - Classroom
  - On the job
  - Videotapes
  - Self-instruction
  - Computer instruction
  - Job aids
  - Team training
  - Observing others
  - Working with a mentor
- What are the most common problems you have when doing your job?
- What about your job changes often?
- What about your job always stays the same?
- What do you need to know to excel at your job?
- Who do you think excels at your job now? Why?
- What do you need to have to be more productive?
- When new employees begin working with you, what knowledge or skills do you often find they are missing?

These two lists contain relatively general questions because training needs assessment is a more general type of analysis. If you want to be more specific, be sure to ask the learners or would be learners questions related to:

- Work directions
- Supervisory feedback
- Job tools and equipment
- Specialized resources
- Incentives
- Knowledge
- Motivation

Usually, these assessments are done as interviews or focus groups (see Chapter 3) and with job incumbents. As you will also see in Chapter 3, it is difficult to say where this type of assessment ends and the various other aspects of instructional design analysis begin.

Here is a template I have used to focus managers in on the specifics of a training needs assessment.

TRAINING NEEDS ASSESSMENT TEMPLATE FOR MANAGERS

1. Describe the current situation as you see it.
2. What indicators do you have that this might require a training solution?
3. How is this impacting organizational or work group goals?
4. Are there specific tasks that are not being performed adequately?
5. How often is this occurring?
6. How many performers are exhibiting the negative behavior?
7. What is the desired performance?
8. What would you like a training solution to accomplish?

We sort of missed the second purpose of a training needs assessment, that is, determining whether a need can be met by training. The following instrument, which is a bit more formal, can help you separate needs that can be met by training from those that have more of a performance basis, as we discussed earlier. It's usually completed by supervisors, managers, and other higher-ups, but with a little tweaking can be done by individual contributors as well.

NEEDS ASSESSMENT INSTRUMENT (PERFORMANCE VS. TRAINING)

The purpose of this instrument is to separate training issues from non-training based performance issues, and to do a preliminary analysis on both types of needs.

Issues that are determined to require further analysis should undergo a performance gap analysis and/or root cause analysis for performance issues.

This instrument can be completed by any supervisor or manager, either individually or in multi-level groups.

Name and Title_____ Designation_____ Contact Number_____

Part 1: General Questions

What issues exist in your area of responsibility that you feel require, or might be improved through a training intervention?

For each issue recorded above:

Is the issue specific to a current lack of individual or group job performance?

If so, please answer the questions in Part 2 for each specific issue.

Is the issue strictly a need for training in order to fulfill a requirement, or because of a change in procedures, work processes, direction, etc?

If so, please answer the questions in Part 3 for each specific issue.

Part 2: Performance Analysis

Issue:_____

If you feel this is a job performance issue:

What should the employees be doing that they are not now doing?

or

What are the employees doing now that they should not be doing?

When the employees are working most effectively, what does it look like?

and

What is preventing them from reaching the job performance you just envisioned?

Do the employees know the standards that are expected of them?

Yes No

Are the standards reasonable and achievable?

Yes No

Do they have the knowledge and resources to work to the standards?

Yes No

If you answered no to any of the above questions please explain your observations in detail.

Part 3: Training Needs Analysis

Issue:_____

If you feel this is a "training is required" issue:

Describe the current situation as you see it.

What indicators do you have that this might require a training solution?

In general terms, what skills, knowledge, or attitudes is it important for the personnel to have that they do not currently possess?

How is this lack impacting organizational or workgroup goals?

What would you like a training solution to accomplish?

A rapid design shortcut is to forego the time-intensive interviews and focus groups of a training needs assessment and simply read the various reports and statistics generated by the company, such as customer satisfaction surveys, supervisory comments, performance appraisals, developmental plans, lost time accident reports, repair reports, and so on. Choose the right documents (if they are available) and analyze them well; then you'll have a good shot at doing a valid training needs assessment.

CHOOSING NEEDS TO ADDRESS

No matter what road you go down to get there, sooner or later you will be at the point at which you know what all the training needs for your particular situation are, and you will have to decide which ones you will address.

Validation

The first step in this process is to validate the needs you have discovered through your organizational, performance, and/or training assessments. This can be a fairly simple process. In its basic form you send your possible needs list to SMEs and managers and ask for their opinions. The major problem is in determining who the SMEs might be. In most cases you will not want to use the individuals who helped you with your assessment. Their respected colleagues, however, could be of value, so ask them who they respect. You might also ask supervisors and managers for their recommendations of possible SMEs.

Here is a form you could use to help determine who might be an SME for this purpose, or any other for that matter.

SUBJECT-MATTER EXPERT SELECTION FORM

Name of candidate: _____

Date: _____

Position and/or title: _____

1. Years of experience in field:

2. Years of experience in current position:

3. Years of experience with company:

4. What do you think makes you an expert in your field?

5. What path did you follow to become an expert?

6. When you find that you do not understand something, where do you go for an answer?

7. What common mistakes do new people make at your job?

8. Could training help them? If so, how?

9. What do you like and dislike about training?

10. What would you change in our current training programs?

11. What advice would you give to someone starting out in your field?

SME Analysis (Completed by assessor after reviewing data)

1. Experience	1	2	3	4	5
2. Knowledge of job	1	2	3	4	5
3. Attitude toward helping people	1	2	3	4	5
4. Commitment to training	1	2	3	4	5
5. Assessor's comfort in working with	1	2	3	4	5

Whomever you use as a subject-matter expert, ask him or her to look over the needs and prioritize them for you. If the person sees missing needs, ask him or her to jot these down. Request notations on why the top two or three are most important. There is a lot more discussion on working with SMEs in Chapter 3. You can go there now if you are looking a needs analysis in the face and need help on the topic.

Questions to Ask Yourself

Your next assignment is to choose the need (or needs) that you will actually deal with from your validated list. This is more art than science, as it is based on a number of variables related to your company and its structure.

Your two most important parameters should be: "Where will I find the most return for my expenditure of resources?" and "What can or will the company support?"

Normally, the data you gather for your needs assessments *does not* give you an obvious answer to these questions. There may be a number of needs, some big and some small, some with easy solutions and some much more difficult to fulfill. Your problem will be to pick and choose the ones that you can work on without overreaching your capabilities, your time, or your budget.

Look for needs that were common in all your data-collection processes. These will probably lead you to critical needs. Relate these to organizational goals, particularly those that are not being met. Carefully consider complaints you have uncovered concerning the inadequacy of existing training.

Here is a series of more formalized questions that can help you determine whether a need is worth considering.

NEEDS CONSIDERATION QUESTIONS

- Will fulfilling this need help employees accomplish more in assisting the organization to reach its business goals?
- What will happen if this need is not met?
- Is this need related to providing a solution to a performance problem?
- Is the need related to workers not knowing what to do, how to do it, or when to do it?
- Will your organization's culture support the necessary training?
- Will your organization's policies allow for the application of the training?
- Will you be able to obtain valid feedback on the outcome of the training?
- Are physical facilities, equipment, and supplies available to support both the training and the transfer of skills to the job?
- Will monetary and nonmonetary incentives be provided when necessary?
- Will your trainees be interested in learning and applying the information presented in the training?
- Do you have or can you find the resources to produce an effective training program for this need?

Another way to choose training needs to address is to consider a program's basic value to the organization. Here's a worksheet you might use to determine that.

SELECTION CRITERIA WORKSHEET FOR LEVEL 4 EVALUATION

List each program or course you are considering evaluating in the left-hand column below. Rank each for each of the criteria

Program/ Course	*Operational Goal*	*Strategic Objectives*	*Audience Size*	*Visibility*	*Resource Investment*	*Management Interest*	*Data Collection*	*Total*

Ranking Scale

5 = Closely related to operational goal; 1 = Not related to operational goal

5 = Closely related to strategic objectives; 1 = Not related to strategic objectives

5 = Very large audience; 1 = very small audience

5 = High visibility for event; 1 = Low visibility for event

5 = Small investment of resources; 1 = Large investment of resources

5 = High level of interest in evaluating; 1 = Low interest in evaluating

5 = Good processes in place to collect data; 1 = Very little data will be available

A final aspect to consider when choosing training needs is your own capabilities and environment. Be sure to pick needs that you can work on without overreaching your capabilities for creating and implementing training programs, going over your allotted design and development time, or overspending your budget.

THE NEEDS ASSESSMENT REPORT

You may want to develop a report of some type to help you choose the right needs and report your findings (Be a Better Needs Analyst, *Info-Line*, 8502). This report can literally be a narrative of what you did and what you found out. It might also be a simple bulleted list of discoveries and decisions. The format you use should be based on what your boss and the organization prefer.

Here are some of the items you would normally find on a good assessment report:

- The task(s) not being performed to standard
- The required performance(s) and the actual performance(s)
- A summary of the causes of the performance deficiency
- How the causes were determined
- The recommended training solution(s)
- A detailed cost/benefit analysis used to determine the projected return-on-investment (ROI). (See the next section for more discussion of ROI.)

What you are creating through this process is often called a *training needs statement*. You will use this statement to formulate objectives for your program. Later, the objectives will be used to create the evaluation tools that will tell you whether the needs you have chosen have been met.

Here is an example of an assessment report:

Training Needs Analysis Report for Call Center Employees

This analysis was accomplished by interviews with twelve call center employees and three of their supervisors. We also observed the call center operations on three occasions during both peak and off peak times.

There were three sets of tasks not being performed to standard:

- Handling of non-English speaking customers
- Referring of type-two claims to higher level adjusters
- Basic customer courtesy responses

Of these, we see only the third item as a training issue. The first item can only be addressed by training if the call center employees are taught Spanish, which would be cost prohibitive. To resolve this issue, we recommend a hiring change to recruit more Spanish-speaking employees. The second item is simply a procedural issue that can be addressed through management reinforcement of the proper procedure.

For basic customer courtesy responses, the required performance is that each call be answered with a time-based greeting ("Good morning"), that the representative identify himself or herself by name, that the client's name be used as often as possible, and that a "thank you," a contact number, and a repeating of the representative's name conclude the interaction.

We found that this formula is followed in about 60 percent of the interactions, with the names of both customers and representatives being the items most often missed. The reasons for the performance deficiency seem to be a lack of orientation to the courtesy formula and a lack of supervisory follow-up.

The recommended training solution is a revised piece in the orientation program in which the representatives participate in a simulation to practice

the formula and discuss its importance. Particular emphasis should be placed on how our customers will feel toward the company when the formula is used and when it is not used.

For current employees, a refresher course taught by their supervisors is the recommended solution. This process will involve the supervisors, and the train-the-trainer piece that will be needed can be used to discuss monitoring issues as well. The employee program is estimated at one hour, while the supervisor preparation program will take approximately one-half day.

The cost/benefit analysis for the programs is included. Basically, it indicates design and development costs at $14,000 and implementation costs at $42,000. Using our normal repeat business profit add-on of $4.00 and assuming that each call center employee will enable two repeat customers a day through being more courteous, we will amortize the training cost in approximately five months and show a benefit of approximately $122,000 per year afterward.

Your final recommendations on your assessment report might also include consideration of aspects such as:

- How critical the need is to the organization
- How many performers are affected by the need
- Safety issues related to the need
- Legal, accreditation, or other mandates related to the need
- How the need affects actual operations (particularly customer service)
- The relationship of the need to other needs (Is it basic to other need fulfillment?)

Following is an outline for a more formal analysis report.

OUTLINE TEMPLATE FOR A TRAINING NEEDS ASSESSMENT REPORT

I. Overview
   A. General comments
   B. Strategic importance of what was analyzed
   C. Purpose and goals of analysis

II. Data Collection
   A. Methods employed
   B. Constraints (decisions made on what to do and what not to do)
   C. Instruments used

III. Sources of Data
   A. Human sources (internal and external)

B. Data sources (reports, procedures, etc.)
C. Customer sources

IV. Conclusions
A. Performance standards
B. Performance deficiencies
C. Causes of deficiencies
D. Consequences of deficiencies

V. Recommendations
A. Training recommendations
goals
target audience
description
benefits
anticipated problems
B. Non-training recommendations
rationale
description
audience
benefits
anticipated problems
C. Other recommendations and commentary

Here is a template I've used for both the assessment and the report.

TRAINING NEEDS ASSESSMENT REPORT

The purpose of this template is to plan and record the process of determining the learning needs of and organizational group or process.

Purpose, Goals, and Significant Background Information

Target Audience(s) (by levels)

Business Needs

Methodology

☐ A Gap Analysis is required
☐ A Job Analysis is required
Required Resources

Anticipated End Products

Findings

Conclusions and Recommendations

Next Steps

Appendix (Data)

If you find all of this too time-consuming, and to tell you the truth, often there is simply not that much time available, here is a six-step approach for a fast training needs analysis.

1. Identify the problem.
2. Analyze the tasks and conditions of the job.
3. Analyze the current performance levels.
4. Identify the causes of the problem.
5. Identify the desired performance outcome.
6. Identify the expectations of your training as related to the outcome.

By using this approach you can quickly determine whether training is the solution, and generally what training needs to be done.

Reporting Your Findings

The assessment report in one form or another is a good tool for you to use when reporting your assessment findings to upper management. Basically, there are two paths to follow in this reporting process. The first is when a performance gap or some other training need is fairly obvious and obtaining agreement that this should be addressed is a relatively simple matter. You can quickly go from here to defining your training process.

However, if the need is not as obvious, you will need to go into more detail on the performance aspects and specific areas, such as customer satisfaction increases, time to market advantages, quality enhancements, and whatever other parameters fit your assessment, particularly cost, which brings up our last—but definitely not least—topic in this chapter.

QUICK AND DIRTY COST/BENEFIT ANALYSIS

We've mentioned cost/benefit analysis (CBA) a couple of times so far, so let's take a look at how to do one (*Costs, Benefits, and Productivity in Training Systems* by Greg Kearsley, 1981). There are any number of ways to do a cost/benefit analysis. The approach we'll discuss here is a bit more traditional than some, but should help you in most circumstances and is relatively easy to do.

Basically, what you are trying to do by using a cost/benefit analysis is to figure out the projected cost of the training, which is not too difficult, and then compare it to the benefits of improved task performance or the meeting of an organizational need—which is often very difficult indeed, as hard data is not always available. It is usually a good idea to enlist the aid of an SME or the manager who helped you with your needs assessment to assist you with the development of some realistic numbers.

Sometimes an ROI or return on investment ratio is created from the projected costs and benefits numbers to make them easier to understand. The ROI ratios also make it easier to compare your program plan with cost/benefit analysis processes for other programs (*The Three R's of ROI* by Kim Ruyle, 1998), and even for non-training methods such as those we discussed in the area on performance analysis. These comparisons will help you to decide which possible intervention makes the most sense for your situation. Remember, the basic purpose of your cost/benefit analysis is to determine whether the training solution you are considering should be implemented.

Costs

The steps involved in determining costs (Where Have All the Dollars Gone? by Bob Schriver in *Technical Training*, 1998), for your cost/benefit analysis are as follows:

1. *Salary costs*: Multiply the daily salary of the employees attending the class by the number of employees who will attend, and this result by the number of days the class will run. If you have employees at different salary levels, you can use an average or multiply out each of the various levels singularly. For non-classroom training (OJT, mentoring, self-instructional programs) you may need to go calculate on an hourly basis, depending on the number of hours you anticipate the average trainee will need to master the program.

Example: Suppose you are considering a two-day class for twenty employees, all of whom are making $70 per day. The total salary cost for this class will be $2,800. On the other hand, if your training is a self-instructional program that you have designed to take the average individual eight hours to do, and your thirty trainees earn $22 per hour, the salary cost for your course will be $5,280.

2. *Benefits cost*: Add in the benefits cost for all employees using the same method. A benefits percentage of salary should be available from your HR department.

3. *Lost production*: Depending on the situation, you may need to add in the *anticipated value of lost production* while the employees are in training or *employee replacement costs* that will be incurred while the participants are away from the job if their work must be covered. A good rule of thumb here is 1.25 times the salary value, although this depends on the employee's position to a great extent.

Example: Your trainees are assembly line workers who will need someone to cover their jobs while they are gone. You should consider the salary or their replacements as a cost here. If they are high skilled workers and there will be an obvious productivity drop while they are away, use the 1.5 times salary formula.

Example: Your trainees are salaried or management employees who can cover their own work as needed. You may not want to add this aspect to your costs. However, you may want to use a factor for lost productivity, such as one-half or one-fourth of salary cost.

4. *Program development*: Compute the time and associated cost necessary to design, deliver, and evaluate the program. This should include your time as the designer and possibly the trainer, the trainer's time if you are not instructing (don't forget preparation time), and the cost of all materials, media, classroom rentals, and so on.

Time. There is no hard-and-fast rule for the time calculations, and many people will give you estimated numbers. I often work with a 10:1 ratio for instructor-led classes, that is, ten hours of design for each hour of delivered training, a 25:1 ratio for self-instructional print-based programs, and even higher ratios for more technology supported programs like CBT, blended programs, and e-learning. It's likely you won't want to do any of these high-tech designs alone, so talk to some of the experts you might use to help you with them, and get their bids as part of your cost/benefit analysis.

Hard Costs. Actual costs for things like overheads, slide, videos, and other media are easier to determine. Don't forget the cost of your print materials, such as participant packages, trainer guides, certificates, and so forth. Costs for things like word processing, printing, or even binders can add up rapidly. And don't forget your trainer's travel costs.

Some things that are often forgotten in this area include the cost of doing a pilot (both trainer and participant costs, including travel), the time you've spent and will spend in analysis, the time of SMEs with whom you will need to talk, and duplication of materials. If you will be teaching a public class, the cost of tuition for the class covers all of these items.

Here are a few thoughts on more detailed items that might go into a cost estimate and some average costs for training resources (current at the time of publication) to help you with your estimating.

ITEMS TO CONSIDER WHEN CALCULATING TRAINING COSTS

Direct Costs

Salaries and Benefits

- Full-time training personnel
- Part-time training personnel
- Occasional trainers or training developers

Program Design Costs

- Travel costs for analysis meetings
- Salary and benefits costs for SMEs
- Cost of materials used in designing course

Program Implementation Costs

- Cost of materials for course (including participant manuals, trainer manuals, media, special materials, etc.)
- Costs associated with train-the-trainer courses
- Travel costs for trainers
- Travel costs for trainees

Salary and benefits cost for trainees

Cost of training facility

Administrative Costs

Salary and benefits for record-keeping personnel

Record-keeping hardware and/or software

Evaluation Costs

Travel costs associated with evaluation

Salary and benefits costs of personnel involved in evaluation

Miscellaneous and Indirect Costs

Tuition and Travel Costs for Seminars and College Courses

Cost of Purchased Off-the-Shelf Programs

Cost of Training Consultants and/or Out-of-House Trainers

Cost of Training Hardware and Software (Computers, Overhead Machines, Authoring Programs, etc.)

Cost of In-House Trainer Development (Seminars, Books, etc.)

Cost of Other Purchased Training Resources

Replacement or Lost Productivity Cost for Trainees

Training Management Costs

SOME AVERAGE COSTS FOR TRAINING RESOURCES AND TIME FOR DEVELOPMENT

Basic Overhead Transparencies	$3 to $15
Computer Generated Overhead Transparencies	$12 to $75
Custom Produced Slides	$15 to $50 (depending on complexity)
Commercial Slides	$2 to $10
Audio	$25 to $150/minute
PowerPoint Slides	$3 to $30 (depending on who is creating)
Participant Manuals (development)	$30 to $75 per page (with limited graphics)
Desktop Publishing	$25 to $50 per hour
Graphic Designer	$30 to $75 per hour
Writer	$40 to $60 per hour
Programmer	$80 to $150 per hour
Custom Video	$1,000 to $3,000 per edited minute
Commercial Videotapes	$15 to $20 per minute

Classroom Facilitators	$40 to $50 per hour
Instructional Designers	$85 to $100 per hour
Consultants	$500 to $1500 per day
Standard Training Classroom (hotel or facility)	$150 to $200 per day
Technology Training Classroom	$300 to $500 per day
Enhanced Delivery Classroom (satellite, etc.)	$35 to $75 per day per student
Design and Delivery of Facilitated Instruction	7 to 15 hours per hour of instruction
Design and Delivery of Self-Instructional Programs	20 to 35 hours per hour of instruction
Low-Level Technology	200 to 300 hours per hour of instruction
Graphics-Based Programs (CBT)	$20,000 to $30,000 per hour of instruction
Higher Level TBT Programs (Multimedia)	200 to 600 hours per hour of instruction
Asynchronous e-Learning (Low to High Interactivity)	$10,000 to $100,000 per hour of instruction

5. *Travel expenses*: Calculate all participant travel expenses, including hotels, meals, transportation, and miscellaneous.

Add everything up using this formula:

Daily salary/employee × # of employees × # of days = _____
+ Benefit percentage x # of employees × # of days = _____
+ Lost production value (1.25 × salary) × # of employees × # of days = _____
+ Design and development and delivery or tuition costs = _____
+ Travel Expenses × # of employees = _____
And your total cost for the program is _____

Here are a few examples of the process in operation:

Example 1: You want to design a three-day class for twenty trainees. Their daily salary average is $90 per day:

Salary costs	$90 × 20 × 3 =	$5,400
Benefits costs	(33 percent of $90) × 20 × 3 =	$1,782
Lost production	(1.25 × $90) × 20 × 3 =	$6,750
Development costs	(@10:1 and $50/hour) =	$12,000
Travel expenses average	$1500 × 20 =	$30,000
	Total =	$55,932

Example 2: You look at that $30,000 travel cost and decide to try a computer-based self-instructional package that no one has to travel to use. You figure that in this format it will take the average employee only sixteen hours to master the material:

Salary costs	$90 × 20 × 2 =	$3,600
Benefits costs	(33 percent of $90) × 20 × 2 =	$1,188
Lost production	(1.25 × $90) × 20 × 2 =	$4,500
Development costs	(@45:1 and $50/hour) =	$36,000
Travel expenses	=	0
	Total =	$45,288

Example 3: Now you try to see whether it would cost less to use a public course offering from a vendor. You find one that is also three days in length and that covers *most* of your needs.

Salary costs	$90 s 20 s 3 =	$5,400
Benefits costs	(33 percent of $90) × 20 × 3 =	$1,782
Lost production	(1.25 × $90) × 20 × 3 =	$6,750
Tuition costs	$2175 × 20 =	$43,500
Travel expenses average	$1,500 × 20 =	$30,000
	Total =	$103,432

Benefits

Now let's look at the benefits side of the equation. This is the more difficult part of the process and will require some detective work on your part—and a little guessing as well. Start with the task(s) or performance(s) to be taught.

Determine the benefit of improved performance or ability to do the task or the meeting of an organizational need, or whatever. You may want to start with a verbal description of what this means and ask for a number of opinions from various interested parties as to what the dollar value might be.

Whatever you decide on as the benefit dollar amount should then be multiplied by the number of employees who will attend your program.

Depending on how you calculated the benefit, you may also need to multiply by the number of days an employee works each year (usually around 220).

This should give you something close to a yearly dollar benefit that will be realized from the program.

Other Benefits Associated with Training

As we noted, it is difficult to determine the true benefit of training or look at it from the point of view of the costs associated with poor training. What we've

done above is based mainly on increases in productivity, but a list of other factors that might be taken into account and weighed in on the side of training benefit dollars is given below.

Less overtime	Decreased turnover
Fewer injuries	Fewer penalties from noncompliance
Fewer correcting errors	Less equipment breakage
Less absenteeism	Lower loss of sales
Fewer lawsuits	Decreased inventory size
Decreased recruiting costs	Decreased set-up time

ROI

Return on investment or ROI is a ratio of your costs to your benefits. Ratios make it easier to compare various types of programs. Basically, positive ROIs are good, and the more positive the better. A negative ROI means that, as far as can be calculated, the company is not receiving enough of a benefit to justify the expenditure required for a program.

Return on investment numbers are not of much use by themselves, unless your company has an ROI goal that the training program must meet before it is considered worth doing. For example, if your company has an ROI goal of four, your training plan must achieve this number or it should not be undertaken. Return on investment numbers are more useful if you are comparing possible training programs or delivery systems.

Examples: An example here might be comparing the ROI for a computer-based training plan to that of a classroom-based plan, as we did in the cost example. You remember that the cost was higher for the classroom program, but an ROI will tell you how the cost stacks up to the benefit for each program. The higher ROI would be the more likely candidate for implementation.

Or you might use the ROI ratio to compare a program for training one group of employees to a program for training another, when you only have the resources at the time for one. The higher ROI gives the company the most benefit.

Calculate the ROI by subtracting the cost number from the benefit number, and then dividing the result by the cost number, as shown below.

(Benefits–Cost)/Cost

For example, from our previous cost estimations we found that the cost for a three-day classroom program was $55,932. If we added up all the improved

productivity values that would be gained from all the trainees every day for a year, we might have a number of around $106,000.

$$(\$106,000–\$55,932)/\$55,932 = .89 \text{ ROI}$$

The cost of $45,288 for the CBT program would result in an ROI of 1.34. Both of these are positive, which means the company will benefit from either, but one is higher than the other. Which one would you choose? We'll discuss ROI in more detail in the evaluation chapter but this is the basis of how you calculate it.

A somewhat facetious rapid design hint for cost/benefit analysis is to simply use the following technique: "Let's just find out what this problem is costing us and whether it is worth putting up the money we'd need to use to solve it." This assumes that you know what the problem is, that you can calculate the cost of the problem, the cost required to solve it, and that it is a problem for which training is a solution. If you can do all this without the formal process we've just described, you will know what you need to know, and it is a shortcut. In the final analysis, answering the "facetious" question is really what cost/benefit analysis is all about.

So now you know what the various types of assessments are and how to do them. You have a list of corporate needs, possible training needs, and perhaps a cost/benefit breakdown for meeting some of those training needs. This is all done in what we've termed the pre-design stage. In the next chapter we'll take what you've done so far and manipulate it further until we find the most critical issues, and then we'll look even deeper into these issues to determine what really needs to go into your training program. Chapter 3 is basically a continuation of what we've begun in Chapter 2, but that can be said of the entire process of instructional design, as each aspect feeds into the next. Chapter 3 deals more or less with analyzing the work that you've already accomplished.

TRAINING NEEDS ANALYSIS

We're not quite done with training needs, however. We've chosen the ones we will consider, but now we need to analyze each separately. This is actually the first step in the analysis process, but it is so closely related to needs assessment that I thought we might discuss it here.

If all this assessment/analysis jargon is getting to be too much, here is a one-pager I wrote for a client to try to explain the differences. Please take note that it was written for a specific client and that it is my take on the whole thing, but it might help some.

HIGH-LEVEL ASSESSMENT/ANALYSIS TERMINOLOGY

There are a number of occasions where clients request a needs analysis, a learning needs analysis, or some undefined process related to these terms. Often the requestors are not really sure what they are looking for, only that they need something to tell them what kind of training they require.

Dealing with these requests is difficult, as there are a number of different types of assessment/analysis that IDs employ, and it is not always clear what the client wants or needs. This tends to add to the confusion in showing clients templates or good examples to help clarify their requirements.

The purpose of this paper is to make an attempt at systematizing our assessment/analysis terminology and methodology and to provide some general templates based on this systemization.

The literature is as unclear as possible concerning a standardized definition of the terms needs analysis, learning needs analysis, and learning needs assessment. Therefore, I propose the following for our use:

Needs Assessment: A needs assessment is basically an organizational performance analysis, done at whatever level of the organization is to be targeted. Its purpose is to determine what needs (gaps) exist in the performance of that portion of the organization, or what opportunities exist for making the organization more successful through performance enhancements. Its main product is a list of performance gaps or opportunities that detail the current state and the desired state of the organization's performance.

Learning Needs Assessment: A learning needs assessment is an audience-centric assessment used to determine the specific learning needs of a part of the organization that might range from a function or discipline to a work group or job classification. It is targeted at a defined audience, and/or set of business needs. These needs might include performance issues, new or revised business processes, or employee development as it relates to organizational capability. Completion of a learning needs assessment may require other analysis activities such as a gap analysis or a job analysis. Its main product is a list of learning needs broken down as determined during the assessment planning by audience level or functional group.

Needs Analysis (Gap Analysis): An analysis of a defined organizational need or gap, performed to determine the causes of the problem, its criticality, and possible solutions. If this analysis determines that part of the solution to the need is learning related, a learning needs assessment is performed to define the learning need components. The main product of a needs analysis is a prioritized list of performance gaps or needs and recommendations for their possible solution. These solutions may or may not be learning related.

Learning Needs Analysis: A learning needs analysis analyses one or more learning needs as defined by a learning needs assessment to determine the most effective learning solution(s). It is concerned with the type of learning intervention

required to meet the need, the audience, and a description of what should be covered in the intervention, usually stated in terms of an intervention goal and high-level objective. This analysis may indicate the need for other forms of analysis, such as a curriculum analysis, task analysis, or learning analysis that will need to be completed before designing the intervention. Its main product is a list of learning needs and their recommended solutions.

At any rate, training needs analysis is relatively simple. It's mostly answering the questions you asked for the needs assessment, but only for an individual need. The purpose is to begin to delineate what the parameters and boundaries are for what you are going to design to meet this particular training need.

Here is a template you can use for the process.

TRAINING NEEDS ANALYSIS TEMPLATE

The purpose of this template is to plan and record the process of analyzing one or more defined training needs to determine effective solutions.

Purpose

Audience/Needs to Be Addressed

Business Needs Related to Learning Needs Being Addressed

Methodology

Anticipated End Product(s)

Findings

Conclusions and Recommendations

Other Forms of Analysis Required Before Designing Training (Curriculum, Task, Learning)

Appendix (Data)

Rapid ID Hint

You probably noticed that this template looks a lot like the assessment template, and they can be used interchangeably or simultaneously to decrease your analysis time.

This concept of analyzing a training need, or in many cases an already decided upon training program, can be much more formal and complete (as well as complicated) in some organizations. Here is an example of a more formal "analysis document" I've used with some of my clients that accomplishes training needs analysis … and then some.

COMPLEX TRAINING ANALYSIS DOCUMENT

The purpose of this document is to collect high-level design information.

Project Contacts			
Project Sponsor		**Instructional Designer**	
Signoff Authority		**Project Manager**	
Lead Subject-Matter Expert			

Business impact

What business performance gaps are addressed by the program?

What business metrics (KPIs) will be affected by the program?	

Project type			
Performance Analysis	☐	Training Needs Assessment	☐
New Content Development	☐	Policy and Procedure Changes	☐
Program Revise/Refresh	☐	Compliance or License Issues	☐
Other (Explain)	☐		
Project Type Comments			
Program Objective (what should the learner know/be able to do upon completion of program)			

Business goal/ performance gap relationship to objective

Required Further Analysis

☐ Job Analysis

☐ Task Analysis

☐ Learning Analysis

☐ Performance Gap Analysis

Audience Analysis

Target Audiences	Main Audience	Secondary Audience	Other Audiences
Job Role(s)			
Number			
Location			
Skill Level			
Prerequisite Knowledge, Skills, or Experience			
Other			

Delivery Analysis

	Delivery Method	Description Include reasons for delivery	Days/Hours
☐	ILT/Flipped Classroom		
☐	WBT		
☐	Virtual Classroom		
☐	Virtual Learning Environment		
☐	Video Teleconference		
☐	Job Aid/EPSS		
☐	Simulation		
☐	Mobile Learning		
☐	Linear Video		
☐	Other		
Total estimated length of course			

Evaluation
This program requires evaluation at the following level.

☐ Reaction	☐ Job Impact
☐ Learning	☐ Business Impact

How will the need for training of new hires after the program has completed its implementation be met?

Assumptions

Risks	Mitigation

Project Timing (SME availability, date all learners must have received training, etc.)		
Requested Start Date:	**Requested Pilot Date:**	**Requested End Date:**
Start Date.	Pilot Date.	End Date.

Resources Needed

Resource	Start Date	Finish Date
Project Manager		
ID		
SMEs		
Editor		
Desktop Publishing		
Media Specialist		
Facilitator Requirements		
Other Resource		
Total Hours		

Total Estimated Costs	
Design Costs	0.00
Vendor Costs	0.00
External SME Costs	0.00
Special Materials	0.00
Travel Costs	0.00
Other Costs	0.00
Total Costs	**$ 0.00**

General Notes

If you're looking for something a little less weighty for your scoping of a program, try this template.

PROGRAM ANALYSIS TEMPLATE (SHORT)

Goal of program (narrative but succinct)

Business need addressed by program (Why are we doing this?)

Performances affected by program

Audience(s) (# lives) (#/class) (locations) (prerequisites)

Preferred delivery (Why?)

Time projected for implementation (one-day class, etc.)

Time available for development (start date)

Beta test/pilot (dates and audience)

Number of offers (this year/future)(where)

Who do we talk to (SMEs, final content approver, signoff authority)

Facilitators (who/background/needs)

Program objectives (what learners should be able to know/do)

Some of the information that goes into these last two documents comes from other analysis techniques that are part of an ID's bag of tricks. Chapter 4 will discuss them in detail. The linear nature of this or any book might make you think these analysis processes occur in this sequence, but don't forget the spider web from Chapter 1. A good ID is always going back and forth along the strands of ADDIE to create the best learning intervention possible.

Chapter 3

Do You Know What You Need to Do? Analysis

This chapter will help you to:

- Master the most common analysis data-collection methods
- Differentiate among the various types of analysis
- Perform a job analysis
- Create a criticality analysis
- Determine whether you need to do a task analysis and how to do one
- Do an audience analysis
- Discover what a competency analysis is

If Chapter 2 helped to provide a blueprint for your training, then this chapter creates the foundation upon which it will rest. Analysis will tell you what needs to be taught and what does not need to be taught in your training program.

Both of these aspects are important. You want your trainees to learn everything they require to do their jobs, but you don't want them to waste their time learning things they don't have to know. For example, if one of the needs you isolated doing the processes in Chapter 2 is for new employees to learn how to make a tire properly, there are a lot of things you can teach them. In public school the teacher would probably start with the history of tires, or even the history of the wheel. You might not want to go this far back, but you might think it's important for the trainees to learn about how the company has been making tires; then again, you may not. If "Joe" were teaching the class, he might want to tell the trainees about the problems they had installing and running

the X45-B tread machine when it first came on line, while "June" might want to discuss her technique for moving those heavy truck tires without straining herself. And then again . . . .

By now you should be getting a clearer picture of what analysis does. As we said, in its simplest aspect it helps you decide both what you want to teach and what you do not want to teach.

It's difficult to say where analysis really begins. Some designers would contend that what we labeled as pre-design in Chapter 2 is actually part of analysis. Some even use the terms "assessment" and "analysis" interchangeably, as in "training needs analysis" and "audience assessment." Others say that analysis is strictly job and task analysis, with everything else being part of the design component. For our purpose of rapid instructional design, this slicing and dicing really doesn't matter. Our delineations throughout this book are fluid. If you want to consider needs assessment as part of analysis, that's fine. If you want to move delivery analysis (which we'll discuss in Chapter 4) back to this chapter, that's good, too. The important thing is that you know what these concepts are—and use them when your situation dictates.

DATA-COLLECTION METHODS

There are a number of different types of analysis and a number of ways of doing each. Which type(s) of analysis you choose and what data-collection method(s) you use will depend on your topic (or need), your business environment, and the type of training you are considering. For example, if you are involved in our tire building example from above, you will probably want to do an analysis that tells you what exact knowledge and skills a person must have to build a tire. These skills and knowledge are what your program will teach and, more importantly, what your trainees should learn. For this purpose, you will probably need to do a task analysis (more about task analysis later).

As far as data-collection methods are concerned, you already know that the best tire builder in the company is Sam down at the Knoxville plant. So you might want to go there and interview Sam, ask how he does it, and see what his tricks and shortcuts are. You might then want to observe him for a bit and see whether he practices what he preaches. Or you may not know who the "best" is, or even whether there is a best. In this case you may want to interview a number of builders or to bring them together to talk about what they do.

There are specific names for each of these data-collection methods, and you can find them and others in the following list (*Figuring Things Out* by Ron Zemke, 1982).

Analysis Data-Collection Methods

- Focus groups
- Interviews
- Questionnaire or survey
- Observation
- Document collection and verification
- Job duties categorizing
- Delphi studies
- Job diaries
- Examination of performance and productivity measures
- Nominal group technique
- Critical incident method

The first four of the methods above are the most commonly used, so we'll discuss them in some detail. Descriptions for the others can be found in the various analysis resources listed in the suggested readings.

Focus Groups

When using a focus group, you invite individuals who are experts in the information you want to gather to meet and discuss what they know. I like to keep the focus group to around four to five participants, as this is a manageable number, but you might want more or less depending on the material and your company's environment and politics.

A Focus Group Example

There are a number of methods for handling a focus group. One that works well is to start out with a brainstorming session in which the group simply states everything they think is important to the subject at hand. Don't worry about right or wrong, and don't let the participants get into a discussion. That will come later. Use a flip chart (or a lot of flip charts) to capture and post all the ideas. You might want an assistant to help you with the recording aspect.

If you have a large focus group, break the people into smaller groups for the brainstorming, each group with its own recorder. Then bring them together and re-record the information onto general flip charts.

The next step is to categorize the information into groupings of some type, depending on what your main topic is. By categorizing you will be able to eliminate duplications and help your experts recognize concepts or whole areas that they might have missed.

Take a break, then have them look through your general groupings once more and make final changes and comments. This is where the discussion really gets going, so save about half your focus group time for this aspect. Generally, that about does it for a focus group. You may want to send typed lists back to the group for validation or further explanation, but this is done after the group meeting.

There are other activities you might want to do in focus groups that deal with specific types of analysis, such as task analysis, audience analysis, or performance analysis, but we'll discuss these augmentations when we look at each type of analysis.

Participants

There are many possible approaches for choosing focus group members. You may want a mix of seasoned performers, individuals with a year or two of experience, and one or two who have only been on the job a couple of months. Some designers like to hold more than one focus group with a single level of experience in each.

You might want top performers, particularly if you are doing a competency analysis. These individuals can be found by comparing their years of experience to their ranking in the organization. Those with a great deal of experience and high rankings should be top performers. To obtain such rankings, do an informal poll of co-workers and supervisors, asking simply, "Who's the best at this?" or "Who do you go to when you have a problem?"

Make sure the experience is the right kind, that is, experience in what you are analyzing. The generalist who knows a little about a lot might not be the person you want for your specialized focus group.

There is great deal of discussion as to whether you should mix supervisors and performers in a focus group. You need supervisory and even management input; but if you feel the supervisors will inhibit the discussion, you may not want to mix them in. If you think this may be a problem, talk to them later or use their expertise as part of the validation process. Each company and even each department has its own culture, and you will need to know yours before you decide whether to include or exclude supervisors from your focus group.

One other shortcut that works well with focus groups is the use of Post-it™ Notes or what's commonly referred to as the "sticky" method. Instead of using flip charts, have your small groups write their tasks on *large* "stickies" and post them. Then during categorizing, just move the stickies around and combine them where required.

Another way to find a wide variety of participants for your focus groups is to use the telephone instead of face-to-face meetings. This method is a little

cumbersome, think two degrees worse than a telephone conference call, but it may be the only way to collect data from some of your critical sources.

Even more than in a face-to-face focus group you need to prepare the participants in advance, with a strong objective and good questions that they can think about. Also, a list of participants that they can refer to is a good idea. During the phone focus group, make sure the participants identify themselves before each submission (cumbersome, but very necessary if you want good interaction) and monitor to make sure one or two don't take over. Having a scribe to write down the responses while you facilitate the group is also a good idea.

One thing I've learned from sad experience is never mix a face-to-face and telephone focus group. The participants on the phone often feel left out as discussions start among the face-to-face people, and many times they just can't hear what is going on. They end up paying little attention except when they want to speak, which is the opposite of what you want. Instead, run two focus groups, one face-to-face and one over the phone. It takes more of your time but will really be worth it.

Facilitating a Focus Group

A key to the success of a focus group is how well you do your job as facilitator. This means planning the process, communicating well, and listening a lot while talking as little as possible during the actual group process. Here is a list of activities a successful focus group facilitator performs, as adapted from material contained in Allen Communication's *Designer's Edge* instructional design software:

- Defines the scope of the process
- Develops the objectives to be accomplished
- Determines what strategies (activities) will be used
- Creates an agenda that effectively communicates the above
- Chooses the right participants and mix of participants
- Prepares the room
- Makes sure everyone knows everyone at the start of the meeting
- Reviews and clarifies the agenda
- Explains the procedures to be followed
- Keeps the meeting on track
- Records data and pushes for clarification where needed
- Communicates the results

A somewhat different type of focus group, and a rapid design shortcut, is to use an electronic bulletin board instead of a live meeting. Focus group members can react to comments made by others and post their own responses to your questions when they have the time. You need to manage this process carefully so that neither the time nor the amount of data will get out of hand, but this method can be very time effective. This is a great tool if you are doing a Delphi study for your analysis.

You can also run a chat room focus group in which everyone is connected by computer synchronously. I've not found that these are much better than a telephone-mediated process, but in this age of computer everything, many participants, particularly younger ones, are very comfortable with this technique.

Interviews

Another data-collection technique is the one-on-one interview. For this process you talk to your experts individually, asking a series of questions. Or you may allow the interview to be free-form, listen to whatever the experts have to say, and ask questions as they come up.

If you are using pre-determined questions, you may want to send them out to the interviewees in advance. This gives them time to consider what you are looking for and perhaps even to ask colleagues for their opinions. The interview itself can be spent discussing the expert's answers and delving into follow-up questions.

One of the problems with individual interviews is that the individuals bring their own biases into the situation, and because you can't expect a person to be completely objective, you have to interview several experts from the target population. This can be time-consuming for the interviewer.

A rapid design shortcut for interviewing is to try to interview people two at a time. Not only does this cut down the amount of time you spend interviewing, but it gives the interviewees a chance to react to one another's comments, which can give you new and different insights.

Phone Interviews

Interviews are often done over the phone in lieu of meeting face-to-face in large or highly distributed companies, or when there are a number of SMEs you need to talk to. This obviously saves travel cost, and a lot of the interviewer's time as well.

What is lost is the feeling for the environment in which the work is being done. It's hard to put an objective measure to this "sense," but I've found that it is important. Just looking around can also lead to follow-up questions that would never have occurred to you over the phone. My advice is to use the

telephone and other high-tech methods as you need them and when you can. However, don't use them exclusively for your interviewing. Be sure to make at least one or two trips to the work site to see for yourself what's going on.

Advantages

Some advantages of using interviews as a data-collection technique include:

- Can be used for almost any type of analysis
- Builds supporters for training
- Can easily be done at various organizational levels
- Good for feelings and opinions
- Can be made more efficient through technology such as the telephone

A Last Question

One other thought on interviews. The last question I always ask is: "Is there anything that you are surprised that I did not ask about?" I use this question or a variation of it no matter what the purpose of the interview is. I've even used it at job interviews. Try it yourself sometime. You may be surprised at some of the things you learn.

Surveys or Questionnaires

A survey or questionnaire is simply a list of questions concerning the topic you are analyzing (Surveys from Start to Finish, *Info-Line*, 612). Use them when you need a lot of responses or when your training audience is widely dispersed. Surveys are a good tool for doing an audience analysis, as we will see later.

Disadvantages

The problem with surveys is that it is difficult to write really good questions that aren't subject to interpretation. The more interpretation, the less usable your data will be and the harder it will be to collect it into meaningful groupings. With surveys the respondents cannot ask you to clarify what you meant, unless they go thorough the trouble of picking up the phone and finding you available. You cannot ask follow-up questions either, unless you go through the same process. This means that your respondents will be guessing at what you are asking for, and you will be doing some guessing at what they are really trying to say. This guesswork leads to misconceptions at worst and, at best, to a lot of extraneous data that you may or may not need.

You also receive pretty poor returns on surveys normally. Fifteen percent is a good return; 10 and even 5 percent returns are not unusual. So if you are

using surveys, send out plenty more than you need, because you won't receive as many back as you'd like.

Advantages

Some advantages of using questionnaires as a data-collection technique include:

- Can be anonymous
- Can reach a large group in a short time
- Data is uniform
- Allows respondents time to think about answers and even to do research
- Is often the cheapest method
- Is usually the most time-effective method for respondents

Net Surveys

A lot of survey data collection is now being done through net-based survey instruments (www.astd.org). These high-tech programs make data collection and manipulation easier, but do not really solve the problems of item development and follow-up questions. Some of the best have a bulletin board facility for posting questions, but this is not a lot better than the telephone and assumes that your respondents will check back in to read your explanations or questions. This can be a pretty large assumption when your respondents are busily engaged in their own jobs, and you were lucky if they took the time to do your survey in the first place.

Experience seems to indicate that returns of net-based surveys are no higher than they are for the paper-and-pencil variety.

Although net-based surveys have their pros and cons, using electronic methods for receiving feedback to any analysis process is another rapid design shortcut. This could be by computer disk, flash drive, or e-mail, but the key is to receive as much analysis information as possible electronically, which makes it easier to manipulate and place into other types of documents.

Observations

Observations are basically what the name indicates. You collect data by watching the expert at work. You might also want to watch those who are not quite as expert—and even those who are just beginning. This will give you a range of how the work should be and is done.

A period set aside for questioning is important with any observation. This is usually done after the observation, but may be continuous during the observation if this does not bother the person being observed or somehow change the process as you are observing it.

I've always found it best to observe without questions first, then observe the process again with questions, if possible. If the individual I'm observing is giving a running commentary, I might use a tape recorder; otherwise, I try to take good notes.

I try to observe at least two "experts" and one or two "average" contributors for each data-gathering process. The problem with observing only the experts is that they often use shortcuts that your trainees will be unable to master, as they will be new to the process. In other words, experts may make it look too easy and you will miss some key points. I've never had good results observing new contributors, although other folks who do analysis say that this should be part of any observation. Your choice.

Another observation method is to have a person who wants to develop the job skills observe the expert and document what he or she sees. Usually you will need to have two or three separate observations with different observers and experts to act as a control on this process. You might bring the observers together as a kind of mini focus group to finalize the process.

Disadvantages

The problem with observations is that they take a lot of time and may not necessarily catch all the needed information, as some things are done by an expert only on certain occasions and may not occur during the observation.

Advantages

Some advantages of using observations as a data-collection technique include:

- Provides information on actual performance
- Gives a context for the training
- Allows you to be flexible through the asking of questions
- Often indicates other issues that you need to explore
- Is great for giving you an initial picture

Here is a template you can use for observations.

OBSERVATION FORM

Observer: _____
Date: _____
Location: _____
Individual observed: _____
Job or task observed: _____
Purpose of observation:

Behavior Observed	*Training Required?*	*Priority (1–5)*
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

Comments:

Hybrids

The best data-collection techniques are probably a combination of these processes and others. For example, you may do a questionnaire to gain an overall view of the topic and then focus in with a focus group. Or you might start by observing and then hold formal interviews based on the observations. Depending on how much time you are given, you may combine three or more techniques, or you may only have the time for one. Whatever you choose, let your topic, your corporate environment, and what it (and you) can support be the deciding factors.

Questions to ask yourself when deciding on an analysis method include:

- How much contributor involvement will be required, and can I persuade them to give their time?

- How much management involvement will be required, and will management support the analysis?
- How long will it take to collect and correlate the data, and do I have that much time?
- How much will it cost, and do I have the budget?
- How relevant will the data be from using this technique?

As you might guess, the last question is the most important. Nothing else matters if the data does not help you create the training. However, all five of these questions should be considered when planning your data collection.

WHY ANALYZE?

By now you might be saying: "But why do I have to ask anybody? I know how to build tires; in fact, I'm the best at it. That's why they choose me to do the training." Well, that may be, but did you ever hear the saying about the "fool" who has himself as his lawyer. The same goes for analysis. You may be a subject-matter expert, even *the* subject-matter expert, but it never hurts to ask a few others for their opinions. You may have mastered the job so thoroughly that you've forgotten some of the things that will puzzle a new person, or one of your colleagues may have a better way to do one of the tasks associated with the process.

Whatever the reason, don't analyze only your own expertise. Be sure that you have the total picture of what your trainees will need to learn. One of my favorite reasons for analysis is this quote:

> "Would you tell me please, which way I ought to go from here?"
> "That depends a good deal on where you want to go"
>
> LEWIS CARROLL'S *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*

TYPES OF ANALYSIS

There are many types of analysis associated with the instructional design process, and it seems new ones appear every few years. We've discussed a couple of them already in the previous chapter when we talked about organizational analysis, performance analysis, and training needs analysis, but let's look at a few of the other major ones that you will almost certainly need to employ when developing a good training program. Here is a list of most of them. You may notice that the ones we've already discussed are on the left side, so the right side is where we will be for the rest of this chapter.

Types of Analysis	
Organizational Performance	Job
Criticality	Criticality
	Training Needs (assessment)
Gap	Task
Opportunity	Learning
Training Needs (Assessment)	Audience
Cost/Benefit	Delivery

Job Analysis

The most common type of analysis is job analysis (Be a Better Job Analyst, *Info-Line,* 903). The main purpose of a job analysis is to find out what tasks are necessary to do a job, that is, to break down a complex job into its component parts. If you are an SME who has been assigned the responsibility of creating a training program, this is where you would most likely start with your analysis.

Begin by recording your training need and the problem, issue, or opportunity that is related to it from the pre-design processes discussed in Chapter 2. Now record all the tasks associated with that need, paying special attention to any tasks that were not being performed properly according to your needs assessment.

Task Characteristics

If you are not sure what is a task and what is not, here are some task characteristics:

- Tasks have a definite beginning and end.
- Tasks are of short duration, minutes or a few hours at the most.
- A task can be observed so you know whether it has been completed.
- Tasks are independent of other actions.
- Tasks start with a verb or highly specific action.

Action Verbs

Action verbs are used to describe job tasks and steps. This list is not all-inclusive. Use the verb that best describes the actual work (performance) on the job.

If the person needs to be able to:	*Additional Action Verbs*
Appraise conclusions	Argue
Compare and contrast	Assess
Critique materials	Attach
Judge the logical consistency of written material or ideas	Choose
	Compare
Judge the adequacy with which conclusions are supported by data	Criticize
	Defend
Judge the value of a work by use of internal criteria	Estimate
Judge the value of a work by use of external standards of excellence	Evaluate
	Justify
	Predict
	Rate
	Score
	Select
	Support
	Value
Assemble parts	Arrange
Compose / compile a report	Assemble
Create a new process	Collect
Design a new machine	Combine
Integrate learning from different areas into a plan for solving problems	Construct
	Devise
Propose a plan for an experiment	Formulate
Write a computer program or creative story	Generate
	Manage
	Modify
	Organize
	Plan Prepare
	Propose
	Re-arrange
	Re-construct
	Set up
Assess the relevance of data	Analyze
Breakdown into parts	Appraise
Diagram a workflow	Calculate
Differentiate functions	Categorize

If the person needs to be able to:	*Additional Action Verbs*
Distinguish between facts and inferences Illustrate relationships Recognize unstated assumptions Recognize logical fallacies in reasoning	Compare Contrast Criticize Differentiate Discriminate Distinguish Examine Experiment Question Separate Subdivide Test
Apply concepts and principles to new situations Apply laws and theories to practical situations Compute / solve equations Demonstrate correct usage of a method, process, or procedure Manipulate objects Modify a process Operate equipment Use in a new situation	Apply Change Choose Construct Demonstrate Dramatize Employ Illustrate Interpret Operate Practice Prepare Produce Relate Schedule Show Sketch Solve Use
Convert numbers Estimate future consequences implied in data Estimate outcomes Explain concepts, facts, and principles	Classify Describe Discuss Distinguish

If the person needs to be able to:	*Additional Action Verbs*
Interpret verbal material Interpret charts and graphs Summarize information Translate verbal material to mathematical formulas Translate languages	Explain, Express Generalize Give examples Identify Indicate Infer Interpret Locate Paraphrase Predict Recognize Report Restate Review Re-write Select Translate
Define basic terms or concepts Describe basic processes Identify methods and procedures Label parts List / name key components Recall specific facts State principles Select items from a list	Arrange Define Duplicate Identify Label List Match Memorize Name Order Recognize Relate Recall Repeat Reproduce State

If this list of task characteristics helps you, then by all means use it, but many new designers spend a lot of time trying to fit things into these definitions. I find that the best approach to use is if you think it's a task, then write it down; you can always revise later. The only characteristic I really hold to is the last. Your task should have a verb or action associated with it. For example, going back to our tire manufacturing scenario, you may find that the job tasks include:

- Choosing the correct tread size
- Reversing the interior matrix
- Laying on the steel belt
- Sequencing the assembly machine
- Trimming excess rubber
- Inspecting for proper seal

Notice that each of these tasks has an action associated with it, some more than one. They may not all meet the characteristics listed earlier and so may need further analysis, but this list is a good start.

Doing a Job Analysis

If you are not an SME, or even if you are but you want to do this right, you will need to do data collection to make sure you have recorded all possible tasks. Focus groups are an excellent data-collection method for a job analysis, particularly when combined with observation. Interviews with job incumbents are also a good data-collection technique here. You might obtain information from any existing training courses already being used by your company and from company documents as well.

Here are a few questions you might ask yourself or your SMEs as part of a job analysis:

- What do you need to know to do your job well?
- What do you think you do well that a new employee at your job would not?
- What are the most common problems you encounter in your job?
- What changes often on your job?
- What tricks have you learned that help you do your job better?
- What do you like most and least about your job?
- What makes you most productive on your job?
- What prepared you best to do your job?

Here are a few ideas on where you might find information for your job analysis:

Find out as much as possible about the job you are analyzing by:

- Looking at job descriptions
- Listing all tasks involved in the job
- Noting prerequisite learning
- Obtaining copies of existing courses
- Interviewing new hires
- Interviewing veterans

A rapid design technique for job analysis, or any place where you are using SMEs, is to choose individuals who are not "over-experienced" as your subjects. You don't want new employees, but you also don't want those who have so much experience that they waste your time with information that is beyond the needs of your audience. Look for SMEs who know their stuff, but are capable of telling you what is needed without going too far beyond that.

Product of a Job Analysis

The product of your job analysis should be an exhaustive list of all the tasks that go into the performance of a job. Some of these tasks might require training and some might not, but you need to know what they all are before you can make a decision. One thing you will know for sure. If you did a proper job analysis and something is not on your task list, then it *does not* require training. This is a key step in making sure you do not waste time instructing your trainees on things they do not need to know.

Use the following chart to help you produce a task list that you can use effectively.

Requirement	*Task Statement*	*Example*
Clarity	Use wording that is easily understood.	"Compare written description to actual performance," but not "Relate results to needs of field."
	Be precise so words mean the same thing to all personnel in the job classification.	Use words such as check, coordinate, or assist with caution, as they are vague.

Requirement	*Task Statement*	*Example*
	Write separate, specific statements for each task. Avoid combining vague items of skill, knowledge, or responsibility.	"Supervise files" or "Maintain files," but not "Have responsibility for maintaining files."
Completeness	Use abbreviations only after spelling out the term.	"Closed Cycle Cooling System (CCCS)" may be followed by "Start Up the CCCS."
	Include both form and title number when the task is to complete a standard form, unless all that is needed is a general type of form.	"Complete Task Description Worksheet (Form Number 2243)."
Conciseness	Be brief. Short phrases are preferred to long expressions.	"Write production and control reports," but not "Accomplish necessary reports involved in the process of maintaining production and control procedures."
	Begin with a present-tense action word (subject "I" or "you" is understood).	"Clean" or "Write."
	Indicate an object of the action to be performed.	"Clean engine" or "Write report."
	Use terminology that is currently used on the job.	"Use most recent NRC documentation."
Consistency	Avoid stating a person's qualifications, such as intelligence, experience, or education.	"Load computer tape," but not "Has one year of computer training."
	Omit items on receiving instruction, unless actual work is performed during training.	"Give instruction," but not "Attend lecture."

Here is a simple job analysis template you might use for your job analysis.

JOB ANALYSIS TEMPLATE

Job _____ Job Description _____ Role(s) Related to Job _____

Task	*Subtasks/ Steps*	*Possible Learning Objective*	*Additional Information Related to Task*	*Procedures/ Documents/ Job Aids*
	List the subtasks/steps required for each task	Reconsider during task analysis to confirm and change as necessary	Good practices, hints, and tips	Those related to task
1.				
2.				
3.				
4.				
5.				
6.				
7.				
8.				
9.				
10.				

If your company has well-done and very complete position descriptions, you may be able to employ them as a rapid design shortcut for job analysis. Use them as a framework for your interview or focus groups to make them more efficient, or, if they are really complete, use them in lieu of these processes. Make sure that they are up-to-date and as accurate as possible by having an SME job incumbent validate them before their use.

Criticality Analysis

You make the decision for which tasks require training by doing what is called a *criticality analysis*. Basically, this type of analysis looks at four factors:

- How often is the task done?
- How difficult is it to do?
- How important is it to the job?
- How much training will be required to become proficient at the task?

Once again, you'll want to gather opinions on these factors from experts. This is one of those items we mentioned earlier that you can easily attach to your focus group process if you are using it as part of a job analysis.

A good tool for doing a criticality analysis is a criticality matrix on which you list all of your tasks in one column and the four factors in others. Assign number values or descriptions, such as "extremely frequent," "moderately difficult," or "low importance" for each factor for each task. Then choose those tasks for training that meet your criteria. This is not terribly scientific, nor statistically sound, but it will work well for your job analysis. Here's an example of a completed criticality matrix.

CRITICALITY MATRIX EXAMPLE

Rate each task as 1 through 5 for frequency on the job (frq), difficulty to do (diff), importance to completing the job (impt), and how difficult it will be to train people to do (trn). The higher the number, the more frequent, difficult, important, or difficult to train the task is.

Task Number	*Task**	*Frq*	*Diff*	*Impt*	*Tm*	*Total*
1	Choosing the correct tread size	5	3	5	1	14
2	Reversing the interior matrix	1	5	5	2	13
3	Laying on the steel belt	3	1	4	2	10
4	Sequencing the assembly machine	5	1	5	5	16
5	Trimming excess rubber	3	1	2	1	7
6	Inspecting for proper seal	5	1	4	2	11

*All tasks scoring twelve or more, or with a "5" in the training column, should be considered for training for this analysis.

If your company captures performance data, it can help you make decisions on the need for training on various tasks as well, as can error analysis that is done by your quality group. Reviewing any current training evaluations or any standardized test that the company gives can also be useful for making decisions on what tasks need to be trained on.

Other Questions to Determine Task Criticality

Here are some other questions you might ask when considering whether or not a task should be trained on. Note that some of them are closely related, or exact repeats of, assessment questions from Chapter 2.

- Is there some mandate from governmental or accrediting organizations for the training?
- Is the training required for legal or human resources (equal employment opportunity, wage and hour) reasons?

- What happens if the task is not performed correctly or not at all?
- What level of proficiency is necessary?
- How does the task relate to organizational goals?
- How much time is required to perform the task?
- What does the trainee need to know or be able to do before he or she can be trained on the task?
- If we do not train, how will the employees learn the task?

In the final analysis, what you are really seeking are the essential tasks related to doing the job that require training in order to be effectively mastered. Any task that is not essential, or that cannot be addressed by training, should not be found in your final cut.

Here is another form you might use which combines both a job and a criticality analysis. Note the directions that follow it on how to use the form.

JOB AND CRITICALITY ANALYSIS FORM

Need:_____

Job:_____ Date:_____

Task	*Frequency*	*Importance*	*Learning*	*Risk*
	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1
Subtasks	*Frequency*	*Importance*	*Learning*	*Risk*
	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1

Date: The date when this form is completed.

Tasks: The list of tasks is a breakdown of the broad activities to be performed on the job. The tasks statements should include a concise description of what the employee will do on the job.

Begin with an action verb.

Use a noun following the action verb.

Avoid overlap with other tasks.

Subtasks:	Any part of a task not at the level of knowledge, skills, and attitudes (KSAs)
Frequency:	How frequently is the individual task performed on the job?

Each task should be rated as daily, weekly, once a month, or less than once a month.

4 = daily
3 = weekly
2 = once a month
1 = less than once a month

Importance: How important is the individual task to overall job effectiveness? Each task should be rated as critical, moderately critical, not critical, or could be omitted.

4 = critical
3 = moderately critical
2 = not critical
1 = could be omitted

Learning: How difficult is the task to learn? Each task should be rated as very difficult, moderately difficult, somewhat difficult, or not difficult.

4 = very difficult
3 = moderately difficult
2 = somewhat difficult
1 = not difficult

Risk: What is the degree of risk associated with performing the task incorrectly? For instance, could the employee be injured or could the mistake cost the company a lot of money? Each task should be rated as high risk, moderate risk, minimal risk, or no risk.

4 = high risk
3 = moderate risk
2 = minimal risk
1 = no risk

Task Analysis

In many cases you will need to go deeper than a job analysis to determine what you need to train on, or what the training will be comprised of. To do this, you analyze the specific skills and knowledge that make up a task from your job analysis. This is termed a *task analysis* (Be a Better Task Analyst, *Info-Line*, 503).

A task analysis is simply a job analysis at a deeper level. You try to find the basic skills and knowledge that make up your task. You may find that your task can be divided into subtasks and even sub-subtasks before you get to these basics. You may also find that you can stop at one of the subtask levels, as this is where you will need to train.

A rapid design shortcut for task or job analysis is simply to spend a day observing an SME at work and ask questions. This is not perfect, but it will be pretty close.

Example

Let's use some of our examples of tire building tasks again:

> For the task "choosing the correct tread size," you realize that the trainees will need to know what the various tread sizes are and how to differentiate them. This is the knowledge that they need for the task and there does not seem to be a deeper level than this, so your task analysis is complete for this task.
>
> For the task "reversing the interior matrix," you find that the knowledge is simply to know when the matrix needs to be reversed and that the skill is to reverse it correctly—simply a matter of turning it inside out.
>
> However, for "sequencing the assembly machine," you find that there are a number of subtasks, such as setting up the machine, moving the matrix to the correct position on the machine, creating the proper air pressure environment, laminating the sidewall layers, and so on. Each of these subtasks needs to be analyzed for what the trainee will be required to learn in the way of new knowledge and skills.

Depth of Task Analysis

Figuring out which tasks must be further analyzed is another one of those skills in instructional design that only comes with practice. The best advice I can give you is to over-analyze, and then reduce as necessary. If you do your program development properly, there will be a number of checkpoints later on in the process that will tell you whether you have the right content to the right degree, and these will help you eliminate unnecessary detail. However, the checks (or *reviews,* as they are most often called) will not be as effective at finding anything that you did not include, so err on the side of too much at this point, if you can.

Of course, how much analysis you do and how deep you go is also dependent on the amount of time you have to do analysis. In the real world, where most of us work, you often have to shortchange your analysis simply to finish the program on time. If this is the case for your program, spend the time doing the job and criticality analysis and trust yourself or your SMEs as content experts for the more basic skills and knowledge. If you have a good foundation, that is, a valid task list, you should be OK in most circumstances.

And don't forget that one of the most important skills of a good instructional designer is the ability to revise based on the input of others. Many people get into the "pride of authorship" thing and don't want to take anything out of their programs, particularly things they spent a lot of time analyzing and getting right. Good instructional design requires constant revision, elimination, and addition as new aspects present themselves. Your program is not written

in stone until the day it is taught, and even then only for that day; you should begin making revisions for the next class based on what you learn in this one.

Data Gathering for Task Analysis

You can use the same data-gathering methods for task analysis as you did for your job analysis, sometimes doing both at the same time. This is normally not the best approach, as the burden of doing both types of analysis at the same time may cause you to miss important items in your push to finish. It can also be inefficient, as you may analyze tasks that you find out later don't need to be trained on, and thus do not have to be analyzed. However, corporate needs may dictate that you have only a limited amount of time or availability of analysis resources, so you must do the best you can.

Other places to gather data on skills and knowledge associated with tasks include textbooks or reference books dealing with the subject matter, technical manuals, drawings, and working models used by your organization.

Your output for all this analysis is a list of the tasks that you will train on to meet the need identified by your assessments in Chapter 2. Where necessary, lists of subtasks and skills and knowledge related to each task or subtask will also be included.

Here is an example of a questionnaire that I've found useful when doing a task analysis.

TASK ANALYSIS FORM 1

Need:_____

Job:_____ Date:_____

Task	*Frequency*	*Importance*	*Learning*	*Risk*
	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1
Subtasks	*Frequency*	*Importance*	*Learning*	*Risk*
	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1	4 3 2 1

Date: The date when this form is completed.

Tasks: The list of tasks is a breakdown of the broad activities to be performed on the job. The tasks statements should include a concise description of what the employee will do on the job.

Begin with an action verb.

Use a noun following the action verb.

Avoid overlap with other tasks.

Subtasks:	Any part of a task not at the level of KSA
Frequency:	How frequently is the individual task performed on the job?

Each task should be rated as daily, weekly, once a month or less than once a month.

4 = daily
3 = weekly
2 = once a month
1 = less than once a month

Importance: How important is the individual task to overall job effectiveness? Each task should be rated as critical, moderately critical, not critical or could be omitted.

4 = critical
3 = moderately critical
2 = not critical
1 = could be omitted

Learning: How difficult is the task to learn? Each task should be rated as very difficult, moderately difficult, somewhat difficult or not difficult.

4 = very difficult
3 = moderately difficult
2 = somewhat difficult
1 = not difficult

Risk: What is the degree of risk associated with performing the task incorrectly? For instance, could the employee be injured or would the mistake cost the company a lot of money? Each task should be rated as high risk, moderate risk, minimal risk or no risk.

4 = high risk
3 = moderate risk
2 = minimal risk
1 = no risk

If your company has well-written and complete procedures for various tasks, a rapid design shortcut is to use these for your task analysis in lieu of focus groups or interviews. Be sure that these procedures are complete. In fact, it's a good idea to have an SME look them over before you use them for your analysis, and have the SME look over your analysis as well.

Another task or job analysis rapid design shortcut is to videotape experts doing their jobs and analyze the videotape for the component parts. This will save you time over multiple focus groups and interviews, but don't forget that you will be spending time taping and reviewing, so be sure it's worth the effort.

The following is a list of various types of data you might collect during a job/task analysis.

DATA THAT MAY BE COLLECTED DURING A JOB/TASK ANALYSIS

- Task listings for a given job
- Frequency of task performance
- Difficulty of task performance
- Task importance (consequence of inadequate performance)
- Conditions under which task is performed
- Cues for task initiation and termination
- Steps (elements) required for task performance (sub-tasks)
- Standards of task performance
- References utilized in task performance
- Tools/equipment utilized in task performance
- Outputs (results) of task performance
- Problems that may result from poor task performance and their resolution
- Human interfaces during task performance
- System interfaces during task performance
- Personnel safety considerations
- Required skills and knowledge for adequate task performance
- Required skills and knowledge for exemplary task performance
- Organization (sequencing) of skills and knowledge

Here is another form you might want to use for your task analysis. It follows the format of the previous combined Job and Criticality Analysis form, and also has directions after.

TASK ANALYSIS FORM 2

Task or Subtask: _____

Date: _____

Element	*Description*
Inputs	_____
Steps	_____
Tools	_____

Element	*Description*
Standards	_____
Circumstances	_____
Outputs	_____
KSAs	_____

Inputs: What events, cues, orders, materials, or symptoms indicate that the task must be performed? In other words, what do the employees need to receive before they can begin their sub-tasks?

Steps: Each task might be broken down into its component steps (processes). The task statements should include a concise description of what the employee will do on the job.

Begin with an action verb
Use a noun following the action verb
Refer to the action verb table as needed (see separate sheet).

Tools: What tools, references, equipment, or materials are used to complete the subtasks? Where appropriate, system software (screens and application functions) should be identified.

Standards: How well must the task be performed? Standards such as accuracy, time, quantity, cost, error rate, customer satisfaction.

Circumstances: What circumstances influence task performance? For example, what physical locations, situations, adverse conditions, assistance, level of supervision, obstacles, or barriers exist when the task is being performed?

Outputs: What events, cues, orders, materials, or symptoms indicate that the task has been completed? What has been produced? What is passed on to another group or customer?

Feedback: What feedback does the employee receive when performing the task and / or after delivering the outputs? Feedback can be informal or formal.

KSAs: The skills, knowledge, and attitudes that make up this task or subtask as related to the other information found on this form. These elements are used to write your objectives.

Instructional Design Shortcut

Here is a template I've used that goes beyond a simple task analysis to add in data on training guidelines and your first thoughts on hours.

TRAINING TASK ANALYSIS TEMPLATE

JOB TITLE _____ MODULE _____ DISCIPLINE _____

Main Task	*Frequency D, W, M, Q, Y*	*Task Elements*	*Key Points*	*Task Standards*	*Skills & Knowledge*	*Training Guidelines*	*Training Hrs*
1.							
2.							
3.							
4.							
5.							
6.							
7.							

Explanatory Notes:

1. Main Tasks – describe the main activities of the job.
2. Frequency – Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, Yearly
3. Task Elements – list the steps in each activity.
4. Key Points – list the key points in each task element.
5. Task Standards – list the standards to which the tasks are to be performed.
6. Skills and Knowledge – list the skills and knowledge to be acquired
7. Training Guidelines – list the guidelines for training delivery.
8. Training Hours – provide the estimated time needed for training each task.

Learning Analysis

Very often an instructional designer simply does not have enough time to do a complete job/task analysis. In these situations you may want to do a shorter process termed a learning analysis. A learning analysis is not as thorough as a JTA, and will probably mean that you'll be bouncing more back and forth across the ID web, as we discussed in Chapter 1, but if you have limited time, it is a good place to start.

A learning analysis consists of two parts. In the first part you sit down, either alone, or with an SME and/or manager and simply define the training need or program that is required.

Next you gather whatever data you can concerning what the program might cover using whatever data-collection methods you have the time to employ.

Now you create a list of all possible learnings that the course participants might achieve. You do this with no consideration as to course time constraints or structure. You're basically working in a black box during this time.

The final step is to analyze the possible learnings to decide which of them the program must cover. You do this using something like the following methodology:

- Group the learnings into topics.
- Prioritize the topics.
- Prioritize the learnings within each topic.
- Remove all redundant topics or learnings.
- Combine learnings or topics where possible.
- Indicate critical learnings which must be taught.
- Remove all non-critical learnings.
- Estimate instructional time for each topic.

When you've finished, you will have a list of critical learnings that must be achieved by the course participants. From these you can begin to write your objectives though; because you have not gotten down to the KSA level this will be a bit more difficult.

Here is a template for a learning analysis that I have used effectively in some situations.

LEARNING ANALYSIS TEMPLATE

Program or Class _____ **Description** _____ **Audience** _____

Topic	*Learning Objective*	*Tasks*	*Content*	*Procedures/ Documents/ Job Aids*	*Additional Information to Support Content*
	There may be more than one objective or sub-objective per topic.	List all the tasks the learner must master for each topic to meet the performance objectives.	List what the learner must know to meet the cognitive, affective, and performance objectives for each task.	Documen-tation related to the topic.	Good practices, hints, and tips that will help the learner master the objectives.
1.					
2.					
3.					
4.					
5.					
6.					
7.					
8.					
9.					
10.					

Trainee (Audience) Analysis

After, simultaneous with, or even before you analyze what your trainees need to learn, you should also analyze the trainees themselves. This is called a *trainee (or learner, or audience) analysis* (*Mastering the Instructional Design Process*, Chapter 5, by Bill Rothwell, 1998).

The more you can find out about your target audience, the more likely it will be that your training will meet its needs. Aspects such as age, gender, educational experience, past training experiences, interests, and many other less obvious characteristics can help you design a better program, as you'll know what tone to use in your writing, what kind of examples to use, and how to populate your role plays and other activities.

You'll use your trainee analysis for completing other types of analysis, to design your training program so it is most effective, to develop your materials properly, and to evaluate both your learners and the program. Basically, you'll use it for just about everything you do from here on in, so that should give you some idea of its importance, and the amount of time you may want to spend on it.

Remember that you are finding out these things to help motivate your trainees and make them more comfortable in whatever learning environment you create.

Data-Gathering Methods for a Trainee Analysis

Your first task is to figure out generally who your audience is and then to gather all the information you think you may need about them. You can use many of the data-gathering methods we've already discussed. Here are some thoughts on their particular use for audience analysis.

Focus groups are not the best data-gathering method, unless you have a very small audience or they are all very much alike. You might need to use this method if you cannot get around to a larger audience or if you are really pressed for time. Be sure that you pick people for your focus group who reflect the mix that you will have in your class. Random choice is seldom a good idea for any type of focus group, but particularly not for one that is involved in an audience analysis.

In your focus group you might ask questions such as these, adapted from Allen Communication's *Designer's Edge* instructional design software:

- What do you like most about training?
- What do you dislike about training?

- What can we do to make training better?
- Which of these training methods do you like/dislike?
  - Classroom
  - On-the-job
  - With a mentor
  - Totally on my own with no direction
  - On my own, but with self-instructional materials to direct me
  - Using videotapes
  - Using computers
  - Training in teams
  - By observing others
  - By doing role plays and simulations
- What tricks do you use to remember important things?
- How do you and your colleagues feel about your jobs?
- What do you like most about your work?
- What do you like least about your work?
- If you were the supervisor, what would you change in how your work is done?
- What motivates you to do your best work?
- What would make you more productive?

Interviews are usually a better method than focus groups, but not much. You receive a lot of interaction and can really feel the likes and dislikes of those you interview, but it is a time-consuming method. Unless you interview enough of each possible category of trainees, you might obtain some erroneous or skewed results. One advantage of using interviews for audience analysis is that this usually gives you a core of individuals who will be very supportive of the program because you asked their opinions. The same can also be said for focus groups. Many of the questions noted in the focus group discussion above are also valid for audience analysis interviews—and for surveys as well.

You might also want to interview your participants' managers or the initiators of the training to find out their thoughts on the audience. Here is a form I like to use when interviewing or surveying managers and initiators about the audience for a training program.

AUDIENCE ANALYSIS QUESTIONS (FOR MANAGERS/INITIATORS)

Note to the interviewer: Begin by explaining prerequisites and showing the curriculum chart.

1. Who do you see as the primary audience for the intervention?
   Job functions

   Number

2. Who do you see as the continuing audience?
   Job functions

   Number

3. Are there other later audiences who need to be considered?
   External customers

   Others

   Number

4. What type of background should members of the primary audience possess?
   Education and/or training

   Academic

   Other

   Job experiences

   Company-specific experience

5. What skills and knowledge important to this process should they already possess?
   Any specialized equipment knowledge (hardware) required?

6. Other comments:

Surveys are the most often used method for collecting data when doing an audience analysis. It is an efficient use of time and for collecting a wide range of opinions or covering a very diverse audience, but it can be less than effective if your questions are not well thought out, if your return rate is too low, or if people just don't take the time to answer your questions accurately or candidly. The interview form for managers and initiators that we have already seen makes a good survey form as well, and you can change the wording to make it applicable for just about anyone, but here is another survey form I've used often.

AUDIENCE ANALYSIS TEMPLATE

1. How many participants will attend? _____
   In each session?_____
2. What are the job responsibilities and functions of the participants?
3. How well do the participants know each other?
4. Are there specific/special potential diversity issues to be aware of within the group?
5. Are there key individuals within the group? (Explain)
6. Is the training voluntary or mandatory? What have the participants been told?
7. What are the attitudes and beliefs of the participants, sponsor, and managers toward the training topic?
8. What successes and difficulties have the participants encountered with the training topic?
9. What is the skill level of the participants in the training subject matter?
10. What are the barriers the participant might encounter in applying the training back on the job?
11. Have the participants taken other in-house classes?
12. Levels of evaluation to be used: ☐ 1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3

Observation is also a fairly inefficient way to do audience analysis, particularly for large, diverse groups. You have to be patient and take a lot of time with each observation to make sure you cover all the possibilities. If you choose this method, you may want to enlist some other observers and then compare notes.

You might be saying by now: "Wait a minute, you've not said that any of these methods is particularly good for audience analysis," and you're right. Audience analysis is a very specialized analysis process and the best method for data collection is usually a combination of methods. For example, a questionnaire with follow-up phone interviews works well—or a focus group followed by observation.

Another good source of information for your audience analysis is personnel records. These records are kept by every company and can contain good information, including educational level, age, gender, job skills, and so on. They are normally confidential, but you may be able to look at them by signing a nondisclosure agreement. Or you might be able to have someone who is officially allowed to access them tabulate some data for you. Check with your human resource department for their policies and what is kept in the files that might be useful.

Additional Data

Here are some other thoughts on what kinds of data you might want to gather about your audience during an audience analysis:

- Knowing your audience's reading level is important in all training, but particularly in self-paced print-based programs. Be sure that you write to a level that will both be understood and not be boring.
- We mentioned current knowledge level before, but let's consider it again. In your job and task analysis, you probably chose a level at which you stopped analyzing because you expected all your trainees to have a basic (or what is often termed *prerequisite*) amount of knowledge.

  Now, in your audience analysis, you need to make certain that these assumptions are valid. Do you expect all your trainees to know certain company-specific terms or acronyms? Should they be able to use certain measuring devices or drive a piece of equipment? Must they be able to recall various formulas or manipulate mathematical equations?

  You can see that a list like this can go on and on. You made some assumptions when doing your job and task analysis, but it is here in the audience analysis that you must make sure they were accurate, so take some time to develop and ask the right questions concerning prerequisite knowledge.

- If you're using higher technology such as e-learning or virtual classrooms, you'll need to know your audience's computer abilities. Once again, the average and the extremes are important. You may need to design some remedial computer training to bring your trainees to the level at which they can use your new training system.
- Think about your audience from the point of view of their background and interests. Are they more technical or "arty"? Scientists or mechanics? Are they continuing their education? Do they have advanced degrees? Do they share common hobbies or interests? All of this knowledge may seem somewhat trivial, but using it can be the difference between a world-class training program and one that simply gets by.

For example, at a management skills development program I heard about, the designer placed at the very beginning of the program a twenty-minute silent video that used miming techniques to illustrate leadership skills. The audience was a group of power plant managers and supervisors, fresh from the production floor, who not only did not relate to this rather artsy video, but literally walked out on it. A little consideration of the audience's background and preferences might have gone a long way here.

- Knowing characteristics such as job titles or levels in the company might tell you that you need to split your training into more than one class, each tailored for a particular group with specific characteristics and needs.
- Your trainees' level of job satisfaction is a good indicator of how motivated they will be to do your training. Find out what they like and do not like about their jobs and use this to help lead discussions.

To sum it all up, here is a shortcut list of the main audience characteristics you'll want to analyze for, followed by a template for an audience analysis report.

TOP AUDIENCE CHARACTERISTICS

- Age
- Gender
- Reading level
- Life background
- Experience in current or related jobs
- Performance in current job
- Language or cultural differences

- Motivation (or lack thereof)
- Formal schooling
- Company training programs attended
- Geographic location
- Prerequisite knowledge and skills

AUDIENCE ANALYSIS REPORT

Number of trainees eligible for this program:
Trainee location(s):
Organizational level(s):
Minimum/maximum and average level of education:
Minimum/maximum and average number of years in position:
Minimum/maximum and average number of years with company:
Expected entry-level knowledge and skill background:
Previous training related to this training:
Average reading level:
Language or cultural differences among trainees:
Trainee motivation and job satisfaction:
Attitude toward training:
Special physical characteristics of trainees relevant to training:
Special interests of trainees relevant to training:
Specific biases of trainees relevant to training:
Computer skills and confidence (if applicable):

Your audience analysis can also provide you with another rapid design shortcut. It takes much more time to create training that meets the needs of a disparate audience, as you will have to add material to meet them all. Instead, design only for your majority audience, and use some type of individualized instruction, prescriptive learning, or coaching for the others.

One of the key issues in any audience analysis is literacy. If your audience analysis finds literacy problems, a rapid design hint is to seriously consider an e-learning approach to the training. You can design e-learning with very little text, substituting visuals and an audio track for just about all text. This will make it easier for your trainees. On the other hand, because asynchronous e-learning is normally very text-oriented, you might want to delete this delivery system from your considerations early on if you've found literacy issues.

This hint can also be expanded to multiple language issues as well. e-Learning with limited text and plenty of soundtrack can be easily translated into other languages. Heavily text-based deliveries such as asynchronous e-learning and print-based self-instruction are much more time-consuming to translate.

Competency Analysis

To end our discussion on analysis, let's look at one last type of broad-spectrum analysis that is receiving a lot of play recently, the *competency analysis* ("An Introduction to Competency Analysis and Modeling" by Anne Marrelli, 1998). The purpose of a competency analysis is to identify not just the tasks that are performed, but also the *way* they are performed, or the level at which they are performed. This is most often done at the top performer level, that is, by analyzing the best people at the job or position.

Definition and Method

In a sentence, competencies can be defined as *the behaviors necessary for superior performance at a job*. You do a competency analysis by observing those top performers and trying to determine three things:

- What they are more likely to do than the average performer
- What they do more often than the average performer
- What they do more completely than the average performer

Of course, you will also have to observe some average performers to see the difference.

Next, you need to interview the top performers to find out why they do things differently. This should help you to develop a list of standards for the job based on what those who do it best actually do.

Questions to Ask

Questions you might ask of top performers in a competency analysis include the following:

- What do you think makes you a top performer?
- What was the path you followed to this status?
- What are your main responsibilities and/or work outputs?
- How do you determine when you have done a quality piece of work?
- What do you do to make sure your work is at the quality standard you've set?

- What background tasks or activities do you need to know or do?
- What do you think are the differences between yourself and someone who has only been on the job a couple of years?
- What are the most frequent problems you face in doing your job?
- What tricks have you learned to do your job faster and better?

Categories of Standards

In one of the more common methods, the standards are categorized into the following:

- *Administrative competencies:* those things that the top performers do simply to keep the work progressing. (An example of this type of competency might be: "Communicates with all members of a team in advance to prepare for day's work or new assignment.")
- *Technical competencies:* the actual skills used to produce the product or service. (An example of this type of competency might be: "Always describes both the minimum and maximum benefits to the customers before asking for their decision.")
- *Personal competencies:* how top performers feel and how they interact with others while doing the job. (An example of this type of competency might be: "Volunteers to be a mentor for new employees.")

These standards need to be validated by the top performers and then recorded as a competency model, which is basically a list of competencies and the behaviors associated with them for the job. From the competency list, informational, performance support, or training processes for the average and below-average performers can be developed.

Competency analysis is often used for very complex jobs; for those positions for which it is critical that each person function at the highest possible level; for positions for which the actual performance of the job tasks is somewhat abstract and requires a lot of discretionary decision making, such as supervision or customer service; or for those jobs for which even a small upgrading in the ability of the performer can make a large difference to the company.

Competency Analysis Versus Job/Task Analysis

You might be thinking: "Well, this is not a heck of a lot different from the job and task analysis we've already covered," and once again you'd be right. A *well done* job and task analysis looks at the same things a competency analysis

does: how the work is done, how it's done right, what the work environment is and/or should be, and what behaviors are most critical to the job. The major differences are that a competency analysis usually centers on top performers (although some experts wonder whether this is too narrow an assumption) and is structured to develop not just a list of tasks, skills, and knowledge, but also the behaviors that indicate success at mastering the tasks. A poor or too shallow task analysis often misses these key points.

A competency analysis has many other uses than simply for the development of training. The output is often used for creating job descriptions, for selection purposes, as a personal development guide for job incumbents, and even as a performance indicator.

A competency analysis is rather time-consuming for a rapid instructional design process, but if you consider how you might use the products of this type of analysis in other ways, such as for hiring decisions or employee development, you might find that a competency analysis becomes more time-effective.

Here is a partial example of a competency model created from a competency analysis:

Job: Manager

Competency Area: Judgment/Decision Making

Competency: Develops alternative options based on reliable information and takes action at a level of risk appropriate to the situation

Top Performer Behaviors:

- Acknowledges own poor decisions and implements corrective actions
- Considers the people impacted by the decision
- Judges with a view to the organization's stated course of action

Competency Area: Oral Communications

Competency: Expresses information and ideas in one-on-one and group situations

Top Performer Behaviors:

- Establishes positive outcomes, even with hostile audiences
- Expresses ideas effectively, regardless of group size
- Communicates in a calm and confident manner, even in impromptu situations
- Handles objections skillfully

We've talked a lot about audience analysis already, but that's because it is such a critical component of good instructional design. I'll leave the topic with one more list that combines most of what we discussed in a single document. I'll be honest with you that I've never used it, but IDs who have worked for me like it better than any of mine, so here it is.

JOB ANALYSIS TEMPLATE

Job _____ Job Description _____ Role(s) Related to Job _____

Task	*Sub-Tasks/ Steps*	*Possible Learning Objective*	*Additional Information Related to Task*	*Procedures/ Documents/ Job Aid*
	List the subtasks / steps required for each task	Reconsider during task analysis to confirm and change as necessary	Good practices, hints, and tips	Those related to task
1.				
2.				
3.				
4.				
5.				
6.				
7.				
8.				
9.				
10.				

COMPUTER-AIDED ANALYSIS

A shortcut for doing any analysis is the use of analysis software. There are a number of different products on the market, ranging from very simple databases that help you compile tasks to much more complex programs that take you step by step through the analysis process, even going as far as helping you create questionnaires and other data-collection tools.

These programs can be very useful and save you a lot of time once you learn how to use them, but to learn them and to take the best advantage of them, you still need to understand the basics of what analysis is all about, and why and how to do it.

Unless you do a lot of analysis, you probably will not be able to justify the amount of time you'll spend learning how the programs work, but look them over if you think you have the need. Most providers will send you an evaluation copy if you call and ask. We've listed a few of the most popular in the resources section, but new ones are coming along every month. Check with the ASTD or ISPI websites for an up-to-date list of who is supplying this type of software.

Most importantly, be suspicious of any software that states it will do the analysis for you and that you don't need any knowledge base to start with. These claims seldom prove out. The software is usually only as good as you are at analysis; it just makes you faster.

Another series of computer-aided analysis tools are the net-based surveys we mentioned earlier. These are good data-collection tools if you have a highly dispersed audience or plan to obtain a lot of analysis data, as they are efficient at data manipulation. However, as we already noted, they have pretty much the same disadvantages as paper-and-pencil questionnaires. We've include a few of these in the resource list as well.

To sum up our journey through analysis, here is a job aid you can use to help you keep them all straight.

Analysis Job Aid

Type	*Purpose*	*Sequence*	*Best Methods*	*Product*
Learning Needs Analysis	To discover the learning needs of the organization, a work group within the organization, or individual contributors.	This is usually the first type of analysis done by the instructional designer. Look at documentation.	Talk to individuals and groups.	A list of training needs for the targeted level of the analysis, and a determination of which of those needs might be addressed.
Job Analysis	To discover what tasks make up the job or organizational aspect that requires training according to the needs analysis.	Done after the needs analysis for the components of each need that is to be trained on.	Interviews with SMEs, possibly focus groups.	A list of tasks that comprise the job or organizational aspect that requires training.

(continued)

Type	*Purpose*	*Sequence*	*Best Methods*	*Product*
Criticality Analysis	To determine which tasks are most critical and thus require the most training resources.	Done during the job analysis to each task.	Continued work with SMEs.	A prioritized list of the tasks that will be trained on.
Task Analysis	To determine the knowledge, skills, and attitudes that make up each task that is to be trained on.	Completed after the job analysis	Continued work with SMEs.	A list of the knowledge, skills, and attitudes that make up each task that will be trained on. This list will be used to write the training objectives.
Learning Analysis	To determine the critical learnings necessary to meet a training need.	Done in lieu of a job and task analysis.	Interviews with SMEs or focus groups.	A prioritized list of critical learnings that must be mastered to meet the training need.
Audience Analysis	To determine the characteristics of the target learners that will be critical for program development.	Might be done any time during the design process, but always before developing program materials.	Questionnaires and interviews with learners and others who know the characteristics of the learners.	A list of general learner characteristics that the instructional designer needs to consider when creating course materials.
Delivery Analysis	To determine the best training delivery method for the course content, the organization, and the learners.	Might be done any time during the design process, but always before developing program materials.	This is done by the instructional designer, possibly with help from the training manager and other resources in the organization such as IT.	A decision on the most effective and efficient delivery method that takes into account the requirements of the content, the capabilities of the organization, and the needs of the learners.

You might have noticed that we've not discussed the last type of analysis yet. In the next chapter, we'll begin by determining the best way to cover what your analysis has provided you with in the way of content and audience, then create the right structure to help your trainees learn most effectively. This is termed the *design component* of instructional design.

Chapter 4

How to Do It: Design

This chapter will help you to:

- Choose the right delivery system for your training
- Create useful objectives based on your job and task analysis
- Discover what a design document is and how it can be used
- Develop an instructional plan to guide you as you produce training materials
- Create test questions that will effectively measure your trainees' learning

By now you are probably pretty much "analyzed out" and might be thinking: "This has all been very informative, but are we ready to start putting together a training program yet?" The answer to your question is yes, but not quite yet. You have one more decision to make first, and it is probably the most important decision you will make in your instructional design. As a question it might be asked as: "What will be the setting for my training?" or, in a slightly less formal way: "How will my training program be delivered?" In keeping with our metaphor of building a house, this chapter will take us through framing, that is, developing the skeleton structure for what our training will actually look like when it is done. Determining your delivery method is the first thing you will need to decide. If you are so inclined you might call this delivery analysis.

MAKE THE RIGHT DECISION NOW

Often, perhaps too often, this decision is seen as a "no brainer." It's training, so it's done in a classroom! This may be the correct decision; it could also be the first step down the road to an inefficient and even ineffective training program. The problem is: How do you know?

As usual, there is no easy answer. However, you do have some data to work with if you've done your analysis well. For example, you know who your target

audience is and where they are located. This will give you some indication as to how efficient a classroom approach will be. Too many people in too many locations makes a classroom a less desirable delivery option.

You also know your training need(s) and the tasks, skills, competencies, and so on related to these needs. This knowledge will help you determine your program's requirements for special equipment or particular environments. Then you have a link with corporate goals and objectives. The strength of this link will help you determine funding possibilities and relationships with other training processes in the company that deal with the same goals as your program.

On the other hand, you have not yet learned very much about your resource and/or design limitations. You don't want to diminish the instructional integrity of your course; but at the same time, you don't want to choose a delivery process that you don't have the time or money to design and develop fully. Or, if you have time and budget, you don't want to sacrifice effectiveness by choosing a delivery process that is more than your training requires simply because it is "neat" and you've always wanted to try it.

Basically, what you need to do (and do right now) is to consider all of the possible delivery systems, or what are often referred to as training settings, and choose the one that will work best for your training need, your trainees, and your company. Everything else you do in designing and developing your training package will be affected by this decision.

DELIVERY DECISION

Your delivery decision can be very simple, or quite complex, depending on your particular situation. As mentioned earlier, if you are charged with creating a training program, and training in your organization means bringing people to a classroom, then most of your decision is made. You only have to figure out how many classrooms, where they will be, and when, and who will be the trainers, and how you will train the trainers, and . . . .

Get the picture? Even the simplest delivery decision is not all that simple. And one hopes your organization is not mired in the "training means classrooms" scenario, so you will need to decide which of a number of possible training settings will work best for your needs and your trainees.

There are any number of variables to be considered, and these too can be at different levels of complexity depending on the material in your program and your corporate environment, but let's try to keep this simple by discussing the most common aspects of this decision-making process (*Effective Training Delivery*, Lakewood, 1989).

General Training Delivery Methods

First, you can make a general choice as to the delivery method based on what you already know or can find out easily. There are only half a dozen or so general training delivery methods to choose from. They include:

- *Instructor-Led Classrooms*: These are still the most common setting (*Instructing for Results* by Margolis and Bell, 1986).
- *On-the-Job Training (OJT)*: This method does not require a classroom or training facility, but does demand a good trainer and some solid structure to be effective (*On-the-Job Training* by David Gallup, 1999).
- *Self-Instruction*: This means there is no instructor and possibly not even a facility for training, but there is a very structured program that is followed by the trainee (*Self-Directed Learning* by George Piskurich, 1993).

- *Rapid Design Shortcut*: In the past few years an entire series of self-instructional processes have appeared, exemplified by deliveries such as interactive videos (video segments with questions attached), interactive PowerPoints, and interactive PDFs. The only thing truly interactive about these delivery methods is some questions that are added in as part of the content delivery. However, if your analysis has told you that this is enough to meet the training need, these processes make wonderful shortcuts to creating full-fledged self-instructional programs. They are particularly useful for policy and procedure change training.
- *Technology-Based Training (TBT)*: This used to be just a fancy way of doing self-instruction, but now might include an instructor or an instructor/self-instruction combination and may employ delivery technologies anywhere from a simple computer program to Internets and satellites (*Distance Learning* by Karen Mantyla and J. Richard Gividen, 1997). Some call it simply e-learning or blended learning.
- *Job Performance Aids*: Performance aids are actually not training, but the development of specialized materials that employees can use on the job to help them do the tasks properly in lieu of formal training. These are often called "job aids" and sometimes called "performance support systems" or, if found on a computer, electronic performance support systems ("Performance Support Systems and Job Aids" by Saundra Williams, 1999).

Job aids themselves can be a rapid design shortcut. Because they are used in lieu of training, you automatically have saved design and development time when you employ them. Under the right circumstances you might be able to base your entire training program on job aids, in which case the only training you need to do is on how to use them. The time savings here is pretty obvious.

- *Training by Documentation*: This is also not training, but is often called such by those who do not understand what training really means. In this setting the trainees are given technical manuals, flow charts, procedure documents, operating instructions, or other items and told to read them. Sometimes this occurs in a classroom with a trainer (usually an SME) present to answer questions, sometimes not.

This process combines some aspects of self-instruction and job performance aids and a little OJT, as the trainees are expected to go back to the job and implement what they've learned. However, there is not enough of any of these deliveries, nor are they structured well enough to be considered as true training. It is usually ineffective, always wastes time, and most often leads to very frustrated employees, who must learn by trial and error or seek help elsewhere when they are actually on the job.

On the other hand, training by documentation can be developed very quickly because you use materials that have been designed for other purposes. We've included it here because it is used so often (unfortunately) and because with a little effort you can take the general concept, add some proper training structure to it, and create good, fast, inexpensive training for certain needs and in specific situations.

Here is a chart of the major training settings and what they are best used for. (The more dots, the better the learning activity setting is.)

	Classroom	*OJT*	*Self-Instruction*	*TBT*	*Job Aids*	*Documentation*
Knowledge Acquisition	••	•	••	••		•
Problem Solving	••	•	•	••	••	
Changing Attitudes	••	•		•		
Interpersonal Skills	••			•		
Knowledge Retention		••	••	••	••	

Making a Delivery Choice

From this list make a general training delivery choice based on what you already know about your situation. For example, if your training need will require your trainees to practice on actual machines, you might choose OJT

as the setting. On the other hand, if you have a large number to train and very few trainers to do the training, you may want to attempt a self-instructional approach. Be realistic here; if you don't have enough computers in your organization, a technology-based training setting will probably not work for you.

Here are some checklists to help you make a good training delivery decision.

CLASSROOM TRAINING

Use classroom-based training when:

- ☐ Interaction with the trainer or other participants is important
- ☐ Guided discussion will lead to more learning
- ☐ Questions will come up that need immediate answers
- ☐ You have qualified facilitators in the right numbers to match the training load
- ☐ The trainees can afford to be away from their jobs for long periods of time
- ☐ The facilitators will do the traveling instead of the trainees
- ☐ Individualization is not critical
- ☐ You want more control over the training outcome

ON-THE-JOB TRAINING

Use OJT when:

- ☐ Skills need to be mastered in the actual environment
- ☐ Training time is limited
- ☐ Design time is limited
- ☐ Non-moveable equipment is involved
- ☐ Trainee motivation is poor
- ☐ The tasks to be learned change frequently
- ☐ Qualified classroom trainers are not available
- ☐ Work flow must be learned as part of the training
- ☐ A lot of monitored practice is necessary
- ☐ The number of trainees is small

SELF-INSTRUCTION

Use self-instruction when:

- ☐ There are a number of highly distributed training sites
- ☐ You have a shortage of qualified classroom or OJT trainers
- ☐ Turnover is high
- ☐ Training must be delivered "just in time"
- ☐ Training must be consistent
- ☐ The content is relatively stable
- ☐ The content is known only by one or a few SMEs
- ☐ The training will be repeated often
- ☐ You want to decrease travel costs
- ☐ The training must be done on multiple shifts
- ☐ You have the time to develop the programs properly

TECHNOLOGY-BASED TRAINING

Use TBT when:

- ☐ Self-instruction is needed (see self-instruction checklist)
- ☐ Complex simulations are needed
- ☐ The content requires a lot of practice that can be simulated
- ☐ The trainees are comfortable or can be made to feel comfortable using computers
- ☐ Training is difficult to schedule/classes are hard to fill
- ☐ There is plenty of development time and money available
- ☐ The hardware is in place or can be bought easily
- ☐ Tracking of the training is critical and time intensive due to a large number of trainees
- ☐ Management is comfortable with TBT or can be sold on the concept
- ☐ Updates to the program will be minimal
- ☐ The use of multiple media formats will enhance the learning

E-LEARNING (INSTRUCTOR-LED OR SELF-INSTRUCTION)

Use e-learning when your environment requires a distributed delivery and:

- ☐ You need TBT (see TBT checklist) but revisions to content are frequent
- ☐ Video is not a critical element in the training
- ☐ Live interaction with an instructor is important
- ☐ Other content is already available that can be easily linked
- ☐ Content is more soft-skill oriented (instructor-led)
- ☐ Heavy feedback (immediate or time sensitive) is required
- ☐ Trainees are comfortable with e-learning technology
- ☐ Your internal systems can support the usage
- ☐ Time and budget are available to produce and implement the training
- ☐ You have a large number of training programs that need to be delivered and re-delivered at various times

JOB PERFORMANCE AIDS

Consider creating job performance aids in lieu of training when:

- ☐ The task(s) are performed infrequently
- ☐ It is critical that the task(s) be performed exactly
- ☐ The task(s) are very complex
- ☐ Sequencing of the task(s) is critical
- ☐ Turnover is high
- ☐ Training cannot be done in a timely manner
- ☐ The consequence of performing the task(s) incorrectly is severe
- ☐ Tasks change frequently
- ☐ The body of knowledge is great
- ☐ Practice and feedback are not critical

Blended Delivery Systems

One other thought on delivery systems. There is no rule that says you cannot use more than one delivery system for a single training event. In fact, many of

the most successful training processes combine delivery processes. This concept, often termed blended learning, has received a lot of publicity as of late due to the popularity of e-learning.

One of the most common examples of blending is the use of a self-instructional package (particularly e-learning packages) that covers the basic knowledge on a topic with a facilitated classroom that discusses the issues and applies what has been presented in the self-instruction. The self-instructional package is completed by the trainees before the class. The facilitator spends a very short time reviewing the main concepts at the start of class, then gets into simulations and other group activities, which is a major strength of a classroom approach. This "hybrid" delivery plays to the strengths of both formats and creates an effective and efficient training process.

Blended delivery is particularly useful when you are using e-learning training processes. Many people (good designers usually not among them) seem to tout the ability of each new technology that comes along to "take over training." This is seldom the case, much to the dismay of organizations that invest heavily in the technology. As a good designer yourself, think of technology as a reductive process, rather than a replacement process. It won't replace the interaction of a classroom or the hands-on of OJT, but it can be used in conjunction with these deliveries to reduce the amount of time trainees spend in these forms of training and to make that time more effective.

We'll discuss one of these technology blends, the integration of synchronous and asynchronous e-learning, a bit later

There are many other examples of blending delivery methods, such as classroom with OJT or e-learning programs with embedded performance support systems. This does increase the complexity of the design, and you'll have to do an even more intensive analysis of the pros and cons of both delivery processes, but it is often worth the extra effort and expense.

An example of a very well-conceived blended delivery is a car manufacturer who uses OJT to do the basic training for new hires on the assembly line and a multimedia simulation of the line in a type of virtual reality format for practice. The simulation allows the trainees to spend time practicing the machine sequencing and troubleshooting problems that may arise on the floor, all without actually slowing down the assembly line itself ("Virtual Reality: Is It for You?" Carol Gunther-Mohr, 1999). One trainer notes that the simulation allows the trainee to practice a particular series of steps within the assembly process without continuously going through the entire assembly: "Without the simulation it would be like running a washing machine through the entire wash process just to look time and again at the rinse cycle."

One of the newest methods of blended learning is to combine asynchronous and synchronous e-learning segments. The learner receives an

asynchronous assignment followed by a synchronous classroom where the concepts detailed in the asynchronous aspect are discussed and interactions based on them are done. Of course, you need the technology to use this blend, and learners who are comfortable with it and this type of learning, but it can be very effective.

Good designers also use a blended approach for remedial training or enrichment activities as well. A good example of this that I like to use is the assigning of web searches during a multi-day stand-up classroom or as a post-classroom activity. The learners come back to the class for the next session with new information based on their own explorations, or in the case of an after-class activity, post their findings on a bulletin board.

A particularly effective and quick blended delivery is the e-book. The e-book is exactly what it says, a book-like training piece delivered on the computer. It is usually text and graphics for the most part, but can include screen captures, excerpts from organizational documents and even video pieces. E-books need to be short and snappy, and usually only cover one specific topic. They are not really books, so don't make them so.

An example of a highly blended program is one I worked on for a client who had a small cadre of learners all over the world, and wanted to do a two-year development program for them. The design outline went something like this:

Stage 1: Opening Activities

- Textbook: Chapters 1 to 3
- Opening conference call with coaches
- First discussion board
- Complete learning experience profile
- Level I evaluation

Stage 2: Two-Week Classroom Experience

- Discuss learning experience profile with coaches
- Create experience journal items
- Level I and II evaluations

Stage 3: On-the-Job Experiences (Year 1)

- Work through experience journal items with coach and supervisor
- Monthly discussion boards
- Create end of program presentation draft and publish on class website for discussion

Pre-class readings

Level I evaluation

Stage 4: One-Week Classroom Experience

Preliminary end of program presentations

Experience journal and profile review and revision with coaches

Level I and II evaluation

Stage 5: On-the-Job Experiences (Year 2)

Work through experience journal items with coach and supervisor

Bi-monthly discussion boards

Prepare and lead off-month discussion board

Finalize end of program presentation

Stage 6: One-Week Virtual Class

End of program presentations and discussions

Supervisor and coach evaluations

Creation of continuing development plans

Level I program evaluation

Graduation

Blending delivery processes isn't really all that new. We were doing it back in the Seventies with classrooms that followed self-directed slide tape presentations. Even videos or the old 16mm movies that were shown in classrooms can be considered a blended approach, although I'm afraid that often they were not blended too well.

In the end, blended learning is simply another instructional design decision, based on what's right for the content, for the learners, for the time available for both design and implementation, and for the cultural and technology environment of the company. In other words, delivery analysis.

Constraints*

Once you've made a preliminary training delivery decision, you can run with it and start your design work, or you can do a little more thinking and consider the existing constraints to your training. We suggest the latter, as it will

*Information in this section has been adapted from material contained in Langevin Learning Services' Langevin Instructional Design software.

help you validate your delivery decision and provide you with some of the information you will need to create a design document, which is a critical step in the instructional design process. However, if you have limited time and are pretty sure you've made the right delivery decision, move on to objectives.

For everyone else, let's start this discussion by noting that there are many kinds of constraints to any training program, but that we've discussed a lot of them already. Here are some categories of constraints:

- *Logistical*: Related to the number of trainees, the facilities, and the budget
- *Stakeholder*: Who is sponsoring the program and their characteristics and expectations
- *Design*: Aspects such as time to create and materials available
- *Training Methods*: What can and can't you do in your current corporate training environment
- *Resources*: What is and is not available in the way of instructors and content experts

Questions for Constraint Categories

Here are a few questions you might ask about your training for each category:

Logistical

- What will be the total number of trainees?
- What is your preliminary decision on a training setting(s)?
- If you are using a classroom approach, what is the optimum number of participants in a class?
- What are the necessary classroom size dimensions?
- What are the needs for delivery hardware?
- What other technology needs exist?
- What other facility needs exist?
- What type of trainee travel needs are there?
- What is the budget for the program?

Stakeholder

- Who is the main sponsor of the program?
- What type of input does the sponsor expect to provide?
- Who will be the contact person for the sponsor?
- How will managers and supervisors be brought into the program?

- What will it take to satisfy the sponsor?
- Design
- Has analysis been done for the program?
- Are there any similar courses or courses that address the same need?
- When must the course be ready for piloting?
- When must the course be ready for distribution?
- Is there any current course material that can be used?
- What other documents are available?
- How available are subject-matter experts?

Training Methods

- What is the anticipated length of the course?
- What delivery methods are available in the corporate environment?
- What constraints exist as to training methods or media?
- Are performance aids a viable option for augmentation?
- What audiovisual material must be produced and distributed?
- Is there a need for job equipment to be used during the training?
- Is pre-work a possibility?
- Can work be done off the job?
- Is post-work a possibility?

Resources

- Are trainers available?
- Are possible trainers knowledgeable about the training content?
- Do possible trainers possess adequate training skills?
- Are there other resources available to help with design and material development?
- Are subject-matter experts needed, and does the expertise exist?
- Are clerical and production assistance available if needed?
- Are outside resources available if needed?

Depending on your particular situation, many of these questions may not apply, but it is a good idea to at least run through them as a check of your delivery decision. If the answers to these questions match your preliminary delivery decision, you are in good shape. If not, you may need to revise or augment your decision to make it work.

Here is another tool to help in your delivery analysis.

SELECTING DELIVERY METHOD BY PROJECT CONSTRAINTS

Use this tool to identify the project constraints and rank them from 1 (a minor constraint that most likely can be removed) to 5 (a major obstacle that most likely will not change).

	Classroom	OJT	Self-Instruction	WBT	Job Aids	Documentation
Knowledge Acquisition	**	**	**	**	**	
Problem Solving	*	**	**	**	**	
Changing Attitudes	**	*		*		
Interpersonal Skills	**			*		
Knowledge Retention	*	*	**	**	**	

Facilitator Assessment

There is one other constraint aspect that you may need to consider, depending on your delivery decision. That is the availability of facilitators. Facilitators come in many guises in training, ranging from the classroom facilitator (who looks like an instructor but most often doesn't act like one) to the self-instruction facilitator (which seems like a contradiction in terms). The availability of the right facilitators can often make or break your

training, so here are some thoughts on facilitators broken out by training setting.

Classroom

Facilitators in classrooms are not instructors. They are not even necessarily SMEs, and they do very little in the way of providing actual content. Rather, they lead the trainees through the training, help to facilitate discussions, and clarify main points. They lead activities and summaries, question the trainees about concepts, and examine their knowledge through test proctoring.

If your training program is simply an information dump, you need an instructor (actually you could be better off with a book) to deliver the content and ask questions. These individuals need a lot of content expertise and a little bit of knowledge on how to train. However, if your class is meant to help your trainees learn, master skills, and be able to use those skills and knowledge back on the job, you need a facilitator who has the training expertise to guide, to counsel, and to lead. The two sets of skills are very different, and you need to know whether you have people with the right skills available before you make your final delivery decision. Nothing will fail quite as dramatically as a facilitated classroom design that has an SME who has content knowledge, but who is not trained in how to lead a class, rather than a skilled facilitator who knows how to properly conduct classroom activities—except perhaps a class that has been designed to be taught by a trainer who is an SME that is taught by a facilitator who is not an SME.

Self-Instruction

As the purpose of self-instruction is to have the trainees learn on their own, there would seem to be no need for a facilitator. However, someone is usually required to get the trainees started, to provide materials where necessary, and often to evaluate the learning. In this type of setting, facilitators don't guide, lead, or counsel the way they would in a classroom setting, nor do they provide content like an instructor. Often they are not even SMEs. If you are using self-instruction as your delivery system, you will need to determine what specific skills your facilitators will need (this will be dependent on your self-instructional design) and then find out whether people with these skills are available and have the time.

Following are two specific instances of self-instruction that require a facilitator:

Learning Center: If you are using a learning center delivery for your self-instruction, a facilitator should be available in the center. You will need to find out what the facilitator is and is not capable of doing and design your self-instruction appropriately.

Electronic (Distributed): Much self-instruction today is done through the higher technology delivery systems such as e-learning and distributed to any number of training sites. If you decide to use these delivery systems, you will still need to consider what a facilitator might do for your training. Often it is little more than orienting the trainees to a new system of learning. Sometimes it may include observing the mastery of trained tasks and recording them on a performance checklist. Whatever it is, be sure you have people with the time and commitment to be your facilitators. You will also need a mechanism for letting them know what they need to do, and for following up to make sure they did it. (More on this in Chapter 7.)

On-the-Job Training

In an OJT setting, the facilitator is usually the trainer. Once again the person needs specific skills; being a job expert is not enough. If personnel who can handle the role of OJT trainer are not available, cannot be trained, and/or do not have the time to do the training properly, you may want to reconsider your decision to implement an OJT delivery.

Mentoring

We have not discussed mentoring as a training delivery system, as many types of mentoring are so unstructured that they really cannot be considered training (unfortunately, the same can be said of much OJT). However, a mentor is often used in conjunction with performance-support tools and with documentation-based training to make it more systematic. If you are thinking of using a mentoring system, you will once again need to determine what skills and attributes are required of your mentors and then find out whether such individuals can be found and utilized.

Here is a tool you can use when considering the general advantages and disadvantages of various delivery systems.

FINAL CRITERIA FOR DELIVERY SELECTION

Delivery	*Description*	*Advantages*	*Limitations*	*Development Notes*
Asynchronous e-learning	• Color graphics • Complex two-dimensional animation • Sound • Custom graphics • Testing or record keeping • Video • Branching • One platform • Feedback	• Offers consistent delivery • Enables training at or away from the work site • Provides possible graphic and multiple-sensory capability • Adapts to learner performance • Is self-paced and learner-controlled • Normally reduces training time • Offers reliable testing and record keeping • Includes extensive feedback opportunities • Provides realistic simulation or emulation of computer environment	• Requires highly skilled specialists to develop • Is inappropriate for large textual presentations • Can become monotonous • Is costly if hardware has to be dedicated to training	• Development involves a ratio of 300 to 450-plus development hours to 1 hour of training. • Average vendor development costs are $15,000 to $25,000 per student hour or $65 to $100 per development hour. • The typical course life cycle is unlimited people trained per year over two years.
Computer- and noncomputer-based performance support	Tools for individual use, such as the following: • Just-in-time training • Online reference systems • Help lines • Expert systems	• Supports performance at the time the task is performed • Provides consistent delivery • Enables training when performance is needed	• Requires an available SME to assist with development • Is effective only for narrowly defined tasks	• Applications that are linked to software applications or are context-sensitive require extensive development efforts.

Delivery	*Description*	*Advantages*	*Limitations*	*Development Notes*
	• Employee support system • Job aids	• Provides some graphic and multisensory capability • Adapts to performer's level of expertise • Is self-paced and learner-controlled • Reduces training time • Can provide realistic simulation or emulation of computer environment • Uses small expert systems to help users analyze relatively small but difficult problems by providing specific expert advice • Can be used effectively as job aids to reduce training time, minimize memorization, maximize accurate responses, and allow less-trained employees to do higher-level tasks		• Applications that use reference systems or user-controlled help files are less time-consuming to create and maintain. • New or additional hardware and software may not be required.

Delivery	*Description*	*Advantages*	*Limitations*	*Development Notes*
Synchronous e-learning	• Use of regular computer networks to converse with several participants via a conference call and software • May use regular telephones or speaker phones	• Can transcend geographical and facilities limitations • Is interactive, with extensive opportunities for questions and feedback • Enables a single instructor to provide instruction to many groups without travel • Is highly effective when used with other media • Provides cost-effective decentralized training for large, dispersed audiences • Can train large numbers of students quickly • Reduces travel-related expenses by allowing students and instructors to participate from any location	• Can be time-consuming if the number of participants becomes high • Requires skilled facilitators • Requires proper redesign or repurposing	• Prior planning helps ensure the most effective use of time. • Send out agendas in advance. • Review facilitation techniques.

Delivery	*Description*	*Advantages*	*Limitations*	*Development Notes*
Paper self-paced	• Reference books and manuals • Job aids • Reference charts • Study guides • Workbooks	• Enables learner to control time, place, and pace of learning • Is inexpensive to develop • Is easy to edit and revise • Is easy to distribute • Provides consistent delivery	• Does not provide feedback • Involves only one sense; adapts to only one learning style	• A typical development product is Microsoft Word. Templates, style guides, and publishing support are available for development.
Linear video	Examples include the following: • Stories and documentaries • Vignettes and scenarios • Videotaped lessons • Both direct-to-video and tapes of IDLN broadcasts	• Can be delivered at or away from the work site • Offers full-color, full-motion visual presentations • Can transcend geographical limitations • Provides a standardized presentation • Enables unlimited opportunities for review	• Involves high production costs • Has limited interaction and evaluation • Involves a long development time • Lacks student-controlled branching • Has limited sequencing capability • Limits capability to revise or update	• The cost is prohibitive for local development ($2,000 to $10,0000 per minute of finished video).

Delivery	*Description*	*Advantages*	*Limitations*	*Development Notes*
Lecture, lab, or classroom	Classroom instruction led by an instructor or facilitator	• Is a familiar environment to most students; provides social interaction adaptable to any subject • Is useful with various sizes of audiences • Offers individualized feedback • Can include a variety of media and instructional methods • Can be tailored to the group • Requires less development time • Is a traditional teaching method that is comfortable for student and instructors • Gets students away from their offices so they can, ideally, focus exclusively on the class rather than on work • Is easier and less expensive to revise or update than most other media • Enables incidental learning	• May be difficult to schedule large blocks of time • May be boring, because trainee interest and involvement depend on instructor's skill • May transfer poorly to work situations • Is heavily reliant on instructor knowledge • Has potential for inconsistent delivery • Uses measurement and evaluation methods that can be inconsistent • Requires skilled specialists to develop and deliver • Requires expensive and time-consuming travel for both students and instructors • Reaches a limited number of students at any one time • Typically teaches to the mid-range performance level.	• Templates, style guides, and publishing support are available for development. • Typical development products are Microsoft Word and PowerPoint. • Labs and workshops may require special equipment.

Delivery	*Description*	*Advantages*	*Limitations*	*Development Notes*
Mentoring, coaching, or on-the-job training	• Working one-on-one with actual job tasks • Receiving training and support when it's needed to perform the task	• Involves a high degree of interaction • Provides immediate feedback • Meets the learner's immediate needs • Is an ongoing experience integrated with work	• Lacks consistency and uniformity • Is difficult to accommodate group learning • May interfere with regular equipment	• Needs must be anticipated and planned for. • It makes use of available resources instead of requiring special resources.
Audio	• Audiotapes • Audio tele-conference • Telephone help lines	• All audio options • Are typically inexpensive • Are typically available at numerous sites, including home • Teleconferencing or help line • Provides social interaction • Provides immediate feedback • Audiotape • Can be used any time, at learner's pace • Can be repeated for reinforcement and review	• All audio options lack visual presentation • Teleconferencing or help line • Requires complex logistics and scheduling • Depends on the group dynamics • Audiotape does not provide feedback	• Teleconfer-encing requires special equipment (which is generally available).

In the final analysis (so to speak) delivery analysis is concerned with three aspects, what will work best for the content, what will be most effective for the learner, and what is most efficient for the learning environment. When you determine a delivery system that meets these three needs, you have the right one.

OBJECTIVES

As we noted at the start of this discussion, the output of all this thinking and looking around is a simple decision on what training delivery system you will employ for your training. You should now see that it is not as simple a decision as it at first appeared. Don't worry about all the time you spent gathering data for this "simple" decision; you'll be using a lot of that data in your design document (what some people call a "course plan").

However, we promised you that we would get into some real training design, so let's do that now by working on your program's objectives. We'll go to the design document after that. Purists might contend that the design document should be done before you write objectives, but this is another chicken/egg controversy. I like to include objectives in my design document, so I think this is a good time to work on them. If you don't, that's OK; in the end we'll all get to the same place—a training program that does its job.

What Are "Objectives"?

You've probably heard the term objectives somewhere before you picked up this book. You might even have seen some objectives associated with an educational or training program that you were participating in, although unfortunately the majority of training programs do not have much in the way of objectives, at least not ones that the trainee ever sees. This is a shame because objectives, particularly well-written objectives that are shared with the trainees and can be used by them to guide their learning, are one of the essential foundations of good instructional design.

Uses of Objectives

Objectives have a number of uses. The most important of these is that they give the trainees a clear understanding of what they will be covering in the course and what they will be expected to know or do when the course is completed. Wouldn't it have been nice if every course you took in high school and beyond did that. Well, they would have if the designer had taken the time to do his or her job correctly and create proper objectives for the course.

A second use for objectives is to help the designer make sure that all the content that is needed is there, that there are no gaps or time-wasting duplications in the material, and that there is no content that simply is not needed by the trainees. Objectives help you focus on "need to know" content and avoid or at least control "nice to know" information. This saves your time in material development, and your trainees' time in learning.

A third use of objectives is to describe to anyone who is interested, in a short, succinct fashion, what the course will teach. This is important for the trainees, but also for their managers. By looking at the objectives, they will know whether the course is covering what they think is important. Objectives also help your boss see that you are on the right track with the program you are creating and that what you are working on fits into the master training plan (if there is one).

Fourth, objectives can help you organize your course. They are the essence of your course; by dividing them into smaller groupings that have similar aspects, you divide your course into modules, lessons, sections, or whatever you want to call them. The term for this is "chunking," and we'll discuss this process a bit later in more detail.

Fifth, objectives are also the basis for trainee evaluation within a course. If, as we said, they tell the trainees what they need to know and do at the end of the course, then it seems logical that they should be tied into how the trainees are evaluated. We'll talk a lot more about this aspect later in this chapter as well, but for now just keep in mind that objectives are the focus of your test questions and test development. Objectives will even help you decide on the type of test questions to write.

Finally, objectives set the criteria for how the course itself will be evaluated. Because we have created them to be statements of how the trainees should be able to perform by the end of the course, if the trainees have achieved them (a term often referred to as "mastery"), then the course was successful; if not, the course flopped. This is rather a harsh way of looking at things, as there are lots of other variables such as trainee ability, retention, and organizational environment to take into account; but in the final analysis a course is only as successful as its participants are, or to use an old proverb, "You haven't taught if they haven't learned." In our case this means that they have learned what they needed to know based on your analysis.

Here's an example of what can go wrong if objectives are not well defined:

> A clothing manufacturer invests in new cutting machines that are supposed to reduce waste by 20 percent. The company hires a consultant to design a training program on how to use the new machines. At the end of six months, it is found that waste not only did not decrease but increased. The training consultant and her poor training are blamed.

In the postmortem the company realized the problem was that the consultant's objective for the program was to teach the trainees how to use the new cutters, whereas the client's was to reduce waste by using the cutters in such a way that less fabric was lost. The two needs were not the same, and the training did not address the client's need. Good objectives developed and reviewed early in the process would have saved a lot of time and corporate resources-and the trainer her job.

Summarizing the Uses of Objectives

So let's go over this again. Objectives let the trainees know what they need to do, tell the designer and the trainer what they need to do, let higher management know what's going on, and are the criteria for trainee and course success. I would say that makes them pretty important.

Then why aren't they a required aspect of every course? Good question! They should be if the course is designed well. The reasons they are not are legion. Course designers don't understand how valuable they are. Course designers don't know how to create them. Course designers think they are developing them when they are not. Course designers construct them poorly, and so they are not useful. Get the picture? It's your job as an effective course designer to create good, usable objectives for your trainees, your trainers, your management, and for yourself to make your job easier.

I've found from experience that you never truly understand the importance of objectives until you are given the task of developing content and training activities for a training program when you're not an SME and the designer has not supplied you with objectives, or until you see a trainer mishandle a program you developed because he or she did not understand or ignored the objectives.

I hope that by now we've sold you on the importance of objectives, so let's move on to discuss how to construct good ones. We'll start by considering common mistakes that occur in writing objectives.

Mistakes in Writing Objectives

Many things can go wrong in your quest to write a good objective. Following are two of the more important ones.

Objectives Versus Goals

The first mistake new designers (and a lot of old ones) tend to make is to confuse objectives with course goals. Course goals are statements developed to explain what the course will cover. We said earlier that objectives do this as well, but course goals are usually written from the course's perspective whereas objectives are written from the trainees' perspective.

For example, a course goal might look like this:

> The purpose of this course is to teach the trainees how to assemble a composite tire using the XB-45 tire-making machine.

An objective might be something more like:

> At the end of this course, the trainee will be able to effectively utilize the XB-45 tire-making machine to assemble a composite tire that will pass the company's inspection criteria.

They both say the same thing, but the goal refers to the course, while the objective refers to the trainee. In the final analysis you aren't really worried too much about what the course can do, but you are very concerned with what the trainee can (and cannot) do, so why spend time making statements about the course.

You might also say that the goal focuses more on the expectations of the organization (from Chapter 2), while the objective is more focused on the trainee performance.

Now I'm not implying that course goals are useless. They have their place for curriculum design and some other administrative aspects. However, too often they are confused with real objectives. If you are designing a course, write from the start for the most important person, the trainee; everything else will follow.

You may have noticed other differences between our course goal and trainee objective, mainly that statement about passing the company's inspection criteria. In objective writing this is called a standard. Standards are important because they form the basis for trainee evaluation. In our example the trainees will not have completed the course if they know how to run the machine; only if they can assemble a tire, and not just any tire, but one that passes inspection, will they have achieved the objective. This is important for the trainee to know, and for you to know as the instructional designer, as it will help you to develop the trainee evaluation measures.

Standards are a key part of every objective. Sometimes they are so obvious that they are understood and not formally expressed, but they are always there. We'll get back to standards and the other parts of a good objective in a bit.

Levels of Objectives

Another common mistake that designers make when developing objectives is to stop after they have a statement, or even a number of statements like the objective above, and think that they have written the objectives for the course. What they have done is to develop the primary level objectives for the course. The primary objectives, as a group, can also be called the course objectives, program objectives, or terminal objectives.

Call them what you like, if you develop them properly they are a good beginning—but only a beginning. To make your objectives really useful for your trainees, you have to develop a second level, often called supporting or enabling objectives. We're not interested in terminology here, so let's call the first-level objectives "first-level objectives" and the next level down "second-level objectives." Your company may use some of the other terms we've mentioned, so translate as needed.

First-level objectives give the trainees an overall guide to what they will accomplish in the course, but it is the second-level objectives that tell them exactly what they need to know and do. If you stop with first-level objectives, you will not have gone far enough to allow you to use the objectives in most of the ways we discussed earlier.

Constructing Useful Objectives

So how do you write good first- and second-level objectives? Well, you start with a good analysis. If this is a surprise to you, you weren't paying attention in the previous chapter and you probably need to go back and review it. The job and task statements, the skills and knowledge that you ferreted out during your analysis, are the basis for your objectives.

For example, in our tire-making training analysis from Chapter 3 we found six job tasks involved:

- Choosing the correct tread size
- Reversing the interior matrix
- Laying on the steel belt
- Sequencing the assembly machine
- Trimming excess rubber
- Inspecting for proper seal

If we were to construct a first-level objective based on the first task, it might read something like this:

> At the end of the training the trainee will be able to choose the correct tread size for the three major tire runs, on the assembly line, 90 percent of the time.

This is a somewhat cumbersome statement, but let's take it apart and look at the pieces.

Time Frames

The first part, "At the end of the training," is there to give a time frame. Almost all objectives relate to the end of the training, so this statement makes sense. There are cases, however, when "the end of the training" may not be the time

frame. For example, some designers write daily objectives for a long course, or even monthly ones. Some use the statement "at the end of this class," or module, or even section. If the learning goes beyond the actual training class and into post-class activities, your objective may start with something like:

- At the completion of the post-class activity or
- After working on the job for six months

Use whatever statement works best for your situation, or mix statements as needed, but note somewhere in your objective what the time frame is for objective mastery.

For the Trainee

The second part, "the trainee will be able to," is there for no other reason than to remind you, the instructional designer, for whom you are writing this objective. If you think this is silly, I can tell you from long experience that even the best designers sometimes forget. This statement acts as a check so that when you read the completed objective you will know immediately whether it makes sense from the trainee's point of view.

It becomes very cumbersome to write these two types of introductory parts for each objective, so what most designers do is to make a blanket statement at the beginning of a list of objectives, something like:

> At the end of this program the trainees will be able to:

They then list the objectives that fit under this heading. So a list of objectives may look something like this:

> After completing this program the participants will be able to:
>
> 1. Relate the company's strategic objectives to the concept of cross functionality.
> 2. Differentiate between monitoring and compliance.
> 3. Propose possible methods for leveraging resources to achieve company monitoring and compliance goals.
> 4. Identify appropriate criteria for monitoring all programs.
> 5. Employ company information systems in their monitoring procedures.
> 6. Design and implement a plan for communicating monitoring results.

Notice that we used a slightly different general opening for the list, but the process remains the same.

Behaviors

The next part of the objective "choose the correct tread size" may be the most important aspect of this or any objective. This is the behavior, the thing the

trainee must do or learn in the small piece of the training that this objective relates to. The behavior is often called the action or the performance, and objectives written with these verbs are termed behavioral objectives, performance objectives, or action objectives. As usual, we aren't interested in what you call it, as long as you do it. I'll call them behaviors, because that is what I was first taught to call them, and it's hard to break away from your initiation terminology.

The behavior signals the trainees as to what must be done or learned in very specific terms. It also signals the designer in the same way. Look at some of the behaviors in the list of objectives for the monitoring program that we reviewed a bit earlier: differentiate, propose, identify, implement, design. These are all very specific things for the trainee to do.

There are comprehensive lists of behaviors that have been developed to which the instructional designer can refer when constructing objectives. New instructional designers often keep one of these lists handy when constructing objectives. In fact, some experienced instructional designers (we won't mention any names) have been known to refer to a behavior list when working on objectives. Here is an example of such a list according to a hierarchy of simple to more complex behaviors. I seldom create objectives without it.

BEHAVIORAL VERBS

Knowledge		*Comprehension*		*Application*	*Analysis*	*Synthesis*	*Evaluation*
Count	Recall	Associate	Interpret	Apply	Order	Arrange	Appraise
Define	Recite	Compare	Interpolate	Calculate	Group	Combine	Assess
Draw	Read	Compute	Predict	Classify	Translate	Construct	Critique
Identify	Record	Contrast	Translate	Complete	Transform	Create	Determine
Indicate	Repeat	Describe	Demonstrate	Analyze	Design	Evaluate	
List	State	Differentiate	Employ	Detect	Develop	Grade	
Name	Tabulate	Discuss	Examine	Explain	Formulate	Judge	
Point	Trace	Distinguish	Illustrate	Infer	Generalize	Measure	
Quote	Write	Estimate	Practice	Separate	Integrate	Rank	
Recognize	Extrapolate	Relate	Summarize	Organize	Rate		
	Solve	Construct	Plan	Select			
	Use	Prepare	Test				
	Utilize	Prescribe	Recommend				
		Produce					
		Propose					
		Specify					

Your Behaviors Must Be Observable. The most important aspect to this list, or any other good one, is that all the behaviors mentioned are observable. The trainee can "do" something that someone else can see or hear, and something can be recorded as having been observed. You can listen to trainees propose a solution; you can watch them differentiate between this and that; you can observe them implement something; or you can read what they construct as an answer to a problem. This is the key to making objectives work: stating behaviors for the trainees to master that are observable to them and to others.

You can usually tell whether an instructional designer has grasped this key to objectives simply by looking at what he or she considers to be an objective. A telltale sign of misunderstanding is the use of two very common but very worthless (at least as far as objectives are concerned) words, *know* and *understand*. I can't begin to count the number of times I've seen objectives with one of these words as the behavior. The trainee will "know how to" or the trainee will "understand the way that." If you've been following this discussion up to now, you will know and understand what is wrong with these "behaviors": they are not observable. How do you know when a trainee "knows" something or, more importantly, how do the trainees know when they know? How do you, or the trainees, measure their "understanding" of something?

Usually, when I ask new instructional designers who have used words like "know" and "understand" these questions, they reply by saying something like, "They'll know it when they can list the ten steps to . . . " and I say, "So why doesn't your objective tell the trainees and you that they need to list the ten steps" or they say, "When they can design a new widget right, then they understand the basics," so I say, "Why not have an objective that states the trainee will be able to design a new widget properly?"

This difference is pretty easy to see, and at the same time very difficult to put into practice. I'm not sure why this is so, but using your list of behavioral verbs rather than using words that have no observable behavioral meaning will help you write usable, useful objectives.

Reviews. It's also good to have someone who knows how to write objectives review yours for instructional design quality. Even the best designers construct objectives from time to time that seem perfect to them but make less sense to others who do not have the background to interpret what the objective is requiring. This means that in all probability it will not make sense to the trainee. This is particularly a problem if you are an SME for the content of your program. Your reviewer will see things that you took for granted but perhaps should not have and help make your objectives even more usable for your trainees.

Picking the Right Verbs. Another common mistake that you need to watch out for is randomly picking behavioral verbs from your list simply because they sound good. Remember that what you choose in the form of a behavior is what the trainee must exhibit to master the objective, so don't just pick a verb—pick the right one. If you choose *list,* then that's what the trainee will be doing, not *comparing* or *creating*. If your behavioral objective is that the trainees will *summarize*, don't expect them to *differentiate* or *predict*.

This is particularly important when it comes to developing evaluation questions. *Recognize*, which is a good multiple-choice behavior, is a whole lot different from *discuss*, which usually means an essay or verbal type question. Your tasks will help you decide on the correct behaviors, as in our example, where the task was choosing correct tread sizes and the objective reflected this by using the same behavior. Most often it is not this simple, but it is always doable if you've analyzed well and take the time to think it through carefully.

Standards and Conditions

Let's go back to our example and finish off this discussion on constructing good objectives. The rest of the objective reads like this:

> … choose the correct tread size for the three major tire runs, on the assembly line, 90 percent of the time.

This portion presents us with the other two main parts of an objective: the standard, often termed the "criteria," and the condition, which is sometimes referred to as the "given." The first main part of the objective was the behavior, in case you can't recall it, making a total of three. Some folks like to add an introduction ("At the end of this class the trainee will be able to … ") as a fourth part; others feel this is simply a piece of the condition or the criteria. Define it as you like, but don't forget to get all the parts in there somewhere.

Standards. The standard or criteria is sort of the basic measurement aspect of the objective. In our example, there are actually two parts to the criteria, "for the three major tire runs," and "90 percent of the time." I have to admit that I over-complicated the objective in the example just to illustrate the idea of standards. In most cases for this type of on-the-job performance, you would not expect 90 percent accuracy, but 100 percent. If such is the case, the standard is more or less understood, and you may choose not to call it out in the objective. You might even omit the "for the three major tire runs" if it is obvious that this is the way the work is always done.

If you look back at my earlier list of five objectives from the monitoring program, you won't see much in the way of standards. For these objectives,

considering their scope, the content, and the audience, the standards are pretty much understood. I could have written: "Identify the nine appropriate criteria for monitoring all programs" if that's how many there were (there were literally hundreds, which is why the verb was *identify* and not *list*), or "Design and implement a plan for communicating monitoring results that is 95 percent effective" (which is probably more than we could ever hope for), but such criteria are really neither needed nor logical in this circumstance.

The important issue for objective writing is for you to remember that standards are a critical part of your objective, and that if they are not totally understood by everyone, then you need to state them specifically in your objective, such as "score an 85 percent on a written test" or "produce a salable tire 93 percent of the time," or whatever. If in doubt, write it in; you can always remove it later.

Conditions. The condition or "given" is a bit more difficult to understand, as it often slips into the standard—and even more often is understood and not written in the objective at all. The condition is basically the environment in which the behavior will be performed. I added a simple condition to our sample tire building objective, "on the assembly line." It's simple, but it says to the trainee and to you the designer that the objective is not mastered until the behavior is done "on the assembly line," not in a classroom, but on the job. This determines how you will write evaluation measures, as well as where the trainee needs to spend some time practicing.

Very few words for such large ramifications, but I wanted to show you what conditions are for and what they can do. In this case, because I wrote in this condition, I felt that practice and evaluation needed to be done in the work environment. There must have been a good reason for this, as shown by my analysis, such as the fact that this was a much more difficult task to perform when the line was running, the noise was high, and there were other distractions.

Anyway, that's what conditions do. If I hadn't added this condition to my objective, then the trainee could have practiced anywhere and been evaluated in a lab or in the classroom. Conditions tell you where, when, and how the behavior must be performed, if such things are important. Like standards, they are most often understood, but if your analysis indicates a need for certain specialized conditions, then these should be noted as part of your objective.

Some old pros, particularly when working with new instructional designers, require that all three parts of the objective (behavior, conditions, and

criteria) appear in each objective that is written. This really isn't a bad idea, although you often end up with objectives like:

> At the end of this program the trainee will be able to recognize the sixteen major uses of the clip shifter by scoring a grade of 95 percent or better on a written multiple choice test given in a classroom and pointing out at least nine uses during a trip to the factory floor where the clip shifter is in operation.

Believe it or not, this is actually a pretty good objective. It has an observable behavior, criteria, and conditions. Its major problem is that it is kind of long-winded. If you have thirty or forty of these as second-level objectives, they become difficult for both the trainee and the trainer to deal with, which means they are often ignored. The best rule of thumb is to put into the objective what needs to be there to help everyone use it effectively.

Here are some examples of objectives that are … well, less than adequate:

On the Dim Side …

- Change a light bulb within 1 minute.
- Without the use of notes or reference materials, write a 200-word essay on "Why I Hate Emergency Planning."
- Run the hundred-yard dash (or make a pizza) (or change a tire).
- Perform and document a general area radiation survey.
- Be familiar with safety precautions related to a 16-gauge shotgun.

And here are the same objectives written with enough information to make them useful for the learners, that is, with standards and conditions. Can you find them?

On the Bright Side …

- Given a ladder of sufficient height and a new light bulb, replace a burned out ceiling bulb of the same size within 1 minute and without breaking your neck.
- Without the use of notes or reference materials, write a 200-word essay on "Why I Like Emergency Planning." Essays must be written in 5 minutes or less, and must contain no more than two grammatical or spelling errors.
- Run the hundred-yard dash on a dry track within 20 seconds.
- In the plant or lab containing radiation check source, perform and document a general area radiation survey in accordance with PNPP procedures and determine any posting requirements.
- State all of the safety precautions that must be followed when loading a Remington 16-gauge shotgun on an indoor range.

The large majority of objectives that you write will not include conditions or criteria as visible parts of the objective statement. However, they are always there, even if only understood, and you will use them—and the objective as a whole—continuously as you go through the rest of the aspects of your instructional design.

More Levels?

Did your eyes widen when I said thirty or forty objectives? Were you thinking, "Where did that number come from? In our tire-making example, we only seem to need six or so, one for each task." Well maybe, and then again maybe not. Remember when we talked about levels of objectives? We said that you may have a course or program objective (or objectives) and then a level under that related to a task or group of tasks. We called these first-level and second-level objectives. However, you may need another level, let's call them *third-level objectives*.

In the case of our tire-making example, our first-level objective was something like:

> At the end of this course, the trainee will be able to effectively utilize the XB-45 tire-making machine to assemble a composite tire that will pass the company's inspection criteria.

While the objective for the first task, which is a second-level objective was:

> At the end of the training the trainee will be able to choose the correct tread size for the three major tire runs, on the assembly line, 90 percent of the time.

But remember that when we did the task analysis (see Chapter 3) we found that the trainees will need to "know what the various tread sizes are and how to differentiate them." This piece of knowledge and this simple skill may both need to be stated as objectives if we are going to help the trainees as much as possible with their learning. So we might construct the following:

> At the end of this section of the course, the trainees will be able to: (1) List the various tread sizes that are worked on the XB-45 machine and (2) Utilize the tread caliper gauge to differentiate between tread sizes.

Now we have two third-level objectives. This is probably as far down as we need to go for this particular task. How do I know that? Experience! This is where the science of objective writing becomes art, or perhaps educated guessing. This feels right to me. If the trainees can master these two objectives, then they can master the second-level objective and the task. I may be wrong, and I may find out that I'm wrong when the SME reviews my objectives, or

when I do my pilot, or possibly not until after I actually implement the course, but remember our rule, "Everything can change."

This is my first swing at the objectives, and we've got a way to go yet before the trainees see them. Many will change a little, some a lot, and I may add another level, and even another for some tasks, based on what happens during reviews and content development. But that's part of what the instructional design process is for: to catch the mistakes before the trainee ever sees them.

Reviews Again

Because we mentioned it, let's talk a little more about reviews. I just said that the objectives may change when the SME reviews them. This is not the same review that we discussed earlier, done by another instructional designer. This review is done by your SME, who does not look at behavioral levels or parts of the objective. He or she is interested in the width and depth of content that your objectives cover. Do they make sense? Do they cover all that needs to be covered? Do they cover too much? Do they ask the trainees to know and do what they need to know and do on the job? As with the instructional designer's review, it is not imperative that a special SME review be done for the objectives, but it is a great idea and will probably save you a lot of rewriting later.

Make sure the SME knows what you are looking for in the review; otherwise you will probably receive a review of your grammar. This is a good rule to follow for all reviews and reviewers. Give them specific instructions as to what type of review you want and need from them. Just a couple of bullet points is usually all that is necessary. I often make the bullet points into a form by simply putting space in between each one. They make their comments on each review point in these spaces, thus making it easier for me to understand what they are getting at.

We've spent a lot of time here on objectives and given you a number of possibilities for their creation and use. It may seem difficult to grasp aspects such as how many levels you need, when criteria are understood, and when to add conditions, and it is. As a new instructional designer you will need to construct objectives, review them, hopefully have other designers review them, change them, and often start over again, and maybe even again, to get them right—then still change them up to the day your material goes to print. It gets better as you gain experience, but not even the best get their objectives right the first time. However, by constructing proper objectives and using them throughout the rest of your instructional design process, you will help to ensure that what the trainees take from your training is what they and your company need them to have to do the job.

Just in case you haven't heard enough about reviews, or you are working on your own without colleagues to lend a hand in the review process, here is one more method by which I always review my objectives.

Start by thinking as your learners think, put yourself in their place. Now, as a learner, ask yourself these three questions for each objective:

1. Do I know what I need to do?
2. Do I know how I need to do it?
3. Do I know how I will be evaluated on it?

If you've been following our discussion of objectives closely, you've probably noticed that these three questions ask for the behavior, the conditions, and the criteria, but in a way that if you can say yes to all three, will ensure that your learners can use your objectives effectively, and that's what it's all about.

Examples of Objectives

Here are some more objectives for you to consider. See whether you can decide which ones are good and which ones need help.

- … utilize their knowledge of the techniques and theory of good management communications to implement an action plan for communicating effectively with fellow employees at all levels of the organization.
- … list the four basic tasks of a router.
- … differentiate between flat rate and usage lines.
- … formulate a personal plan for applying the common knowledge aspects of real estate processes to the practices of their program area.
- … employ electronic information systems for learning about and dealing with real estate issues.
- … correctly perform the steps necessary to troubleshoot a failing circuit board so that it passes a level II inspection.
- … given a reference manual and template, cut and paste a sentence from one document to another.
- … list the nodes of a DC-3 multi-switch without referring to the reference manual.
- … properly send a fax on the FAXator AM-1 machine using the provided job aid.
- … demonstrate interest in staff by talking with them about non-job-related topics.

How did you do? Actually all of the above are what I consider to be well-written objectives. Notice that they do not all have every one of the parts we discussed, but each one is clear, specific in its behavior, and trainee centered. Also, even if you don't see it, each begins with "The trainees will be able to … ."

Smart and Smarter Objectives

It goes without saying that objectives are a smart thing to have and SMART is also an acronym that can help you to write good objectives:

- Specific
- Measurable
- Action Oriented (or some like to use Aligned with Corporate Goals)
- Reasonable
- Timely

You can even make a SMARTER objective:

- Specific
- Measurable
- Action Oriented (or some like to use Aligned with Corporate Goals)
- Reasonable
- Timely
- Evaluate Consistently
- Recognize Mastery

SMARTER tends to go a bit beyond basic instructional design, but I thought I'd throw it in to help you remember the importance of objectives and to remind you that no matter how you do them—do them!

As a rapid instructional design shortcut, take your completed objectives and distribute them to your trainees, along with a listing of resources (procedures, books, manuals, videos, DVDs, people, and so on) they can use to master the objectives. Then leave them on their own to do so. This is actually a form of self-directed learning.

Using this shortcut means you will not need to develop comprehensive instructional plans, lesson plans, or training materials. You will probably want to develop criterion testing (discussed later in this chapter), but even that is not absolutely necessary. The two main problems with this shortcut are (1) the availability of resources and (2) inconsistency in what the trainees pull from the resources.

DESIGN DOCUMENTS

Earlier in this chapter we mentioned the need for a design document. These constructs can come under a number of different names, including *course plans*, *course treatments*, and others. In a more formal instructional design process, each of these is a separate document with its own characteristics, and it is developed in its own time. Because we are talking rapid instructional design here, we'll lump them all together and call the report a *design document*.

The purpose of a design document is to put all the decisions you've made up to this point concerning your training into one place and add a couple more. The design document then becomes your guide as you continue to develop your training. You can also use it to explain to others (colleagues, SMEs, reviewers, stakeholders, management, your boss) what you are doing.

Here is a template for a pretty complete design document.

DESIGN DOCUMENT TEMPLATE

1. Scope of Project (Focus)
   Goal

   Audience

   Design Time and Milestones

2. Delivery
   Content

   Method

Training Time

Problems and Opportunities

3. Objectives

4. Materials

5. Who Is Involved

6. Topical Outline

7. Administration and Evaluation

8. Links

You may not want or need to go into this level of detail with your design document, or you may want to add even more information. Following are two other design document templates, one a bit simpler, the other more complex.

SIMPLE DESIGN DOCUMENT TEMPLATE

1. We need this course because …

2. The participants will be …

3. The course content will be …

4. The course will cost _____ to design and _____ to deliver.

5. Design and implementation staff will include …

6. The course will be delivered …

COMPLEX DESIGN DOCUMENT TEMPLATE

Requesting department:

Requesting supervisor or manager:

Job:

Analyst:

Course title:

Participants:

Identified skills to be taught:

Identified concepts to be taught:

Objectives:

Course description:

Techniques to be used:

☐ Lecture	☐ Discussion	☐ Q and A
☐ Hands-On	☐ Demonstration	☐ Video
☐ CBT	☐ Role Plays	☐ Pre-Work
☐ WBT	☐ Self-Instruction	☐ Games
☐ Other:		

Follow-up activities:

Other departments that might benefit:

Location for training:

Trainers:

Course duration:

Proposed dates:

Number of employees per class:

Development costs:

Delivery costs:

Cost per trainee:

Travel costs:

Cost responsibilities:

Evaluation plan:

And one more template that is somewhat formal, but has become my favorite, as it gives the developer a pretty good idea of what the designer had in mind, which is particularly important if the two functions are not being done by the same person.

FORMAL DESIGN DOCUMENT

1. Approvers and Signoff Authority:

Name	*Role*
	•
	•
	•
	•

2. Subject-Matter Expert(s):

Name	*Role*
	•
	•
	•

Instructional Designer: _____

Project Manager: _____

Business Drivers	•
Target Audience	•
Performance Analysis	• Expected Vs. Actual
Program Goals	•
Program Objective	•
Delivery Method(s)	•
First Level Objectives	•

Instructional Strategy

Major Topics	*First-Level Objectives*	*Possible Content*	*Approach/ Instructional Strategy*	*Equipment/ Materials/ Resources*	*Learner Assessment Notes (Level 2)*
•	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•
	•	•	•	•	•

Development and Implementation Plan

Development and Implementation Milestones

• *Milestone*	• *Completion Date*
•	•
•	•
•	•
•	•
•	•
•	•
•	•
•	•

Communications Plan

Pilot Plan

Continuation Plan

Delivery Method

Program Facilitators

Technical Content

Evaluation

Evaluated Materials	*Level 1: Reaction*	*Level 2: Transfer of Knowledge*	*Level 3: Application on the Job*
Technical Content	•	•	•
Delivery Method	•	•	•
Program Facilitator(s)	•	•	• **X**

Signoff

Learning Design reviewed and approved by: _____ Date _____
Sign off Authority

Learning Design reviewed and approved by: _____ Date _____
Primary SME

A Design Document in Detail

Because the first design document template we looked at is more or less middle-of-the-road in complexity, let's go over it in some detail.

1. Scope of Project

By now you should have a pretty good idea of what the scope or focus of your training is going to be. Here is the place to write it down in statement form. At its simplest, there are usually two parts to a training project scope: the goal and the audience. I normally add a third aspect: the amount of time the design will take and significant milestones in that time period.

Goal. Your goal should be a clear general statement of what the outcomes of the program will be, that is, what the trainees will achieve. As such, it should relate directly back to the need you identified in your assessment process. Keep it fairly general; you'll have a chance to add detail later with your objectives. This is sort of a mission statement for your training.

If you cannot identify a single goal, but seem to have multiple ones, you probably need multiple courses or modules. One advantage of stating the training goal is that it will indicate to you if this is the case. Don't make the mistake of eliminating the detail you know your trainees will need simply because it seems the goal is too complex; create a series of courses with more focused goals instead. And don't err by covering material that may be too advanced for your trainees before giving them the basics because your goal requires a lot of content and your time is short. Create a basic course and an advanced one, each with separate but related goals. To do anything less is to handicap your training program before it's ever used.

This is another of the many places in a good instructional design process at which you might rethink some of your basic decisions about your training program. In this case you may decide that you really do need more than one

course, or a basic and an advanced course. Stating your goal can help you decide.

Let's use our tire manufacturing scenario again and develop a design document starting with the project scope. We know from our assessment and analysis that the goal of the program is "to train employees to make tires." You can make this statement fancier by putting in words like "effectively" or "properly," or by adding condition statements, as we discussed. However, in the end, making tires is what this particular program is all about.

Audience. As for your audience, you should know them pretty well by now if you did a good audience analysis. You don't need to put much detail here, just a short statement on who will and possibly who will not be trained. For our example we might state the following:

> The audience will be all employees newly assigned to a tire assembly line station. This would include new employees and those transferred from other areas.

Oh oh, did we consider these transfers in our analysis?

One of the very good reasons for doing a design document is to check on your own planning. If you forgot something, like a particular portion of your audience, you may need to go back a step and catch up.

Design Time and Milestones. Design time and milestones are exactly what they appear to be. You know your delivery method from your delivery analysis, so you should have a good idea of how long it is going to take you to put the course together and the checkpoints along the way that will tell you, and your stakeholders, how it's going.

In our example, we have determined from our delivery consideration that we will use OJT, and we estimate that it will take us around four weeks to develop the OJT material for the objectives we've written. Milestones will be

- Completion and review of objectives: end of week one
- Content completed for first two modules: end of week two
- Content for second two modules completed and first two reviewed: end of week three
- Trainer's guide and evaluations completed: end of week four
- Pilot and revisions done: end of week five

If you are really sharp, you may have noticed that it took us five weeks, rather than the planned four weeks, to complete the program. I did this to

stress the importance of piloting your program. We'll talk about this concept in detail a bit later, but don't forget to leave room for it in your plan. A good reason for going to this level of detail with your milestones is again to check the accuracy of the amount of time you thought it would take to get your program ready. If you find you have more milestones than will fit in the planned time, something's got to give.

Length of Course. How long should your course be? A key to helping you determine how much design time you need is the actual course presentation time. How long the course should be is usually one of the first things everyone thinks about when developing training. The right answer to this question is based on a number of factors, including:

- Your target audience and their abilities and availability
- The availability of resources such as classrooms trainers or, as in our tire-making example, the actual machines
- The content that you know must be taught based on your analysis and prioritization, as well as what content can be held for another session
- Organizational needs that tell you whether this piece of training must stand alone or is part of a larger curriculum and can therefore draw on what comes before and after
- Instructional needs, such as the importance of breaking the program into modules with time in between for the trainees to practice or to digest the information

There is no easy answer to the question of how long the course should be. If you want some additional guidelines, consider what the experts say:

- It is best to do the training all in one sitting if possible
- Lessons (often defined as a session that addresses one first-level objective) should be no longer than twenty minutes without a change in activity
- Courses should be no longer than three hours

For self-instructional training, break the course into as many smaller pieces as possible and always be aware that trainees tire easily with this type of training, particularly if it involves using a computer

Once you know (or think you know) the length of your course, you need to figure out how long it will take to design and develop it. This depends in great part on your delivery method. There seem to be as many ways to calculate design and development time as there are instructional designers, but here are a few very rough ratios I use, based on delivery time.

Delivery Process	*Hours of Development/1 Hour Instruction*
Lecture	2 to 3
Activity-based classroom	5 to 10
Print-based self-instructional	15 to 30
Multimedia-based	40 to 150
Satellite-based	50 to 100
e-Learning (synchronous)	25 to 40
e-Learning (asynchronous)	45 to 100
OJT	10 to 20
Training by documentation	1
Job performance aids	3 to 300

You can see that these ranges are not very specific, but you can use them to help gauge delivery time, which can change as you go deeper into content development. This is an ongoing process, and you will need to refine your timing as you go. My best advice to you is to guess (estimate) on the high side. No one ever got in trouble for finishing a project too soon or under budget. The opposite is certainly not true.

2. Delivery

Part two of the design document is delivery. By now you should have a pretty good idea of what these items entail. You simply need to put them down on paper.

Content. Under content, a concise statement of what the course will cover is enough. Use your task statements from your job analysis to write this. For our tire-building program it might read something like:

> This program will cover the knowledge and skills practice needed for the participant to build tires at our company, or
>
> The content of this program will consist of the six tasks necessary to build a tire using the X45-B tire-making machine.

The first content statement is pretty general and allows you to add in company history, tire-making theory, and whatever else you might want. The second is very specific and requires that all your content speak directly to the six tasks. If written with a little forethought, your content statement can help you stay on track and tell others what your program will accomplish.

Method. You've already decided on your delivery method, so put it down on paper here. Note any special aspects such as follow-up activities, job aids, or

pre-program activities. You might also do a bit of editorializing concerning the advantages and disadvantages of your chosen method.

> The method for this program will be on-the-job training. A pre-reading of the X45-B manual will be part of the process. This will be a mastery learning with a criterion performance checklist used by the OJT trainer to determine mastery. Due to compliance problems with pre-reading processes, a pre-test will be given by the trainer to check knowledge before OJT begins.

Training Time. This is still an estimate but put it down anyway.

> The average new employee will spend twenty contact hours with the OJT trainer and sixty monitored or observed practice hours to prepare for the criterion evaluation.

Problems and Opportunities. This is a place to note anything special that may affect the course.

> There could be a problem with getting enough practice time on the machine during peak production runs. We may need to schedule most training during third shift.
>
> Capturing the knowledge of our expert operators for the course will give us an opportunity to re-write the operating manual at a later date.

3. Objectives

In part three of the design document, you need to state the course objectives. Your program objective and your first-level objectives are probably enough here, with possibly an occasional second-level objective if you feel something needs more explanation.

4. Materials

For the materials aspect, note any special materials that you plan on creating or using as part of the course, such as videos, DVDs, models, lesson plans, and participant guides.

> This program will include a participant's guide that explains the training process to the trainees and provides both reference material and background reading, an OJT trainer's guide that provides a training schedule, day-by-day instructions, evaluations for the trainer, and two videotapes that explain the functioning of the machine. These tapes have been supplied by the manufacturer.

5. Who Is Involved

This area is usually a simple list of those individuals who will be part of design, delivery, and evaluation and their functions in the program.

Ray Johnson	Training Specialist	Designer of program
Dana Wagner	Operator	SME/OJT trainer
Mike Colcott	Operator	OJT trainer
Harry Lark	Operator	OJT trainer
Lan Winston	Manager	Final approval

6. Topical Outline

Part six of your design document is a short outline of the topics your program will address. Keep this at the Roman numeral level, with just enough detail so that anyone who needs to can see what the course will be covering. Use your objectives and tasks to help you with this aspect. It will be another useful guide as you develop the course material. Note that this is a topic outline, not an instructional plan or a lesson plan. We'll get to those later.

Topical Outline

I. Tread sizes and their importance
II. Identifying proper tread size
III. Reversing the tire matrix
IV. Types of belts
V. Laying belt layers
VI. Operating the assembly machine
VII. Trimming
VIII. Checking the seal
IX. Final inspection
X. Troubleshooting

You may have noticed that items IX and X have suddenly appeared, when there was no indication of them in the objectives or tasks. This often happens and is just another one of those times when you have to perform a check to decide whether something does or does not belong in your course. A little "retro-thought" tells us that we simply missed the final inspection, so we need to go back and write an objective for it—and possibly even a task.

As for troubleshooting, this really was not part of the plan for this course, and although it is important, we decide it will have to wait, so we note that in the "problems and opportunities" area and remove it from our outline. Don't be afraid to make changes. Nothing—not your task list, not your objectives—nothing is written in stone. In fact, be afraid if you never make any changes as you go through the design process. No one is that good!

7. Administration and Evaluation

Under administration and evaluation note how the course will meet these two important aspects. Who will be in charge of scheduling, signing up trainees, reviewing, and updating the course? How will they do this? What evaluations will be done on the trainees and the course in general? You may have noted some of this in the other areas, but pull it together here.

> This is a mandatory course for all new tire-assembly-line hires. As such it will be administered through our general training administration system. The designer will be responsible for reviewing evaluation data and updating as needed.
>
> Evaluations will include our general reaction evaluation instrument, a pre-OJT knowledge test as described above, a criterion checklist based performance evaluation as described above, and a ninety-day assessment of job application using the company's observation and interview format.

8. Links

The last area of the design document is a catch-all that I like to call *links*. This is a place to put anything that doesn't fit anywhere else but that needs to be said, particularly relationships to other training. For example, if you're going to need a train-the-trainer program or if a management overview will be needed, you might note that here.

> A train-the-trainer program will be needed for the three OJT trainers involved in this program. The training should take around two days and include information on 1:1 training as well as how to use the trainer's guide.

Following is a completed example of a design document using the above template.

Team Production Process Design Document

1. Project Scope

Goal: To train all processing staff in the policies and procedures that relate to the Team Production Process initiative.

Audience: The audience will be all employees involved in production at both the field and regional levels, their managers up to and including the division managers, and appropriate members of the sales force.

Design Time/Milestones: The complete design will take approximately two months. Analysis will be completed in two weeks from the decision to go ahead with the project. Objectives will be completed the following week and test questions the next. Material development will last two weeks followed by a beta test and pilot to round out the two-month schedule.

2. Delivery

Content: The content will be based on the policies and procedures developed by the Team Production Process project team, which in turn are based on the best practices from all of the company in the task areas of receipt and distribution, processing, producing, and closing. It will consist of selling the concept of the Team Production Process to the participants, familiarizing them with policy and procedure, and practicing skills based on job aids.

Method: The core delivery will be a two-day facilitated classroom taught by an experienced facilitator with the assistance of a subject-matter expert from the company. These experts will be drawn from the project team and the field manager levels of the organization. The SME will lead question-and-answer discussions and be on hand to answer collateral questions related to the organization. The class work will consist of a segment on "what's in it for me" and for the company, discussion of policies and procedures, explanation of the integrated job aids, and application of the job aids in various simulations and practices. The participants will be asked to create their own personalized job aids after they have mastered the various processes.

The core delivery will be preceded by a test-based pre-work that introduces the policies and procedures and the job aids.

The core delivery will be followed by a post-work activity in which the participants answer a series of simulation-based questions concerning the "Team Production Process" and then discuss their answers with their manager, who has been provided with the correct answers.

Training Time: This training will be completed in approximately six months in the time period from late January to June 2000. Actual learning time per participant will be: (1) two hours of self-instructional pre-work; (2) two eight-hour facilitated classes; and (3) two hours of follow-up work.

We recommend that to achieve this timetable two corporate regions with eight to ten training locations in each region be done every two weeks.

Problems and Opportunities: (1) A question exists as to whether all participants should be trained in the entire process or whether the training should be compartmentalized according to participants' job function; (2) a problem may exist in that all sites will not have received "New Production" training before the January roll-out date; this may mean that some background knowledge will not be available at some sites; and (3) a "permanent" team production process trainer could be chosen from the involved SMEs for each area or region to handle the training of new hires.

3. Objectives

Program: At the end of this program, the participants will be able to properly implement the procedures of the company's Team Production Process when processing all data.

Supporting: At the end of this program the trainees will be able to: (1) discuss the overall purpose of the Team Production Process; (2) describe the overall receiving and distribution flow; (3) effectively implement the team receiving and distribution process; (4) discuss the decision-making aspect of the Team Production Process; (5) differentiate between the various level decisions as related to the Team Production Process; (6) effectively utilize the Team Production Process procedures to make decisions; (7) overview the data-processing aspect of the Team Production Process; (8) correctly employ the procedures of the Team Production Process when processing data; (9) list the tasks associated with completion of a data stream using the Team Production Process; and (10) properly close a data stream using the procedures of the Team Production Process.

4. Training Materials

Training materials to be developed for the program include:

- Print-based booklet for pre-work
- Facilitator guide for classroom portion
- Participant guide for classroom portion
- SME guide for SMEs participating in classroom portion
- Job aids as required
- Post-work material for both participants and managers

5. Involvement

- Personnel will be responsible for the program as follows:
  - Consultant instructional design team: Perform analysis, create design document and training materials, observe pilot and revise where needed, train facilitators and SMEs
  - Consultant desktop publisher: Finalize material format
  - Consultant facilitators: Facilitate all classes
  - Company project team: Supply policies and procedures, review training materials, act as SMEs at classes, support training of facilitators and other SMEs
  - Company SME: Work with course developers to create job aids and other performance-based materials as needed
  - Company field managers: Act as classroom SMEs

6. Topical Outline

I. Introduction
   A. What the Team Production Process is
   B. Why it is good for the company
   C. How it will affect me

II. Receiving and distribution
   A. Sales rep responsibilities
   B. Data receiving tasks
   C. Data logging and distribution tasks
   D. Manager responsibilities

III. Decisions
   A. Data specialist decision flow
   B. Senior data specialist decision flow
   C. Decision differentiation
   D. Logging tasks
   E. Documentation needs
   F. Decisions (data specialist)
   G. Decisions (senior data specialist)
   H. Post-decision form and screen completion

IV. Processing
   A. Type determination
   B. Document requirements
   C. Initial review tasks
   D. Decision path determination
   E. Letters
   F. File setup tasks

V. Completion
   A. Completion flow
   B. Responsibilities for completion
   C. Verification tasks
   D. Completion document preparation
   E. Completion documents
   F. Validation tasks
   G. Streaming tasks

7. Evaluation

Level-one evaluation will be achieved through the use of the company's current instrument or a general instrument. Level-two evaluation will be achieved informally through the classroom-based activities. Level-three evaluation will be a combination of management observation (informal or formalized with a criterion checklist and other documentation) and analysis of the metrics that are part of the project's post-implementation review.

8. Links

Train-the-Trainer Training: There will be two types of train-the-trainer training in the program. The first will be for the core facilitators and will consist of familiarization with the lesson plan and content, plus basic information concerning the company. This should be led by a member of the instructional design team and be supported by a member of the internal project team and possibly another company person qualified to discuss the company in detail. The second will be for the SMEs who will help instruct the core classes. This class will cover their part in the training and give them background information on the entire project. It is suggested that members of the project team take on the SME responsibility at first, and then bring others into the process when necessary. The new SMEs should go through the actual training, then the train-the-trainer session. This should be followed by an observation of a training session before they take over the process on their own.

This system will probably necessitate more than one iteration of the SME train the trainer. However, it is likely that as the consultant facilitators become more knowledgeable about the company that the need for an SME will disappear and that these individuals can get on with their regular duties.

Training time for the train-the-trainer program should be approximately two days for the core facilitators and one day for the SMEs.

Management Overview: There is a need for an executive summary type of program for the various levels of management from the divisional level on down. This program should discuss the project in general, the aspects that affect the various levels of management, and management's responsibilities in making the process successful.

As the numbers here are relatively small, this could be handled through a classroom approach in less than half a day. The class would be best facilitated by a member of the project team, and it will probably need to be given at least once in each region.

Sales Force Training: There is also a need for training members of the sales force as to the purpose of the project and their role in starting it properly. We suggest a possible DVD distribution of a minimal training package that discusses these two aspects and possibly supplies a job aid.

COURSE DESCRIPTIONS

Your design document should serve you well as a preliminary explanation of your training. However, some designers prefer a more formal "course description" as part of their design process. The course description might be done in lieu of the design document, it may be the next step in your design, or you might not do one at all. In case you feel you want to or need to do one, here is a template for creating a formal course description:

I. Title of course
II. Designer
III. Scope
IV. Audience
V. Training time
VI. Delivery method (Up to this point, this model is a lot like our design document, but things change with the next item as the course description gets into a lot more detail.)
VII. The task(s) that will be trained on
VIII. The objectives related to each task
IX. An overview of how the content of the course fits into the job structure
    A. Where the task is done
    B. Who does it
    C. Why the task is important
    D. Problems associated with poor performance
X. Prerequisite knowledge necessary before beginning the course
XI. Lesson overview
    A. Subtasks
    B. Exercises
    C. Practices
XII. Instructional materials
XIII. Visuals and/or other media

XIV. Reviews

XV. Testing

XVI. Performance monitoring

Neither design documents nor course descriptions are a mandatory part of an instructional design, but I suggest you use one or the other in some form to help you think through your course and to keep you on track as you continue with design and material development.

Design documents, course descriptions, analysis reports of every kind—we've talked about a lot of paper so far, and there is plenty more to come. A rapid design shortcut is to keep your reports to a minimum. All the things we've discussed are important, but unless someone is going to read them you don't need to write reports about them. Just jot down what you need for your own use. Keep your formal reporting to a minimum and even those reports minimal. Try for one page where possible. We've given you much longer templates for sure, but that's only if you need them.

GATHERING CONTENT

No matter what method you use to create a skeleton for your course, your next activity is to gather the content that you will need to present. You have actually been doing this all along, as you did your analysis and as you developed objectives, but its important to formalize the process now.

If you are the SME, particularly if you are the only SME, your process is simple. You sit down in a quiet place with your objectives and write down what the trainees need to know to master each of them. This is not the recommended method (although it is the fastest), but if it's all you have the time or resources to do, now is the time to do it.

If you are not the SME, or if there are others you can call on to help, you'll need to select the right people and then meet with them to determine the content.

Selecting Subject-Matter Experts

We discussed how to select SMEs for analysis in Chapter 2. The process is pretty much the same for selecting content SMEs ("Getting Inside an Expert's Brain" by D. Gayeski, 1992). Look for experienced people who have a good attitude concerning training and whom you feel will be easy to work with. Ask them about their experience and how they became experts at the job. Check on how they deal with problems and mistakes. Now pick those people you are most comfortable with and whom you think will be most comfortable with you. This choosing is not a formal science and your

comfort is a key issue, as you are going to be working very closely with one another.

Of course, most of the time your SMEs are assigned to you, and that's when how you work with them becomes paramount.

Working with Your Subject-Matter Experts

First, remember that they may not want to be your SMEs, particularly if they were assigned the task. It takes time away from their "real jobs." You will need to be patient both with them and their schedules, and when you do have their time, listen closely.

When working with your SME(s) to develop content, you can use the same type of data-collection tools that you used for analysis. Many designers like questionnaires and surveys for this process, as they are more to the point and less time-consuming, but I prefer face-to-face interviews.

Give your SMEs a copy of your analysis and your design document or whatever you have used as a planning tool. Discuss it together so they know where the course is coming from and where it is trying to go. Now give them the whole list of objectives. If you did not use their input in developing the objectives (or in reviewing them), ask for it now and make changes where needed. It is another really good shortcut to have the SME in from the beginning on writing the objectives, though this isn't always possible.

Explain the importance of their using the objectives as a guide. I often leave the objectives with the SME and ask him or her to write content based on each, although you may want to stay with the person, listen as he or she talks, and do the writing yourself.

Be sure to explain the importance of "need to know" versus "nice to know" content. I ask SMEs to label each thought as "need" or "nice" to remind them and to help me later. Don't be afraid to question their decisions on this aspect, as it is the key to efficient content.

Also remind SMEs that the content is not for them, but for people who do not know what they do. Therefore, they need to keep it simple and at the proper level. Without this warning, SMEs often forget to include the basics, as they are so second nature to them that they skip right over this important content.

I tend to ask the same question a lot, though in different guises: "What does the learner need to know or be able to do?" Sometimes I ask so often that my SMEs get a bit surly, but they usually realize how important this simple statement is, and often start muttering it to themselves.

Be sure that you ask for any job aids, shortcuts, or other physical materials that your SMEs use to help them do their jobs. These will be invaluable to your trainees if presented in the right context.

When working with SMEs here are some hints that might help you:

- When requesting an SME from a department, provide the manager with a list of the characteristics you are looking for.
- Prepare your SMEs by sending them a list of topics or concepts you want to cover, and even objectives and test questions if you have them.
- At the start, talk to them about their value to the program, and the program's value to their work group.
- Give them an outline of what their duties will be and how much time those duties will take. (Don't forget review time, especially after beta tests and pilots.) This is particularly important as many of the problems IDs experience with SMEs are simply because their role is taking much longer than they thought it would. Discuss with them both the amount of time for each responsibility and how many weeks they'll have to do each one.
- Listen, don't talk.
- Ask good follow-up questions.
- Don't interrupt to ask a new questions until the SME's thought is complete.
- When you move from general questions to specific questions give the SME a chance to make the mental change.
- Don't use trainer terminology like "job aids" or "performance tools." Ask it in their language, or they won't know what you are looking for.
- Use both verbal (ahh, uh huh) and nonverbal (smiling, nodding head, frowning, open body language, eye contact) behaviors to elicit more and better responses.
- Be careful not to ask multiple questions at the same time. Keep it simple to get solid answers.
- Keep your SMEs updated on the progress of the course, as they own part of it now. It will pay big dividends later when you need reviewers.
- When you have follow-up questions, instead of another meeting or even an e-mail, try posting them on the corporate intranet to get other SMEs interested.
- If your SMEs balk at creating activities, remind them of how they felt the last time they attended a training program that was basically a PowerPoint presentation.
- Request a backup SME for times when the SME is too busy to help.

Following is a list of possible ID responsibilities that SMEs might take on.

SME ROLES IN INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN

Analysis

Provide information on the learner populations' level, location, time, etc.

Assist in all analysis processes

Provide information at design meetings

Design

Provide "need to know" course content

Identify acceptable performance

Identify content sources and references, and other learner information

Provide relevant examples and personal "war stories"

Assist in the creation of strong, learner-centered objectives

Development

Internal and final reviews of course materials for technical/subject accuracy completeness, and relevance

Provide graphics or illustrations from an approved source if available

Reviewing of various training materials as they are completed

Facilitating and/or evaluating the course pilot

Confirm technical accuracy

Implementation

Participate in train-the-trainer programs

Present specific content

Act as a technical advisor for instructors

Asynchronously answer learner questions brought up in class

Host and monitor post-class discussion boards

Evaluation

Create proper learner evaluation questions and performance checklists

Provide feedback on course success and applicability

Assist in Level III evaluation of learners

Another rapid design hint is to plan to develop your SMEs into training professionals. Don't just tell them what to do but tell them why as well. Show them what happens with what they are giving you. Have them help you with some aspects of material development and even writing objectives. Over a period of time, they will be able to anticipate your needs and give you feedback that is effective and easy to use. This will drastically cut down the time you

need to work with them and, more importantly, the time you sit there trying to decipher what they are talking about.

Prerequisite Learning

Whether you are the SME or you are using others as SMEs, one of the first things you need to do when gathering content is to develop a list of the prerequisite skills and knowledge that the trainees should come to your program having already mastered. This will give you a starting point and keep you from over-developing your content. This list might be in the form of a series of statements or an outline. Make it as detailed as you feel is necessary. Don't forget to list both knowledge and skills.

Here are some examples of prerequisite learning lists. An outline format such as this usually works just fine for this process:

Pilot Training

Main Task: Perform restart procedures in the event of an engine shutdown

Prerequisite skills:

I. Identify location of engine feather switches
   A. Locate area of control panel
   B. Identify RPM gauges
II. Recognize engine shutdown
   A. Recognize vibration decrease
   B. Recognize RPM decrease

Nuclear Maintenance Training

Main Task: Check electrical circuit for resistance

Prerequisite skills:

I. Know how to read flow diagram for test points
   A. Recognize electrical symbols
   B. Calculate resistance levels
II. Operate a multi-meter
   A. Connect a multi-meter to a circuit
   B. Read resistance values across points

Computer Technician Training

Main Task: Replace PCMCIA card

Prerequisite skills:

I. Recognize card problem

   A. Know card location

II. Remove under housing of computer

   A. Recognize and utilize card removal tool

Setting prerequisite learning requirements is particularly important in self-instructional formats when there is no trainer to help the less experienced catch up and in technology-based applications when it is a key guideline for scripting. It also helps in the development of test items and, of course, in pre-screening, if that is part of your training.

Many designers list the prerequisite requirements in both the trainer's and trainees' guides. This helps set trainee expectations and gives the trainer information on what to expect of the trainees when they enter the class.

Other Sources of Content

Other places and methods for collecting content include:

- Technical manuals for equipment and processes. These might contain useful diagrams and other visuals as well. Be sure that you get the latest edition, and have an SME look over it for changes or "ways we do things" that are different.
- Existing training that may have material that is related to what your course is about. You might even find useful media, such as videos or graphics.
- Quality control manuals that have information about how to do things right—and possibly why the right way is not being utilized.
- Standardized tests for various professional certifications. Not only is there content here, but if your training leads to certification evaluations you will want to know whether you are preparing your trainees in all the certifiable aspects.
- *Observation*: You've done it before and you may want to do it now, particularly after you've worked with your SMEs. Watch how the tasks are done on the job. Look for areas of weakness in the content as you now have

it described. Ask questions, particularly of new employees, about where they are having problems and juice up the content in those areas. Find all the gaps in your content in as many ways as you can, and then fill them.

I'm not sure this is a "rapid" hint, as it can take considerable time, but in the right situation it can be faster, and certainly more effective than many other content gathering processes. I call it document-based consensus analysis.

In a situation where SMEs are not readily available, and your content gathering is mostly from documents, you can use communications software to publish your content outline to a number of SMEs at once. Request that they add to the outline anything you missed, or add to what you already have more detail as postings for everyone to see (and sometimes react to). This "scrum" process, as one of my clients termed it, is time-intensive for the designer, as a lot of information (some of it disagreeing with some other) can come in and needs to be considered. However, it's time-effective for your SMEs and will also give you an indication of where the documents may be in question as well. You need to limit the response time—I like two or three days—and keep solid track of which SME said what, but it works well. As an added feature, Millennials just love this technique as they can see what others are saying and end up feeling part of an engaged virtual group.

Enough Is Enough Is Too Much

You need to be careful, however, that you don't collect too much content. Give yourself a time limit and follow it. We've said that everything can be changed, but don't keep changing everything without ever going on. Choose a point somewhere at which you will stop collecting and begin structuring. Just as there is "analysis paralysis" (where designers never go beyond the analysis process), there is also "content paralysis" (where designers never feel they have all the content they need).

It's hard to say how you will know when enough is enough. It is mostly dependent on the course itself. However, if you wrote good objectives, based on a good analysis, and you have the information that will allow mastery of the objectives, you have enough content. Time to stop and move on.

ADDING STRUCTURE: THE INSTRUCTIONAL PLAN

Now that you have your content in hand, it is time to add some structure to it. Depending on the delivery method you have chosen, the final product of this structuring process may take the form of a script, storyboard, lesson plan, or one of a variety of other documents. We'll discuss the creation of some of

these later, particularly the instructional plan, as it is one of the most common structures and can be used as a preliminary step in the development of most other formats. However, before you get to this stage you must expand your topical outline and make some preliminary training decisions. As usual, there are a number of documents that may be used for this purpose. We'll focus on a simple one generally termed the instructional plan.

Course Maps

Many designers like to create a course map as part of their instructional plan. A course map breaks a course into distinct units of finished training with introductions, activities, reviews, tests, and so forth. These maps are useful tools for keeping on track as you develop materials and can even be used by the trainees as an overview. They are also important in rapid prototyping, a design shortcut discussed in Chapter 8. Course maps normally have structure similar to each segment, with the simplest ones usually comprised of the following parts:

- Pre-instructional activities
- Introduction
- Information to be presented
- Trainee activities
- Learning assessment
- Post-training evaluation
- Follow-up

Maps can be done in outline format, as a flow chart, or graphically. Maps are not really a necessary step in rapid instructional design, but if you like the concept, use it (Using Mapping for Course Development, *Info-Line*, 104).

Content Roadmap

You might decide instead to create a *content roadmap*, which is a bit less detailed, but an excellent intermediate step that will help to direct the development process.

Here is a template you can use for this purpose. Note that it includes a content outline, which may be the topical outline we discussed earlier, or, at your discretion, the expanded outline we will talk about next.

CONTENT ROADMAP

Course title: Time:

Program / course objective:

Audience Delivery Method

Prerequisites: SME:

First-level objectives: ID:

Est.time	*Lesson / topic # and name*	*Lesson / topic objectives*	*Content outline*	*Instructional strategies /threads*	*Media, source material, and other development notes*

Expanded Outline

Whether you do a course map or not, the next step in developing your instructional plan is to create an expanded content outline if you do not already have one. Depending on how you collected your content and what you put into your design document or other items that you created earlier, you may have already done this.

If not, take the content you have collected and detail it in an outline format. Use the topical outline you already completed and fill in all the A's, B's, 1's, 2's, c's, d's, and so forth, until you have basically run out of content.

While doing an expanded outline, you can also be matching content to objectives. Throw out or least put aside for later any content that does not match up well. This will save you a lot of time later when you'll need to separate the "need to know" from the "nice to know."

Here is an example from a coaching program:

I. The purpose of coaching

II. The four aspects of coaching

A. Developmental coaching
   1. Human behavior and associated needs
   2. Wanting to help employees
   3. Skills for development coaching
   4. Corporate development system
   5. Developmental plans
   6. Developmental experiences
   7. Assuring follow-through

B. Performance coaching
   1. Performance standards
   2. Organizational obstacles
   3. Motivation
   4. Performance feedback
   5. Skills for performance coaching
   6. The performance improvement plan

C. Coaching for innovation
   1. Creating a belief that innovation is important
   2. Recognizing innovators
   3. Providing problems for innovators to solve
   4. Teaming up to deal with corporate policy issues
   5. Rewarding innovators
   6. Maintaining innovation

D. Outside coaching
   1. Team coaching
   2. Expertise coaching
   3. Independent coaching

III. The basic steps of coaching methodology

A. Establishing a climate of trust

B. Communicating a willingness to help

C. Understanding issues from the employee's point of view

D. Developing a behavioral plan

IV. Personal characteristics of good coaches
  A. Soft-spoken
  B. Articulate
  C. Respectful of employee's needs and concerns
  D. Dedicated to the project and the company
  E. Task- and results-oriented
V. Common coaching practices
  A. Clarity concerning purpose of activity
  B. Proceeding with tasks in an ethical manner
  C. Committed to the employee as well as the task
  D. Recognizing no limits to possible performance
  E. Being personally responsible for the success of the task and the employee
  F. Being both teacher and learner
  G. Saying what you'll do and doing what you say
VI. Effective coaching behaviors
  A. Skillful observation
  B. Productive analysis
  C. Effective interviewing
  D. Active listening
  E. Positive praise
  F. Constructive criticism
VII. Coaching documentation

In your expanded outline the Roman numerals should basically relate to your first-level objectives, while your capital letters should closely mirror your second-level objectives. Everything else is content information that relates to these aspects. This is not a hard-and-fast rule, but it works well most of the time and will particularly help the new designer to keep track of what's going on with the content.

Sequencing

With your raw content more or less determined (but don't forget that everything can be changed), you can now sequence your training to make it as easy

as possible for your trainees to use. This will require you to tear apart your outline and put it back together again based on the type of sequencing you decide to use. One of the advantages of computers for instructional design is that they make this process relatively simple; just cut and paste the various blocks. In fact, it's so easy that you might want to try a couple of different sequencing methods to find which one seems to work best. Here are a few ways to sequence:

- *General to Specific*: Start with an overview and present the whole, then break it up into its component parts. This is one of the more common sequencing methods.
- *Simple to Complex*: Start with the simplest tasks and work your way up to multi-task complexity.
- *Time Sequence*: This is what you do first, second, and so on.
- *Known to Unknown*: Start with what you know the trainees know and use this as a base to move into what they do not know.
- *Problem-Solution*: Start with a problem and arrange your content to come to a solution.

There are a number of other ways to sequence, but most of them are simple offshoots of these five.

Another sequencing possibility is what I term the "logical sequence." Basically, you look at your outline and say this should be taught first, this second, and so on, based on your own content knowledge (or, if you are not an expert, based on your SME's experience). This is not necessarily the most scientific approach, but it usually works, and if you are uncomfortable with the outcome you can always fall back on one of the more standard sequencing methods.

One other comment on sequencing: you do not necessarily have to stay with one type of sequencing throughout your program. One unit of training may lend itself to a time sequence, while another is perfect for a problem-solution sequence. The important point is that you take a little time to ask yourself: "In what order can this material be best presented to make it easiest for the trainees to learn?"

Training Activities

Your sequenced expanded outline becomes the skeleton for your instructional plan. The next step is to note the training activities you want to add that make a training program out of a mass of content. Following are some things you may want to include, presented in the order in which they would appear in your instructional plan.

Pre-Instructional Activities

These are aspects like pre-readings, instruments, meetings with supervisors, questions to answer, or other specialized activities that the trainee can do before attending class. You might use these to gain the trainees' attention, motivate them, explain class prerequisites, present initial information, discuss class objectives, and for many other purposes.

One thing pre-instructional activities do is to shorten the time needed in class. In fact, many designers develop entire self-instructional packages to be done before a class for this specific purpose. Knowledge type information is provided in the self-instruction and then review, activities, and evaluation are done in class. This mixing of delivery methods, which we discussed earlier, allows you to create a shorter class and/or a less expensive and time-intensive self-instructional package. One word of caution though: you should decide on this approach during your delivery analysis. Waiting until now to say, "Hey, I could do it this way" will probably mean a lot of backtracking and fill work to bring your design to where you need it to be to take advantage of mixed delivery systems.

With the advent of e-learning, there is a lot more mixing of delivery formats going on. Self-instructional e-learning (asynchronous e-learning) delivery of basic content followed by live classroom sessions, or even followed by computer-mediated live classes (synchronous e-learning), is being used in many organizations. Throw in some chat room or bulletin board structures and it's getting to the point in some of these systems where it is hard to tell where the pre-work ends and the class begins.

Introductions

An introduction tells the trainee what is coming in the course. It is also a good tool for notifying the trainee that a change in what is being presented is about to occur. You might want to use an introduction at the start of your instructional plan or at any place in the unit of instruction at which an important change is imminent.

We'll discuss introductions in more detail in the next chapter.

Pre-Tests

A pre-test is a common training activity often found in an instructional plan. Pre-tests have a number of uses, but the five most usual ones are: (1) to assess what the trainees already know as a prerequisite to attending a class, that is to pre-qualify them for a class (2) to assess what the trainees already know to help the trainer in facilitating the class, (3) to inform the trainees about what will be in the class, and the two more common uses (4) to measure the amount

of learning that takes place by being paired with a post-test (5) to test out of a learning program or parts of a program.

Because each of these uses has a different purpose or end result, you'll want to consider carefully why you want to use a pre-test before developing one. You do not need to develop your pre-tests at this time. Actual test creation can be done during the material development phase when you have completed the plan and are sure the pieces are right. However, you should determine why or whether you are going to use a pre-test and what type you will use, and then place that information in your instructional plan now.

One possible disadvantage of pre-tests is that some trainees do not like to be tested; in fact, they may actually be afraid of tests. This can alter the results you get from your pre-test and send trainees off in an entirely wrong direction or reduce their motivation. This is particularly true if your content is highly performance based, such as teaching the use of a machine, or involves a major hands-on process. In these cases, a paper-and-pencil pre-test may do more harm than good, as it could say to the trainees: "This training is all talk and no action."

Be sure that you know why you are including a pre-test in your instructional plan, that it makes sense for this particular lesson, and that the test itself reflects your purpose. Like everything else in instructional design, don't do pre-testing simply because you like the idea or because "everyone else does it."

Trainee-Centered Activities

Any well-designed training should have plenty of trainee activities. These should be noted as well in your instructional plan. Once again, you will not want to develop the activities this early in the process, but you can start to make decisions on what they might be and where you want to place them. The two key issues for all activities are: (1) that they must directly relate to the objectives and (2) that they provide the trainees with feedback or information about their performance.

A list of many of the most common trainee-centered activities can be found in Chapter 5. Use it to help plan what activities you want to put where in your lesson plan.

Instructional Games

One specialized type of trainee activity that can be used to great effect in your training is the instructional game (Thiagi's *GamesLetter*, www.Thiagi.com). These devices can be entertaining as well as informative and allow trainees to test their knowledge and skills in various types of environments. Some of the more popular ones can be found in Chapter 5. Once again, design them into your instructional plan now and develop them later, once you are sure

that everything fits, especially in light of the fact that activities in general, and particularly games, can use up large amounts of time.

Testing

An entire subset of training activities revolves around testing. In your instructional plan you will need to decide on the types and forms of tests that you will include. Like objectives, tests can measure knowledge or performance—and sometimes both. However, also like objectives, it is usually better to keep them separate, as the testing format is often different for each of the processes. Remember that the tests themselves, and the test questions in particular, must relate directly to the objectives.

We have already discussed pre-tests. Other types of tests include embedded tests, which can be placed anywhere in a instructional plan, and post-tests, which are usually found at the end of your instructional plan.

Embedded Tests. Embedded tests usually follow a small but complete piece of training and are normally used to access what the trainees have learned from that particular area. Often they are used as summary activities. They can be oral or written and can be as short as one question or as long as needed.

In self-instructional programs, these tests are found at the end of an instructional unit and are usually self-administered. The outcome tells the trainees whether they mastered the material in that unit or not. In more complex self-instructional programs, these embedded tests can lead to remedial branches that present the material in a different way, thus giving the trainees another method to achieve mastery.

Post-Tests. Most training includes some form of post-test. The purpose of these tests is to pinpoint what learning has and has not occurred for each trainee. Two key thoughts for post-testing are: (1) the questions must be "criterion referenced" (more about this in the next section) and (2) they must provide some type of feedback. Your instructional plan should leave time for going over the post-test to discuss missed answers and concepts.

Information from post-tests can also be used to determine what areas of training have to be revised. This is done by looking at the questions that were frequently missed and determining whether the training was not as complete or in-depth as it should have been. It might also simply indicate that the test question was poor, in which case it will need to be rewritten. This process is termed item analysis.

As with our discussion of pre-tests, the main disadvantage of other forms of testing is the fear that tests invoke in some people. Also, testing can be

affected by the health of the trainee, which is a problem when a test is used to determine whether mastery has occurred for certification or for continuing in a job.

Summaries

Summaries allow you to re-state the key concepts in a piece of training and re-emphasize their importance. Many designers add summaries at the end of their instructional plans, but good designers put them throughout the training to aid in understanding and retention of key issues. Summaries can also help in the transition from one topic to another by saying: "We're going to move to something new, but let's make sure you understand the previous material before we do."

A well-thought-out series of summaries can actually provide a structure for your trainees to learn within, as each summary builds on the last.

Summaries can be straightforward talk or discussion, can be built around activities, or can be self-instructional, depending on what you as the designer feel will work best for any piece of content. They often re-state objectives or learning goals and can even include thoughts on where to find more information on this particular aspect of the instruction. You might use an embedded test as a summary to help the trainees measure their knowledge gain or their change in performance and even to rank the trainees in relation to these changes to increase motivation.

There is no good rule for how many summaries to put in your instructional plan or where they should go. Just remember that they are important in your trainees' mastering of the topic, and put them where it feels right.

Post-Class Activities

The last aspect of an instructional plan is to add in activities for the trainees to do after the class. This is not always appropriate, but should at least be considered each time you create an instructional plan. There are two good reasons for including post-class activities: (1) to increase retention and (2) to help transfer the learning to the job. Well-designed post-class activities can actually become an evaluation of the effectiveness of your training.

Post-class activities can be as simple as an activity report sent back to you sixty or ninety days after the training that states how the trainees have used what they learned, or as complicated as an action plan with goals and objectives to be accomplished back on the job. These plans are often shared with and evaluated by the trainees' supervisors or by third parties.

Interviews, questionnaires, or long-term post-tests are other types of post-class activities that are used, although these are more evaluative than activity based unless they are very well designed.

Chunking

One final thought on instructional plans. All of these activities, summaries, structuring, sequencing, and so forth, mean that what you are doing is dividing your content into smaller and smaller parts. This process is called chunking. The idea of chunking is to break down the mass of content you have collected into pieces that are easy for your trainees to digest, that is, learn.

There are many schools of thought on how big a chunk should be. Some designers contend that one objective equals one chunk; others say that a chunk should contain a maximum of three objectives, or four, or five. After our discussion on objectives, you might already realize that a lot of this depends on the level at which you are writing the objectives.

As usual, I don't think there is any hard-and-fast rule on chunking. Your responsibility as a good designer is to know that chunking is important—and then to simply ask yourself how much of this material should be covered before you design in an activity, or a summary, or a test, or one of the other processes that sets a boundary to a chunk. You may even want to factor in time, considering that ten or fifteen minutes is about the top attention span for your trainees before they stop listening and need to do something else. Once you have chunked, have at least one other person review your instructional plan and give you feedback on the size and complexity of your chunks.

TRAINEE EVALUATION (TEST QUESTIONS AND TESTS)

This may seem like a strange place to talk about test questions. After all, in our instructional plan we've already designed in things like embedded tests and pre-tests and post-tests, maybe even a second post-test as part of a follow-up activity. Actually, there is no good (or for that matter bad) place to talk about tests in instructional design. The process is so integral a part of designing any training that it fits just about everywhere.

One place that creating trainee evaluations does not fit is just before you use them, which is often the exact place where they are developed. Test questions, and the tests that they make up, are much too important to be done as afterthoughts. They should be developed as a part of your design process, not long after you've finalized your objectives. Any good test question must relate directly back to an objective of the training so it is efficient to write test questions while the objectives are fresh in your mind. Let me repeat that: Any good test question must relate directly back to one of the objectives you have already developed for your training. This is not a "nice to do" or a "should do," but a must do. Anything less is not acceptable!

Relate Test Questions to Objectives

There are a lot of good reasons to relate test questions to objectives, but two of them are most important. First, it is not fair to your trainees if they aren't related; and, second, you will never be able to show that your training is valid if they don't relate to the objectives.

Be Fair to Your Trainees

Let's take the first reason first. I'm sure that any number of times in your schooling you sat down to take a test and had no idea what the teacher was asking for. Now, this could be because you didn't study (my usual reason), but it might be because you didn't study the right things, that is, you missed what the teacher felt was important. As we discussed, with good objectives written at the right levels and distributed to the trainees, this should not happen, unless the test questions do not reflect the objectives.

Get the picture? The test questions you develop must relate to the objectives you tell your trainees are important. Otherwise, you are being unfair to them. Remember the "trick" questions that your old history teacher used to use on her tests? As a good instructional designer, forget them. Remember those one or two "special" questions that separate the "A's" from the "B's"? Good instructional designers don't use them.

Good test questions are straightforward and based on the objectives. If the trainees mastered what was asked in the objectives, they should answer all the questions right. This is what we referred to earlier as mastery learning, and this process of matching questions to objectives is termed criterion-based testing.

Criterion-Based Testing

The second reason for basing your questions on the course objectives is that otherwise you cannot know whether the trainees learned what your analysis told you they needed to learn and what the objectives based on that analysis said they should learn (*Criterion-Referenced Test Development*, Shrock and Coscarelli, 1989). Unless your questions reflect your objectives, you won't know whether your training "worked" or was a good use of company resources.

Criterion-based testing brings up many other issues, not the least of which is the time and expertise needed to create good test questions. But one hopes that you can see why it is so important and worth the time. I know you have heard this before, but in the end criterion-based testing will actually save you time. As you become experienced at developing these questions and having them ready for any type of evaluation that you need, your test development and course evaluation will become more efficient by geometric factors.

To give you a little help, here is a list of objectives and supposedly criterion referenced questions based on them. See if you can figure out how many are, and are not criterion referenced.

Objectives

1. SOLVE for total power in a given DC parallel circuit, given values for any two of the following:

   current

   voltage

   resistance

   The answer will be accurate to two places.
2. LIST the sequence of steps for setting up and connecting a multimeter to test a transistor's resistance.
3. Given the necessary tools and an operator's manual, SET UP a double-acting reciprocating pump, in five minutes, and according to the manual specification.
4. STATE the rule for finding total inductance in a series circuit.
5. Given any resistor with four-color bands, DETERMINE the ohmic value as indicated by the color bands.
6. LIST the steps of the procedure for message reception as listed in NTP-4.
7. STATE the four classifications of call signals.
8. USE the principle of electromagnetic induction to describe the operation of an AC generator. The description must contain the following points …
9. RECOGNIZE the five functions of the reactor vessel.
10. Given a circuit diagram and decade box setting, CALCULATE the internal DC resistance of the electrical circuit with a wheatstone bridge.

Questions

1. In the circuit below, the current and voltage are given. Calculate for total power. Your answer should be two decimal places.
2. The sequence of steps for setting up and connecting a multimeter to test the resistance of a transistor can be reversed when using an Ames omnimeter.
3. Using your operator's manual, describe the necessary steps for setup of a double-acting reciprocating pump. You will pass this test if you complete this task within five minutes, in accordance with the manual specifications.
4. In the space below, write the correct rule for finding total inductance in a series circuit.

5. For each of the resistors pictured below, find the value in ohms and write the value in the space next to the resistor.
6. The steps of the procedure for message reception include:

   picking up the phone

   writing message

   hanging up phone

   all of the above
7. For each of the call signals listed below, write the type in the space provided.
8. For each of the following sets of parameters, describe if an AC generator will function in terms of the principle of electromagnetic induction.
9. The five functions of the reactor vessel are:

   _____

   _____

   _____

   _____

   _____
10. In this circuit diagram, the resistance is calculated at 30 ohms, the decade box is set on 30 ohm, galvanometer reads zero and Rx=350 ohms. Could a wheatstone bridge be used as the resistor?

Answer Key

1. Criterion referenced
2. The objective asks to list, the question is more analysis
3. The objective requires a performance which can not be evaluated by a test question
4. Criterion referenced
5. Criterion referenced
6. The objectives asks for a list, not to recognize a term as this multiple-choice question requires
7. The objective asks for classifications, not types
8. The objective asks for a description, the test question for analysis
9. The objective asks to recognize, not list
10. The objective asks for a calculation, but the question gives the calculation and asks for analysis

You may have picked up on another issue here. Because you have different types of objectives, you will have different types of test questions—and even different types of tests. If your objectives are knowledge-based, the good old paper-and-pencil type of tests will work well; but if the objectives are performance-based, your tests will need to be set in a performance scenario. You will have a difficult time writing a paper-and-pencil test question for an objective that says: "The trainee will be able to utilize a paper cutter to cut each of twelve pieces of paper into two equal pieces."

Performance Checklists. The simple answer to this problem is a different type of test called a *performance checklist* or *criterion checklist* (*Comprehensive Open Skill Test Design*, Desmedt, 1991). With this type of testing instrument, the trainee is asked to perform a task or series of tasks, usually after being instructed on how to do so and having practiced in a real or simulated environment. The checklist lists the task or tasks and gives the evaluator a place to check whether they were completed properly. More detailed checklists provide the evaluator with specific criteria concerning the tasks that they should be observing—and even ratios of how often each should be observed per component. The complexity of your checklist will be dependent on the complexity of the task and the expertise of the evaluator.

If your evaluators will always be SMEs, they won't need much guidance in proper task completion. Simply provide a checklist of what they will observe. However, if the evaluator has only limited knowledge or if the person's expertise may be suspect, you'll need more detailed criteria on your performance checklist.

Each checklist should include directions for the evaluator concerning how and where to evaluate the performance and a place for both the evaluator and the trainee to sign showing that mastery has been demonstrated. Here are some examples of simple performance checklists.

TRAINER CERTIFICATION CHECKLIST

Task Area: Instructional Design

Objective: To utilize effective techniques in assessing training needs and planning a course of instruction.

The candidate has submitted evidence that he/she is able to:

- ☐ Create a summary document for a training needs assessment
  - ☐ Effectively determine the items that must be investigated for a training request
  - ☐ Utilize proper data-collection methods to determine required and actual performance for items in a training needs assessment

- ☐ Determine possible causes of performance deficiencies
- ☐ Determine possible benefits of improved performance in training situations
- ☐ Recommend the type(s) of training that should be used
- ☐ Recommend management support processes for specific training situations
- ☐ Produce a training needs assessment narrative that can be used to further the training design and development process

☐ Perform accurate cost analysis for training programs

☐ Perform accurate benefits analysis for training programs

☐ Determine ROI for training programs and make accurate decisions concerning continuing their development

☐ Create an effective and complete list of constraints for specific training programs

☐ Develop a proper work plan checklist for the design of a course of instruction

_____ _____

(Master Trainer's Signature) (Candidate's Signature)

OPERATIONS DEPARTMENT FINAL CHECKLIST

Directions: This checklist is to be used by the evaluator to check the trainee's ability to perform the tasks related to a particular objective. The trainer should observe the trainee performing each of the listed tasks, either in a real-life or simulated situation, and have the trainee discuss the items that are not observable tasks. Check the task as being completed only if the trainee has satisfactorily mastered it. If the trainee has not mastered a particular task, he or she should be coached by the trainer, given time to practice, and then observed again. When all tasks on this checklist are completed, both the trainer and trainee should sign the document.

Objective 1: Utilize the computer system to perform the computer-mediated functions of the operations department

The trainee can:

☐ Discuss how the computer system affects the company in general

☐ Compare the purpose and uses of Novell and UNIX

☐ Describe how specific departments interface with the computer system

☐ Log on to the computer correctly

☐ Log off of the computer correctly

☐ Navigate through the computer system efficiently

☐ Compare the system specifics and interactions of ATRS and TRIMS

☐ Input data as needed for the operations department

☐ Extract data from the system as needed for the operations department

These tasks have been practiced, observed, and mastered.

_____ _____

(Manager's Signature) (Trainee's Signature)

Another type of performance checklist is based directly on the objectives. Here is an example of a template that you can use for this type of checklist. Note that this is not an all-or-none (or what we called mastery) process but has gradations of successful completion.

OBJECTIVE CHECKLIST

Reviewer:_____ Trainee: _____

Course:_____ Date: _____

Objective	*Performance*	*Comments*
	☐ Exceeded expectations ☐ Met expectations ☐ Below required level	
	☐ Exceeded expectations ☐ Met expectations ☐ Below required level	
	☐ Exceeded expectations ☐ Met expectations ☐ Below required level	
	☐ Exceeded expectations ☐ Met expectations ☐ Below required level	
	☐ Exceeded expectations ☐ Met expectations ☐ Below required level	

Question Banks

In good instructional design, the trainee evaluation questions are always developed well ahead of the actual evaluation, with a minimum of one (preferably two or three) questions written for each objective. This allows you time to have each question carefully reviewed by both an SME for content reliability and another instructional designer to determine whether the question is properly written and directly relates to an objective.

Having your questions written and reviewed ahead of time allows you to simply pull questions from what will become your "question bank" for whatever testing procedure you need. Have you designed in an embedded test after objective five has been facilitated? Pull from your question bank one question for each of the first five objectives, and you have your embedded test. Did you decide on a pre-test for the purpose of testing trainees out of the first class? Take one question for each knowledge objective covered in the first class and put them together as a written pre-test. Now take the performances for the three objectives that are performance-based and make a checklist from them. Add these together and you have a comprehensive, valid test-out procedure.

The time savings I mentioned earlier comes in here. Instead of creating a new test for each class, you only have to go to your question bank and pick and choose. This is also great if you have large numbers of trainees in multiple classes and you don't want the answers to be shared. It works splendidly for self-instructional packages as well or for remedial testing.

There are a number of good software packages available that can help you automate the creation of your question bank. If you look for one, be sure it allows for selection of items by random, by objective (i.e., X/objective), or by hand so you can pick questions you want. Also, determine whether there is an interface with your LMS and the software you'll use to present your course (particularly important in e-learning. If not, you'll need to send your learners to yet another website, which can be more than a bit of a nuisance. Check to see that the software supports more than just multiple-choice questions (some don't).

Thoughts on Testing and Test Questions. Here are some thoughts on the importance of testing, and the development of various types of tests and test questions (*Test Construction for Training Evaluation,* Denova, 1979).

- Criterion testing provides a trail from job analysis to trainee evaluation that supports both certification and legal justification
- Writing test questions can serve as a check of the completeness and accuracy of both your objectives and your content before it is seen by the trainees

- Tests can save valuable employee time by pre-selecting only those who need the training
- Tests can help the designer or the trainer determine what content areas need further emphasis
- Tests can help course designers evaluate the effectiveness of the course and make revisions where necessary
- Create at least two test questions for each objective and develop a test bank that you can draw on when you need a test
- Use true/false questions for self-tests or class discussion starters. Do not use them for mastery tests
- Use matching questions when the content involves a sequence
- Create self-tests by simply asking the learners to check off the objectives they feel they've mastered in that learning segment
- Use scenario type questions for performance and "value/relations" type questions
- Bring a fill-in-the-blank or short-answer question to a higher level by asking "What else might the answer be?"

There are actually two major aspects to developing test questions. The first is: Are they fair? We make sure of this by criterion referencing all our test questions, and any other trainee evaluation as well for that matter.

The second aspect is: Are they fairly written? This aspect engenders a lot of controversy as there are about as many rules for writing test questions as there are people writing them. The following tool contains more information on specific rules for developing various types of test questions.

These rules are not of biblical proportions; there are many others and often they disagree with the ones stated here. These are simply the rules that I use most often. The final decision, as always in instructional design, lies with you, the designer.

DESIGNING IN VARIOUS TESTING FORMATS

Multiple-Choice Format

Characteristics An item with two or more responses, one of which clearly provides the "best answer"

Stem identifies question or poses problem

Alternatives are responses

Trainee selects best answer

Advantages	Can measure all levels of cognitive ability
	Effective to administer and score
	Objective measurement of achievement (either right or wrong)
	Allows wider sample of subject matter (covers a great deal in a short time)
Limitations	Difficult and time-consuming to construct
	Leads exam writer to favor simple recall of facts (no real depth)
Hints for Stem Construction	Write as direct question rather than incomplete statement
	Pose definite, explicit, and singular problem
	Do not include unnecessary verbiage or irrelevant information
	Include any words that might otherwise be repeated in each alternate
	Underline negatives (if you use them at all)
Alternatives	Should be plausible to less skilled trainee
	Should be grammatically consistent between stem and all alternatives
	When possible, presented in logical order
	Only one correct or best response to each item
	Approximately equal length
	Avoid clues that give away answer • Grammatical clues, as "a" versus "an" • Verbal association • Connection between stem and answer
	Use at least four alternatives
	Randomly distribute correct response positions
	"None of the above" and "all of the above" should be avoided as alternatives
	Item and alternatives should not measure trainee opinion
Example	"Which of the following is the formula for Ohm's Law?"
	a. I = 2RI c. I = RE
	c. R = IE d. E = IR

True/False Format

Characteristics	A two-choice item in which only one of the responses is absolutely correct
	Complete declarative sentence

Advantages	Allows widest sampling of subject matter per unit of time (big number in unit of time)
	Effectively administered and scored
	Objective measurement of achievement
Limitations	Extremely high guess factor (50 percent right versus 50 percent wrong)
	Leads exam writer to favor testing of trivial knowledge
	Exam writer often writes ambiguous statements when testing higher levels of cognitive skill, due to difficulty in writing unequivocally true/false statements
Hints for Construction	Base items on statements that are absolutely true or false, without qualifications or exceptions
	Write statement as simply and clearly as possible
	Express single idea in each item
	Avoid lifting statements from text, lecture, or other materials so that memory alone will not permit correct answer
	Avoid use of negatively stated items
	Avoid use of unfamiliar vocabulary
	Avoid use of specific words • Likely to be false: all, always, none, never • Likely to be true: usually, sometimes, often
Example	True or False: "Foam is the most effective agent for extinguishing a Class A fire adjacent to the containment building."

Matching Format

Characteristics	A list of conditions, a list of responses, and directions for matching the conditions to the responses
	Trainee matches correct items between lists
Advantages	Efficient to administer and score
	Objective measurement of achievement
	Allows for fairly wide sample of subject matter
Limitations	Difficult to write items that measure more than simple recall
	Difficult to select common set of conditions and responses

Hints for Construction	Include clear directions
	Explain basis for matching items
	State whether or not a response can be used more than once
	Use same types of material, i.e., lists of like nature or kind
	Make the list of responses longer (or shorter) than the list of conditions
	Place the responses in the right column and in a logical order (alpha or numeric)
	Avoid grammatical clues
	Keep items and total number of items brief
Example	"Match the abnormal control rod drive flow conditions in the left column with the cause in the right column."

Conditions	*Possible Cause*
High flow	Air problem
Low flow	Directional
Zero flow	Solenoid problem

Completion Format

Characteristics	An item that requires the trainee to complete the sentence or write the answer to a question in a few words
	Statement with usually one or more blanks to be completed
Advantages	Series of well-constructed completion/short answer items can measure knowledge similar to essay test items and with more consistency
	Allows wide sampling
	Minimizes guessing as compared to multiple choice or true/false
	Efficiently measures lower levels of cognitive ability
	Usually provides measure of achievement
Limitations	Difficult to construct so that desired response is indicated
	Typically limited to measurement of simple recall
	Possibility of containing more irrelevant clues as compared to other item types
	Takes longer to score than previously mentioned format types
	Improper preparation of item can lead to more than one correct answer

Hints for Construction	Omit only insignificant words
	Do not omit so many words that meaning is lost
	Avoid grammatical clues
	Make sure only one brief, correct response is possible
	Make blanks equal in length
	Multiple answer blanks should be avoided
	The main idea should precede the blank (blank at the end of the statement)
	Blanks should require key words
	Answer called for should be clear to the trainee
Example	"The function of total flow indicators is to provide _____ ."

Essay Format

Characteristics	Question to which trainee is expected to demonstrate ability to: • Recall facts • Organize facts • Present facts in logical, integrated answer
	May be either extended response or short answer
Advantages	Easier and less time-consuming to construct as compared to other types
	Provides means for testing trainees' ability to compose answer and present in logical manner
Limitations	Limits amount of subject matter that can be covered by exam
	Extensive amount of time required to score, delaying feedback to trainee
	Subjective measure of achievement due to possible bias on part of grader
Hints for Construction	Use questions that can be answered in a short time and space
	Question should be specific, phrased so trainee will be able to answer
	For questions requiring lengthy response, indicate in outline form information desired
	Prepare scoring key in advance that shows acceptable responses and relative weights
Example	"In the space below, describe in terms of the principle of electromagnetic induction how an AC generator works. Your answer should include the following points:"

Here's an exercise to help you determine whether questions are fairly written. Use the rules we just discussed or your answers won't match mine.

QUESTIONS

1. If oxygen is brought into contact with anything burning, the flame will be increased.
   - ☐ True
   - ☐ False
2. The vessel that carries oxygenated blood from the heart to the body is called the
   - ☐ Trapezius muscle
   - ☐ Forebrain
   - ☐ Patella tendon
   - ☐ Ascending aorta
3. One of the limitations of teaching by external rewards is that
   - ☐ punishment is more effective than external rewards
   - ☐ many trainees may not be influenced by external rewards
   - ☐ the learner's behavior may change as a result of external rewards
   - ☐ external rewards become more important than learning itself
4. Match the state with its capital city.

Alabama	Montgomery
California	Lansing
Indiana	Harrisburg
Michigan	Indianapolis
Minnesota	Los Angeles
North Carolina	Madison
Pennsylvania	Milwaukee
	Minneapolis
	Philadelphia
	Raleigh
	Sacramento
	St. Paul

5. Who discovered America? _____
6. _____ encourages the _____ of trainees' prior skill knowledge when developing and _____ learning objective.
7. After _____ second(s), the static type ABT will commence shifting from normal source to the emergency source of power when a failure or reduction of voltage is sustained.
8. Resistance is measured by an:

- ☐ Voltmeter
- ☐ Wattmeter
- ☐ Oscilloscope
- ☐ Ohmmeter

9. Resistance cannot be measure by a (an):
   - ☐ Oscilloscope
   - ☐ Multimeter
   - ☐ Ohmmeter
   - ☐ Galvanometer
10. List the six trigonometric functions.

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Answer Key

1. Fairly written question
2. Distracters are poor, as none are blood vessels
3. OK, but take the repeated words out of the distracters and into the stem
4. OK, but possibly too many choices in right-hand list
5. So little information in the question that there could be a number of correct answers
6. Too many blanks and too confusing for learner to really show knowledge
7. OK, but try to position the blank near the end of the question
8. The "an" makes some answers grammatically incorrect
9. The negative word should be underlined
10. Fairly written question

Designers often enlist the aid of SMEs in creating valid test questions. Here are three questions to ask your SMEs as you are working with them on test question creation that can make the process go faster and with fewer revisions.

1. Is this something the learner must know or do?
2. What objective and content does the question relate to?
3. Is there anything else you want to make sure they know or can do that we didn't ask?

Tests that are created from well-written questions will allow your trainees to prove their mastery of your objectives and allow you to prove the effectiveness of your program. But you must develop your questions properly, relating them directly to your objectives and what the objectives require. Create questions that fit the level of knowledge or performance of your objectives.

You'll want to critique your questions once you complete them. Actually, you'll want to have other people critique them as it is most difficult to critique your own writing of anything.

You'll need another ID and an SME to do the job. The SME, of course, looks at content while the ID critiques question development and objective/content/question match. As such, these critiques are done after development, but continuing with our spider web approach I thought we might mention them here.

Following is a Test Question Critiquing Checklist you may want to use, or customize to meet your own needs.

TEST QUESTION CRITIQUING LIST

Use this checklist to evaluate various types of criterion-based test questions:

Overall Test Construction

- Matches the course objective
- Tests knowledge of appropriate content
- Matches the item type to the objective's Bloom's Taxonomy level
- Uses a variety of item types
- Contains an adequate number of items per objective (2 or 3)
- Provides clear instructions
- Poses straightforward questions to assess mastery
- Avoids giving away the answer to one item in the text of another item
- Matches the number of items to the priority of the objectives (i.e., more items that cover the most important objectives)

True/False

- Statement is definitely true or false
- Avoids excess language (one item – one question)
- Consists of simple declarative statements
- Focuses on "why" rather than "what"

- Avoids exclusive words (always, only, never – unless absolutes come from content)
- Avoids trivial statements (i.e., statements that a person can answer correctly without knowledge of the content)

Multiple Choice

Stem

- Includes more content in the stem than in the alternatives
- Uses one question per stem
- Matches stem to key course content
- Focuses on the "why" as well as the "what"
- Avoids overuse of negative terms (or highlights them, if used)
- Avoids using a blank in the beginning of stem

Responses

- Has only one correct answer (unambiguous and correct)
- Ensures all alternatives are grammatically consistent
- Includes plausible distractors
- Includes common errors as distractors
- Keeps the responses shorter than the stem
- Avoids words/phrases in the alternatives that appear in the stem
- Presents numerical responses in a logical order
- Avoids redundant wording in the alternatives
- Ensures all alternatives are of similar length
- Avoids use of "trick" alternatives (i.e., ones that require cleverness or careful reading, rather than knowledge of the content)
- Avoids patterned responses for correct answer across items (e.g., B and C as correct)

Matching

- Includes closely related content
- Uses numbers on the left and letters on the right
- Keeps the list short (5 to 10)

- Contains more answers than prompts
- Arranges the right-hand column in alphabetical or numerical order

Fill-in-the-Blank

- Avoids multiple answer blanks
- Requires the use of key terms
- States the item so that only a single, brief answer is likely
- Avoids grammatical clues
- Places the blank at the end of the sentence
- Indicates the degree of precision required for numerical answers (for example, "to the nearest tenth")

Essay

- Asks the learner for something specific and appropriate to the level of knowledge
- Indicates the approximate length of essay desired and/or time to spend on the essay
- Identifies, if appropriate, the type of information the essay should cover or omit
- Indicates whether spelling, punctuation, grammar, word usage, etc., are considered in the scoring
- Includes a detailed scoring rubric for instructor use

Scenario

- Contains information that is representative of on-the-job activities
- Does not use unnecessary information to distract or obscure
- Includes unnecessary information only where omitting it would be inappropriate (e.g., omitting part of the information from a commonly used report)
- Provides an amount of information appropriate to the number of response items based on the scenario

---

After you have designed your questions, a rapid design shortcut is to create a series of tests at various levels and to distribute them to the trainees along with the objectives they are based on. Explain to your trainees that they are responsible for mastering the tests using their own initiative and finding

their own resources. You might take this approach further by providing incentives for trainees for each level that they master. This shortcut will eliminate the need for you to develop instructional plans, lesson plans, and training materials.

Now that you have written your questions, you have finished the design component of instructional design. Your basic products are a decision on a delivery system, good objectives, an instructional plan of some type, and a bank of criterion-referenced test questions. All of these directly relate to the tasks to be trained on that you developed through your assessment and analysis activities. It's now time to take what you have done so far and create an actual training program with content, activities, tests, and all the other things that are important aspects of good training. This is the instructional design component of development, and it's next.

HINTS FOR DESIGNING IN VARIOUS FORMATS

Classroom

- Plan your classroom design so all your trainees are at the same level of knowledge before the class begins. This requires a combination of good trainee analysis, pre-testing, and pre-work. e-Learning is a particularly good way to deliver this pre-work and bring everyone up to speed before class begins.
- For interpersonal skills, think classroom delivery first if your environment allows it.

On-the-Job Training (Job Aids)

- In OJT the costs increase in direct proportion to the number of trainees. This is not true in classroom training or self-instruction.
- Try to match your OJT trainers and trainees in regard to background, attitudes, language, and age if possible.
- OJT is usually not a good approach in start-up situations.
- A simplified OJT design:

  Step 1: Prepare the trainer, the trainee, and the course material.

  Step 2: Tell the trainee what is to be done.

  Step 3: Show the trainee how it is done.

  Step 4: Allow the trainee to practice under supervision.

  Step 5: Evaluate the trainee under normal working conditions.

  Step 6: Provide transitional support as needed.

- Thoughts on OJT or any type of 1:1 training:
  - Unlike in the classroom, there is no learning from peers
  - The trainer cannot be seen as the guru with all the answers
  - Tell, show, do, and let them make mistakes
  - Answer questions with "what do you think?" where possible, then say OK, try it. And if it doesn't work, ask "What do you think went wrong?"
  - Trainer guides need to be minimal outline formats so trainer remembers not to talk too much
  - Trainee guides need to be more complete with plenty of job aids
  - Evaluations are often of the case study or problem-solving variety
  - You'll need deeper audience analysis when you have an audience of one
  - Build in more questions to check progress
  - When training 1:1 trainers you can focus on basic communications skills as in a classroom, then giving them lots of 1:1 practice

Here's a five-step approach to training with job aids:

1. Design it right
2. Explain to your learners what it is and isn't
3. Train them on how to use it (tell, show, do)
4. Let them practice using it
5. Evaluate them using it

Self-Instruction

- Self-instruction requires a higher level of motivation on the part of the trainees. Reconsider its use if your analysis indicates the trainees are not motivated.
- Use when concepts must be taught "just in time" to a large number of trainees.
- Use this checklist when planning a distance (distributed) self-instructional approach:
  - ☐ Facilitators have been determined
  - ☐ Control measures have been planned
  - ☐ Distribution hardware (if any) has been analyzed
  - ☐ Reproduction costs have been considered
  - ☐ Programs have job-specific activities where possible

- ☐ Introduction, distribution, and revision costs have been considered
- ☐ A plan for trainee preparation has been developed

- Use this checklist when planning a self-instructional learning center:
  - ☐ Designate a room or area that will be used only as your center
  - ☐ Hire and train a full-time facilitator
  - ☐ Be sure your center is in a central location
  - ☐ Be sure that a learning center will best meet the needs of the trainees and the training
  - ☐ Acquire the necessary funding to start and run the center
  - ☐ Look for shortcuts through the use of off-the-shelf programs
  - ☐ Create a good learning center selling plan
  - ☐ A critical need has been isolated
  - ☐ The center's main purpose has been defined
  - ☐ The main users have been defined
  - ☐ Center mechanics have been considered
  - ☐ Cost has been estimated
  - ☐ Integration with the current training system has been defined
  - ☐ An effective presentation with concrete examples has been developed

e-Learning

Use this type of training when:

- There are a lot of repetitive actions in your training
- The performance conditions are hard to replicate
- Visualization and extended practice are important
- The program will be given often over a long period of time
- The audience is large and/or distributed widely
- Tracking of trainee evaluation is critical, such as in a regulated or certification environment
- Familiarization with equipment is important but the equipment is not available

Course Treatment for Computer/DVD-Based Training

For this type of delivery system, you might want to describe the look and feel of the course to your clients, material developers, and programmers. Items you may put in your treatment include:

- Course goal and major objectives
- Audience
- Theme (what the course will "feel" like)
- Tone (the course mood: formal, informal, down-to-earth, serious, fun)
- The environment or background for the course (where, when, what is going on)

Be sure to match the look and feel of the course's work environment to your audience's work space.

- Information about the main characters such as:
  - Personality
  - Speech habits
  - Expressions
  - Occupations
- Music style, if any
- Program colors (If you're not sure about colors, start with your corporate colors or ask an artist, but consistently use a single color scheme. Watch the use of color cues, as some people are color-blind.)
- The pace of the program (fast and furious, slow and deliberate, build slowly, or hit them between the eyes right away) (Use a faster pace when tasks are time-sensitive or involve risk; use a slow pace when "doing it right" and "being sure" are key issues.)
- The point of view of key characters (first, second, or third person)

Design Hints for e-Learning

- Be politically correct or you will lose part of your audience
- Humor is good, but not if it offends
- Format your graphics so they follow the same pattern
- Don't change your user interface in mid-stream
- Use flow charts to detail interactions, branching, and other trainee-centered activities (Flow charts also help when its time to do a course revision.)

Course Overview for e-Learning

- This course overview functions in the same way as a course overview in a stand-up training class. Items you might include in your course overview are:
  - A description of the icons that will be found in the course
  - An example of how to navigate through the course
  - Testing and mastery requirements
  - The method for keeping course completion records
  - An introduction to the course tone, theme, and pace.
  - A sampling of the music, graphics, and environment that are found in the program
  - An activity to capture the trainees' attention and make them comfortable with the program
- If using DVD-based delivery, take advantage of its ability to administer high-level simulation-type test questions and branched testing
- Use the click-and-drag method to test for assembly processes and relationships
- Get double duty from your DVDs (or other technology-based) program by expanding the navigational possibilities and training your trainers on how to jump from place to place in the program when using it as instructional media in their stand-up or OJT training
- For multi-language environments, DVD-based programs provide easy translation if designed properly
- Branched e-learning is a good system when the range of entry-level knowledge is great

Synchronous and Asynchronous e-Learning

The following points have been gleaned from many sources, including Margaret Driscoll's *Defining Internet and Web-Based Training* and Brandon Hall's *Web-Based Training Cookbook*. There is a chapter on each of these delivery processes in this new edition if you want to explore them further.

- Make sure you have a very good relationship with your IS department before attempting this type of delivery
- Trainees won't last long if your site is slow
- Trainees will also "bug out" if they don't see the relevance of the content
- Trainees won't even start if the navigation is hard to understand

- Test the user interface and its capabilities before developing your training
- Ten things to consider when choosing an asynchronous delivery process
  - Do you have the expertise to maintain the content and structure of your website?
  - Does your organization have a help desk to take calls dealing with technical issues?
  - Do you need to install a training tracking system as part of the delivery? (The answer here should almost always be yes.)
  - Can you install necessary plug-ins or other augmentations to the employees' computers?
  - Are you prepared to help your trainees become efficient users of "on-the-desktop" training?
  - Can you control your trainees' use of the technology (web surfing)?
  - Is the necessary media (video, animations, etc.) too complex for an e-learning delivery?
  - Is there a confidentiality of content concern?
  - Does your organization have the basic technology in place?
  - Do you have the technical skills to quickly update material if necessary?

You can do a simple form of synchronous e-learning by using your company's intranet and a conference telephone call. Develop activities that can be pulled off the server, discuss via the conference call facility, and share information by exchanging files. You can divide your class into teams and even small groups in this approach, directing them to call each other, and then bringing them all back on one conference call later. This process will work asynchronously, too.

- Software you'll need for your e-learning programs:
  - Authoring: To create the content system
  - Graphics: To convert graphics to net formats
  - Server: Runs system
  - Middleware: Translates databases to a net format
- Levels of e-learning
  - Level 1: Communications: Done between trainer and trainee, possibly by e-mail or a chat room
  - Level 2: Reference: Online libraries of technical documentation, articles, and course catalogs

- Level 3: Assessment: Online needs assessment, surveys, or trainee testing
- Level 4: Distribution: Training modules that are available from a central server for downloading to remote computers then used as CBT
- Level 5: Delivery: Interactive real-time programming

Satellite-Based Training and Other Telephonic Formats

See Mantyla and Gividen's *Distance Learning* (1997) for an especially helpful discussion of this type of training.

- Be sure that you have a facilitator who knows or is willing to be taught on-camera training techniques.
- To add more interaction to your programs, plan to have SMEs available on the phone, but not as part of the broadcast, to answer trainee questions off camera. This works well for satellite-based programs, teleconferencing, and even synchronous computer-based classrooms. For satellite-based programs, another good idea is to have a way for the off-camera expert to signal the on-camera talent if there is a particularly relevant question so that it can be put on the air.
- By mounting a document camera to a laptop in a video teleconference, you can broadcast what is on the trainer's screen to the various training sites. It's not pretty, but it works, and it's cheap.
- If you have a few more dollars, you can buy software, for example, one called Timbuktu (www.netopia.com/software), that allows a trainer to access trainee computers remotely and even manipulate files on remote systems.

Chapter 5

Doing It Right: Development

This chapter will help you to:

- Discover the end products of development for various delivery systems
- Create effective facilitator guides and participant manuals
- Consider various trainee activities that can be developed
- Determine and create the right media for your training

With your training plan in hand, you should have chunks of content decided and placeholders for introductions, activities, summaries, tests, and so forth. Your next task is to create the development end products that match your chosen delivery system. This is the process in training design known as development. Continuing with our metaphor of building a house, this chapter is where you add the floors and doors, windows and walls.

END PRODUCTS OF DEVELOPMENT

The best way to think about the development aspect of training design is to look at it from the point of view of your end product. When you've completed the development, what should you have?

The specific answer to this question depends on what type of delivery system you have chosen, but in general you should end up with a sound piece of instruction. It's not finished yet; there is a lot of polish to be applied, but generally your end product should pretty much stand on its own as a training package—a package that helps your trainees to master the objectives you developed in the design aspect, which are in turn based on the needs and tasks determined in analysis and assessment. In other words, a package of effective training.

Classroom Training

If your delivery system is a classroom approach, you should have a viable facilitator guide developed in detail that reflects who is doing the teaching (yourself or others) and the trainee materials that will help the trainer to teach effectively. Often the print portion of this is termed a participant's guide, training manual, trainee's manual, or something of this ilk. (We'll call it a participant's manual.) Any media such as overheads, flip charts, PowerPoint presentations, videos, and so on should be pretty much ready to use by the end of development.

On-the-Job Training

If your delivery is OJT, the products are much the same. A trainer's guide (same thing as a facilitator guide, but developed for one-to-one teaching), a participant's manual (often called a trainee's package for OJT), and any other exhibits, job aids, or training items that the trainer and trainee will need to complete the training. Don't forget your performance checklists and other trainee evaluation instruments as well.

Self-Instruction

For a basic self-instructional delivery, you'll have the participant's package, which is generally the self-instructional program itself, a facilitator's guide, and once again the media that are to be used with the package.

Technology-Based Training

For your technology-based training delivery systems, you'll have many of the products we've just mentioned. Which ones will depend on whether your delivery mode is a self-instructional or a classroom-based approach. The main difference will be the amount of media that you've added.

For example, if you are using an asynchronous multimedia delivery, or what many people term e-learning, you'll have a script, storyboard, graphics, videos, animations, and the computer program itself, whether on a server or possibly a DVD. You may even have an old-fashioned paper-based participant's package to help get your trainees started or to perform other functions that you did not want to place on the technology.

On the other hand, if your technology delivery is synchronous e-learning or satellite-based classroom, you'll have a facilitator guide, participant's package, and once again, the software that will be used during the instruction, only this time all developed for your particular technology delivery.

What you can see is that at the basic level the products of development are not a whole lot different, no matter what delivery system you are using. You have something for the facilitator and something for the trainee and some media and other stuff that will support them both as they take part in the training process.

THE FACILITATOR GUIDE AS AN END PRODUCT

Now that you have basically determined what you need to end up with, the next question is how you go about producing it. Like everything else in instructional design, there are about as many ways as there are instructional designers. A lot depends on what materials you already have picked up as part of your content gathering and also on your own knowledge of the subject matter. Some instructional designers like to pull resources and sources of resources together from as many places as they can find, and then they pick and choose the best. Others prefer to develop specific training segments one at a time once they have a clear idea of what they need, finding and/or creating the training material for each segment separately as they go.

For this book, we'll use the development of a facilitator guide as a model for creating our development end products. Facilitator guides are normally associated with classroom instruction, but they are just as important for OJT, particularly if you'll have a number of OJT trainers using your material. In this situation you will want to create an OJT trainer's guide with plenty of trainer directions, objectives, key teaching points, activities to be performed, and possibly evaluations. To show you what we mean, here is an example of a page from this type of document.

SAMPLE FACILITATOR GUIDE

Objective	1. Utilize the computer system to perform the computer-mediated functions of the operations department
Directions	To help the trainees master this objective, first review any references indicated below. Consider providing the trainees with copies of the references if applicable. Next use the list of discussion points to guide your discussion with the trainees concerning the objective. Now demonstrate to the trainees how to perform the tasks related to this objective following the list of demonstration points. Allow the trainees time to practice the practice points. When the trainees feel they are ready, use the OJT Checklist to evaluate their mastery of the objective.

References	IBM systems documentation pp. 26–40
	Chi-text procedure manual Section 14–3
Discussion Points	What the computer system is used for at Chi-text
	What other departments use the system and how
	How the system works
	Novell vs. UNIX
	The importance of using the correct client number at all times
	What ARS is and how it interacts with the system
	What RIMS is and how it interacts with the system
Demonstration Points	Logging on
	Logging off
	Navigating through the system
	General input of data
	General extraction of data
Practice Points	Logging on
	Logging off
	System navigation
OJT Checklist	Can the trainee:
	☐ Discuss how the computer system affects the company in general
	☐ Compare the purpose and uses of Novell and UNIX
	☐ Describe how specific departments interface with the computer system
	☐ Log on to the computer correctly
	☐ Log off of the computer correctly
	☐ Navigate through the computer system efficiently
	☐ Compare the system specifics and interactions of ARS and RIMS
	☐ Input data into the system as needed for operations
	☐ Extract data from the system as needed for operations

Even if you are both the designer and the OJT trainer, using a document like this is not a bad idea. And who knows when someone else might need to use it?

A facilitator guide is also important for any type of technology-based training in which a facilitator is involved. This would include synchronous e-learning programs such as virtual classrooms, teleconference-based programs, and satellite-mediated programs.

Self-instructional programs do not actually require a formal facilitator guide, but before you develop scripts and storyboards, you'll need more than just an instructional plan; the techniques of developing a facilitator guide will help here, too.

How detailed your facilitator guide should be depends on what you are going to do with it. If it's for other facilitators, OJT trainers, or technology-based trainers, you'll want a lot of detail. On the other hand, if the delivery is going to be your responsibility and no one else's, or if you're simply fleshing out your instructional plan before writing a script, you might take your instructional plan, make notes on it where needed for activities and ideas, and quit.

We'll take the middle ground here and discuss how to create a basic facilitator guide that can be used by you or by other trainers and is complete enough to conform to most accrediting or certification processes, if necessary. As usual, use what you need for your own situation, but make an informed decision on what you are leaving out.

Facilitator Guide Formats

The first decision you need to make is what facilitator guide format to use. One of the most popular is the two-column format, with one side showing content and the other containing trainer notes, media to use, activities, references, and anything else that the trainer might use to put the content across. Some designers put the content on the left and the notes on the right; others do it the opposite. I've even seen facilitator guides that are so complete that the notes side contains reduced-size examples of the handouts, other trainee materials, and the overheads as well. This is rather simple to do with a computer, and I find it very useful when developing facilitator guides for other trainers, but it may be overkill for you. Following is an example of the two-column format.

Example of Two-Column Format

As the trainee gains proficiency performing the task in an "ideal" environment, on-the-job noise or normal environmental factors are added.	Introduce noise *gradually*.
Aid the trainee in integrating new subject matter.	Display OH 12.
Use positive reinforcement, i.e., praise the person, criticize the action.	Display OH 14.

There are many other facilitator guide formats. Two of the most popular are a three-column format with the columns labeled Time, Media/Activities, and Content and a four-column format with the columns labeled Objective, Content, Methods and Media, and Testing.

Example of Three-Column Format Lesson Plan

Lesson Plan: 221	*Program Title:* Instructional Design	*Revision:* 1
Number of Pages: 12	*Module Title:* Objectives	*Time*: 4 hours

Time	*Media/Activities*	*Content*
45 min	OH 17 PM pp. 23–25 Flip chart	Review page 23 and discuss example 1 Refer to task chart and audience analysis Ask: What do we want them to know? 30-minute small-group interaction on pulling knowledge from analysis
30 min	OH 18 Mager pp. 10–21 PM pp. 26–27	Discuss characteristics of good objectives Complete and discuss activity page 27
45 min	LUNCH	LUNCH
60 min	OH 19–22 PM 28–32 and addendum 1 Handout: Verbs	Discuss levels Read pp. 28–30 Discuss parts of objective Conditions Standards Verbs

Example of Four-Column Format

Objectives (The trainee will be able to …)	*Content (Expanded Outline)*	*Methods and Media (Graphics, questions, activities)*	*Testing (The objective will be met when …)*

Another facilitator guide format that I've come to like is what I call the "all in one." In this format, the facilitator notes and instructions, PowerPoint slides, and participant materials are all in one document. The facilitator can choose to hide or reveal any of theses pieces at any time, and print what is required.

This type of guide works wonderfully as well, if you are facilitating from a tablet instead of paper.

I'm not sure exactly how to do this, as some magical desktop publishers have created this type of facilitator package for me in the past, nor can I show you an example as a book doesn't do this approach justice, but I've used it in both the print and tablet versions and find it to be at least two steps above anything I've used before.

You can mix and match these formats, add new columns, or change the headings to suit your needs. The important point is to decide on a facilitator guide format that works for you and use it.

Pre-Class Activities

The first items you might want to put in your facilitator guide are the pre-activities. If you have them noted in your instructional plan, then you've made a decision that some content should be learned or at least reviewed before the trainees come to class. Now you need to decide how this is going to be accomplished.

Depending on the content, you may develop a pre-reading assignment with some questions to answer or questions without any reading, in which case the trainees will need to find the information on their own if they don't know it. You may give them some articles or references to look up, or put together the reading specifically for this class from your own or the subject-matter experts' knowledge. There may be a survey or psychological instrument you want them to take. You may have them talk to their supervisor or other company employees to gather specific information on some problem or situation. You might even develop or buy from an off-the-shelf vendor an entire self-instructional package for them to complete before class, possibly on a DVD, or an asynchronous e-learning package.

Trainee and Supervisor Pre-Activities

One of the most popular types of pre-activities links the trainees with their supervisors for some type of discussion or team-based task before coming to class. This can be as simple as an interview in which the trainee asks questions you have provided or as complex as an assessment tool that both of them take and discuss before class.

There are a lot of possibilities for how you can structure your pre-work. The important thing is to use a process that fits the content and that works best for your trainees. I've seen designers who have created a wonderful piece of pre-work with the supervisor and the trainee both engaged in some heavy-duty team building, only to find out later that many of the trainees work entire states away from their supervisors and almost never see them. If the designers had done a good trainee analysis, they would have known this and developed the

pre-work so it could be done over the phone, but . . . . Remember that we said in an earlier chapter that there are times you will need to redo or at least add to your analysis? When you are doing your development and find you don't have enough information to be sure a particular activity will work is one of those times.

Product

When you've finished with the development tasks for your pre-work ideas, you should have a complete training segment with both trainee materials and a piece of your facilitator guide that describes what the trainer is doing. Your facilitator guide portion should also give your trainers any supplementary information, such as answers to questions or how to hold a discussion around the key issues of a survey that might help them debrief the pre-work. And don't forget our rule that everything can change. Simply because you planned for some pre-work as part of your facilitator guide during your design process does not mean you must do it. Keep asking yourself if this is the right approach as you develop the pre-work (or any other part of your facilitator guide). Does this work best for the content? Can my trainees do it easily enough that they won't just ignore it? Most importantly: Will it help them to master the objectives? As long as you keep saying "yes" or at least, "I think so," you're doing fine.

Pre/Post Activities

If you are developing material for a multiple-day class, you might want to add activities to be done between classes. Some people call this "homework," but let's not use such a loaded term. One possible approach is to divide up the pre-reading by having the trainees do some before each day's session rather than all before the first class.

I like to create activities that require the trainees to meet in small groups at the end of the day, possibly to discuss the day's activities or to plan items for the next day's work. Pre/post activities are great reinforcers of learning, both as an effective review and in adding depth to the learning through outside activities.

One of my favorite pre/post activities is to ask the trainees to come up with their own examples of on-the-job problems or situations based on the day's discussions that we can try to solve in the next class. This not only makes a good summary, but for good discussion next time and some real job-related examples.

Another good pre/post activity when working with a topic that has electronic data applications is to have the trainees use the company intranet to find more information related to what was discussed in class that day or what will be discussed the next day. This only works if the trainees have personal computer access to the company net, that is, a laptop and modem, so be careful

how you use it. Do not require your trainees to go back to the office or to a computer center, or even to share computers during the evening to complete the assignment. I know from experience that the chances are they will not do it, and it really is too much of an extra burden.

The only caveat I have to pre/post activities is to remember that after a long day in class the trainees may not have a lot of energy left, so don't overburden them with homework. I've often heard people say, "Well, we've paid all this money to bring them here, and they have nothing else to do at the hotel, so why not give them more training in the evening?" If these are your reasons for creating pre/post work, then don't create it. Your activities should help the trainees master the objectives, not just fill time. Never forget that trainees are human, too. Just like you, they can only absorb so much in any given day.

One other thing I've learned about pre-work in general is that busy people tend to put things off until they have to be done. Sending the pre-work to participants three or four weeks in advance seldom gets them started early—and often means that they forget about it completely. I usually plan on my pre-work assignments reaching the participants about a week before the class. For those do-it-now folks this is plenty early enough, and for those who wait until the last minute, it already is.

Introduction

Next in your facilitator guide will probably be an introduction. Some of the purposes of an introduction include:

- Gaining the trainee's attention
- Establishing the trainee's mind-set
- Helping the trainee recall prior knowledge
- Describing the goals of the program
- Setting expectations for the program
- Establishing the relevance of the program
- Making the trainee comfortable

Titles, objectives, and directions are usual parts of an introduction, along with a summary of what the next section will include. Mastery levels, testing procedures, and where this particular piece fits into the whole of the training are all good discussion points for a main introduction, but usually not used within the training unless something very unusual is about to happen.

Use the introduction to tie what has previously been learned with the new learning that is about to occur, thus making the new material more relevant to the trainee.

You can also use it to provide a general overview of the topic about to be discussed, and thus help the trainee prepare for the discussion.

In a self-instructional design, the introduction can tell the trainees why they should (or should not) complete a particular module, or it may interest them in a topic they might not otherwise have followed. It can also set the tone for an e-learning course by providing an example of what the screens will look like, who the players (voices) are, and what they can expect to see and do. If you have not done it earlier, the introduction might discuss navigation and record-keeping processes as well in an e-learning design.

The key to introductions is to make them short and sweet. Nothing will turn off trainees faster than a long introduction to a topic that they want to get to quickly. Produce a page for the participant's manual that states the objectives, and produce another for trainee directions if your content or course plan requires it. Note in the facilitator guide how the trainer should use these pages.

If you decided that you needed a tie-in to previous material, you might want to draft a game or a series of review questions to be asked by the trainer. An approach for which the trainees break into groups and each group reports on a previous training aspect is another good possibility here. Don't forget to let the trainer know in the facilitator guide what the key learning points are that need to be reviewed. Even if you are going to be the trainer, and you are developing a bare-bones facilitator guide, a reminder here will help you when you're in front of the class and dealing with a dozen unrelated issues at the same time.

Overview

Your introduction will probably include an overview. For your overview you might want to create some overheads or slides with flow charts and other graphics, depending on what your delivery system will support, to help preview the training that is to occur. You might decide to use a video of a high-level manager discussing the importance of your program or simply saying, "Good morning, we're glad you're here" to add credibility to your program. (This is another reason why you had to make many of the delivery decisions earlier. While you're developing material is no time to be asking yourself whether your delivery system can support what you want to develop. You should have made the decision much earlier and know going into development what is and is not possible. Once again, a little up-front analysis can save you a lot of rework later.)

Whatever you need and do, be sure that your facilitator guide tells the trainer how you think he or she should work with the material. For example, if it is that high-level manager video, list which points the trainer should reinforce.

Icebreakers

(www.susan.boyd.com/training.htm)

Most well-structured facilitator guides include an icebreaker in the introduction as well. An icebreaker is an activity that helps warm the class up to the fact that they are going to be expected to participate in the training. Some icebreakers relate directly to the content being taught; others are more general in nature.

Icebreakers can be as simple as going around the room and asking everyone to introduce themselves (or each other), or as complicated as a full-scale role play in which each member of the class takes on certain characteristics that you are exploring in the content of your training. The type of icebreaker you develop depends in large part on your audience, your content, and your creativity (or someone else's creativity that you can borrow).

You'll usually want to develop an icebreaker of some type, unless there is a very good reason not to, such as you and the class have already been together in earlier sessions.

Breaking into teams is often a good icebreaker, particularly if you plan to use a lot of small-group instruction. Ask the teams to decide on a team name, color, song, anything to get them working together. Make it easy to assign a leader, scribe, or reporter by suggesting ideas such as the oldest member is the reporter, or the newest corporate member is the leader.

You could use a brainstorming process in which each team tries to come up with the most new terms that will be discussed today to bring the actual course content into your icebreaker. You might also ask for the most possible solutions to an issue that is going to be addressed in the training, such as how to make the plant safer or what will make computer software easier to learn.

One of my favorite introduction techniques in a multi-day class is to do a learning circle where the participants gather in small groups to discuss what they learned on the previous day, and then present their thoughts to the rest of the class either orally or on flip charts which can be used to keep a running tally of "things learned."

Here's a list of other icebreakers that are commonly used:

- Brainstorm a list of topics or terms related to the course for further clarification and discussion
- Personal stories
- Showing an unknown artifact or symbol to engender discussion
- Videos (often humorous and/or thought-provoking)
- Introductions (of oneself or a partner)
- Learn something previously not known about everyone on your team

- *Jeopardy*
- Who am I? (using personal, professional, or other characteristics to guess who each of your classmates is)
- Simple questions such as who comes from the farthest or lives the closest, who has been with the company longest and shortest
- Job-related questions such as: What are our biggest challenges? or What are we already really good at?
- Tell us five interesting things about your group.

The list goes on and on. Here is a short list of things to consider when choosing an icebreaker:

- How much time will it take?
- What's the possibility that it will turn some trainees off?
- What's the possibility that it will become confrontational?
- Is it novel?
- Will it be fun, or at least interesting?
- Will some information be produced from it that can be used later?
- Does it require active participation from trainees?
- Will it set the right tone for the program?
- Will it help energize the program and the trainees?
- Is there a possibility of failure for any trainee?
- Might it be embarrassing to some trainees?

Motivation

The final part of your facilitator guide introduction should be a section on motivation. Here we take some time in the facilitator guide to note to the trainees why they want to learn what is about to be taught and how it will help them personally.

The old radio station WII-FM or "What's in It for Me?" is always the key motivator. You might want to come up with a different way to describe this other than simply having the trainer list the WIIFM's, such as asking the trainees to discuss what they see as their personal WIIFM's or having video testimonials from previous participants.

Pre-Tests

If you have decided in your instructional plan that you need to put a pre-test in your facilitator guide, now is the time to develop it. Most often a pre-test is done in class, particularly if its purpose is to evaluate learning. However, there

are times when you might give a pre-test as part of the pre-work activities. Be sure you have placed the pre-test where you want it based on the purpose you have assigned to it.

If you followed our good instructional design practices from the previous chapter, you should already have a test bank of questions developed. For your pre-test you only need to choose the questions you think cover the purpose(s) you assigned to the pre-test, create the test, and put answers and directions in your facilitator guide for the trainer. Don't forget that a pre-test (or any test for that matter) is not worth the paper it is written on if feedback is not provided to the trainees. Leave room in your facilitator guide for it, and let your trainer know how to do it.

In self-instructional programs, a pre-test can also be used as a formal or informal "test out" of one or more of the modules. If a trainee scores high enough on the pre-test, he or she can skip that particular unit of instruction. This test-out process can be used in classroom training as well, although it is more unusual for that delivery method.

In some self-instructional programs, particularly those using computers, the pre-test can be a couple of questions that lead the trainee down one learning path or another. This "branching" process is one of the major advantages of computer-assisted learning, and if you are using computers as a delivery system you will want to consider it strongly, as it is a technique that helps make the time and cost involved in developing computer-based training worth the effort by reducing the learning time.

Handouts Versus Pass-Outs

Pre-tests bring up an interesting aspect of material development that I call the pass-out versus handout question. In classroom training particularly, but also in OJT, there are some pieces of trainee material that you do not want the trainees to see in advance. Pre-tests are a good example of this. So you probably do not want to put them in the participant's manual (or whatever you call it) that is normally handed out at the beginning of class or the start of an OJT program.

Items such as this become what I term pass-outs because they are passed out during the training (creative, huh?). The two issues with pass-outs are that (1) they need to be explained well in your facilitator guide so the trainer knows what they are and when to use them and (2) they are cumbersome. I've done classes where I've had an entire table full of pass-outs. Not only can this be confusing, but if you are taking your training on the road, instead of a nice simple participant's manual, you have a bunch of loose papers to worry about.

A good instructional designer keeps pass-outs to a minimum. This does not mean not to use them, but use them only when it really matters, such as for a

pre-test. Try to develop your material so as much of it as possible goes directly into the participant's manual as a handout. And when you use pass-outs, be sure your facilitator guide has them marked with directions as to how they are to be handled and why. This "why" is important, too. I've seen programs for which the trainer simply took the pass-outs and put them into the back of the participant's binder. He just didn't want to be bothered with distributing them during class—and so another good instructional technique goes down the drain.

Pass-outs are not as common in self-instructional programs or most of the high-technology delivery systems (with the exception of live satellite instruction), simply because there is usually no one available to pass things out. However, if you must have something such as a test passed out at a specific time, and not included as part of the participant's manual for your self-instructional or e-learning package, you need to figure out a way to do it. Usually, this involves the trainee going somewhere and receiving the pass-out from someone. The someone needs to know what to do and how. This is one of the things that goes into a facilitator's package for self-instruction, or a site facilitator's directions for deliveries such as satellite or synchronous e-learning.

Facilitator Guide Content (the Body)

OK, so your introduction, including an overview, icebreaker, motivation, and pre-test (if you decided to use one), has been developed. You've created some good trainee materials that you will place in the participant's manual, and you've added directions in the facilitator guide for everything, especially those items that are pass-outs. You should be about ready to get into the main area of your content, what some people call the "body" of your facilitator guide.

The main purpose of the body is to deliver the critical content that you identified through your content analysis. You might call this the facts and principles aspect. It includes how the processes work and how systems are structured and function together.

It is also used to create awareness of concepts and ideas, teach policies and procedures, guide trainees in their learning, and show good and bad examples of the learning in practice. It often is responsible for the development of problem-solving skills.

In your instructional plan, you made a first attempt at chunking the content and separating the chunks with ideas for activities or notes that you want an activity or something here and there. Development is where you complete the chunking, and where these activities become a reality.

Procedures

You might also have some notes and thoughts on pieces of content that you have gathered from other sources that you want the trainees to become familiar with. These "pieces" can be very significant to your training program, as they often describe how to perform procedures and can be real examples from the field. However, be careful that you don't rely on these "content pieces" too much and end up doing what might be called "procedure distribution" instead of training. I've seen a thousand so-called training programs for which training material consists of photocopies of procedures. They are put together in a trainee's package (I won't dignify it with the term "participant's package") or, worse yet, passed out one by one in class. The facilitator guide (if there is one) goes something like the following:

1. Tell trainees to read procedure
2. Go over procedure
3. Ask if there are any questions
4. Tell trainees to read next procedure
5. Wake trainee up as necessary

Obviously, the last entry is not usually found, but it might as well be. Training plans that consist of handing out mounds of procedures does not constitute training. Even if the trainer spends class time going over the procedures, it is not good training.

This is not to say that you should not use company procedures in training. Much of technical training is procedure-based. But as the instructional designer, it is your job to turn these masses of procedures into real training. Leave the less-important procedures for supplementary reading, design some pre-work for other procedures, develop job aids and summary pages for complicated procedures, and above all create better activities than simply "read and ask questions."

Having said this, using policies, procedures, annual reports, memos—and all sorts of what would not normally be thought of as training materials—as training materials is another rapid design hint. Anything that you do not have to create makes your material development faster, so look for these things in your company and in the public domain. (In today's terms, check the Internet.) You might find magazine articles, pamphlets, even pieces of television shows that you can incorporate rather than create. Just remember to choose well and to abide by copyright laws.

Activities

So I'll climb off my soapbox and move on to activities. The quality, and possibly the success, of your training program can be measured by the activities you develop for it. The thing to keep in mind with activities is that your job as an instructional designer is not just to create a course that presents information, but to create one that helps the trainees to learn—to master what they need to know and do. Anything less is really nothing more than the procedural "non-training" we discussed earlier.

The material you develop for your training should make it easy for trainees to interact with the content, and with one another. Think about how you can help them practice what they are learning or learn it in different ways. Look for activities during which they can apply their new knowledge and skills. Build in ways for them to go beyond your training, to become involved, to expand on what they now know. Finally, build in structure that they can use to internalize their learning and that will help them to recall the important aspects when they encounter new situations.

Here is a list of possible activities you may want to include in your facilitator guide. (Adapted from material contained in Langevin Learning Services' Langevin Instructional Designware software)

Anonymous Questioning. Trainees are asked to write their main questions on sheets of paper and pass them to the facilitator, who then reads the questions and may answer them or ask for responses from other trainees.

Behavior Modeling. A technique in which effective behaviors are shown to the trainees with an outline of how to repeat the behaviors step by step. The trainees try out and practice the behavior with guidance and feedback. Used commonly in interpersonal skills and communication training.

Brainstorming. An idea-generation process in which a spontaneous nonjudgmental flow of suggestions is facilitated. Later the ideas are explored in detail and their usefulness evaluated.

Case Study. A written, oral, or video account of a situation given to trainees. Either individually or in groups, the trainees are asked to analyze the case and present recommendations.

Colloquy. A modification of a panel in which half the group are trainees and the other half experts. The trainees ask questions, raise issues, and make comments for the experts to respond to.

Committee. The creation of a number of smaller groups from a large group of trainees, each of which is responsible for solving a particular aspect of a

general problem. Through reports and feedback the general problem moves toward solution.

Critical Incident. A variation of the case study in which trainees are given incomplete data. By analyzing the case and asking the right questions, they are given additional data needed to solve the case.

Critique. Trainees are asked to analyze the strengths and weaknesses of a particular process and to make suggestions for improvements.

Debate. Two teams defend opposite sides of an issue. The purpose is to explore all aspects of an issue and not necessarily to win.

Demonstration. Trainees observe the performance of a task or procedure as conducted by an expert, either live or on tape.

Dialogue. Two individuals hold a conversation while the trainees observe. The conversation may present opposing views of a situation or simply be an exploration.

Discussion. An exchange of ideas between the facilitator and the trainees. It can be totally unstructured and spontaneous, but usually requires some structure to achieve a content-related purpose.

Drill. Repetitive practice designed to increase efficiency, improve the quality of performance, or aid retention.

Fishbowl. A large group is divided into two smaller groups with one group discussing or role playing an issue while the other observes and then offers feedback.

Forum. Trainees discuss and ask questions about a presented topic. They may ask questions of the speaker or discuss the topic among themselves.

Game. A structured exercise in which competition or cooperation (or both) are used to practice principles or learn new ones.

Instruments. Questionnaires, checklists, or other forms filled out by trainees concerning themselves or others, usually to gain insight about themselves or a topic.

Interview. Trainees question a resource person to add to content knowledge or develop new approaches.

In-Baskets. Prepared items that are given to the trainees as if arriving in their in-baskets. Trainees must prioritize, make decisions, handle any difficulties, respond to time deadlines and pressure, and so forth, in order to complete the work.

Job Aids. Items given trainees to assist them in doing their jobs. They might include worksheets, checklists, samples, flow charts, procedural guides, glossaries, diagrams, decision tables, manuals, and other items. Training is often needed to help the workers employ the job aids.

Laboratory. A training area set up to allow experimentation, testing, and hands-on experience by trainees. The processes occurring here may be extremely structured, totally unstructured, or anything in between, depending on the content.

Lecture. A prepared oral presentation by a qualified speaker.

Lecturette. A brief lecture, usually designed to cover a single aspect of a topic and lead into a discussion, game, or some other activity.

Listening Team. Groups of trainees assigned to listen to a presentation, take notes, prepare questions, and then summarize a session. Each group is asked to focus on a different aspect of the presentation and report observations and conclusions.

Mental Imagery. Allowing the trainee to relax and imagine doing the process that has been discussed. Also useful for quick stress breaks or as a transition when changing subjects.

Mini-Case. A case study in which the situation is described briefly to the trainees, who discuss how it might be handled. Often only one or two key facts are given, and usually the discussion is brief. Used to give examples of situations and procedures.

Missing Panel. A vacant chair that trainees can temporarily take to participate briefly in the panel discussion.

One-on-One Discussion. A method in which the trainees are asked to speak to the person beside them for a few minutes to discuss an issue, answer a question, or generate questions to ask.

Panel. A discussion among a group of experts that takes place while trainees observe.

Practice Exercises. Trainees are asked to practice performing a task.

Question and Answer. The facilitator covers content by asking a series of questions. Can be reversed and have the trainees generate the answers to the questions.

Quiz. A practice activity of completing the answers to oral or written questions. Often used as a summary activity.

Reading. Materials assigned for trainees to read that cover course content or otherwise prepare them for further activities.

Reflection. Trainees are given time for singular thought to consider what has been learned and its applicability in their work settings.

Role Play. Trainees enact a situation in order to try out new skills or apply what has been learned. Role plays might include:

- *Confrontation*: In which a trainee is confronted by another person and must handle problems or provide satisfaction.
- *Court Techniques*: In which a situation or person is "tried" as trainees work out the consequences of a mishandled task.
- *Monologue*: In which there is only one role and the player gives it while trainees observe.
- *Triads*: In which three trainees take on the roles of two individuals and an observer, often rotating roles.
- *Role Reversal*: In which the players assume the roles of others whom they normally interact with on the job.
- *Simulation*: A training environment set up to allow the trainees to practice a task under conditions as close to those on the job as possible.
- *Skit*: A short, dramatic presentation that is carefully prepared and rehearsed to illustrate principles or provide material for analysis and discussion.

Remember that activities need to be an integrated part of your training—something that assists in the training, not something that you design in because it is "neat" or you saw someone else use it and you liked it, or simply because you think you need an activity. Use some of the things you have already determined to help you choose activities, such as:

- Who is the target audience? What are their expectations and preferences? What did your audience analysis say would interest and motivate them?
- What type of learning is required for your material? You determined this when you wrote your objectives by picking certain verbs. Use this knowledge to choose pertinent activities. Is the learning complex? Is it mostly knowledge? Does it require performances? Each of these suggests different activities.
- If you are using a technology delivery system, particularly in a self-instructional mode, you want to think interactivity. What activities can you include that allow the trainees to respond to the material being presented, to become part of the process, and not just observers? How can these activities be designed to give the trainees feedback? This is a

much more complicated process than using activities in an instructor-led approach and also more expensive, as good e-learning activities require a lot more development and often more programming time.

However, interactivity is the key to good self-instruction. Ignore it at the peril of turning your trainees off, if not actually putting them to sleep as they use your training package. If you are buying self-instructional programs from vendors or having them custom made for you, interactivity is what to ask for—and plenty of it.

Games

Instructional games are a specialized activity that can motivate and spark trainee interest. They can also de-motivate and make the entire class a somewhat substantial bore (*Games Trainers Play* by John Newstrom, 1980). And both of these can happen in the same classroom at the same time, depending on each person's perspective. Games can challenge the trainees to think beyond the box, but if the challenge is too great they can frustrate them as well. Too many rules or games that are too complex can make the learning of the game not worth the result in content learning or application that you wanted to achieve.

There are actually two main categories of games, those that present new information, and those that summarize.

Games can convey a variety of information such as concepts, principles, system dynamics, problem solving, and even social skills. They can also have no connection whatsoever to the content or the objectives. The key, as usual, is to make sure that the game is directly related to your objectives, that it instructs while entertaining, and that it gives those who grasp its purpose and content easily a chance for further learning.

A good example of a very simple instructional game is the old fashioned spelling bee. Think of all the good points and bad points of any spelling bee that you participated in back in grade school, and you'll have a pretty good idea of the advantages and problems of most instructional games.

Choose your games so they maintain the interest of all your trainees while both presenting and developing the knowledge your objectives indicate must be mastered.

You can use games as an activity almost anywhere in your facilitator guide, although they are really great review and summary tools. But use them sparingly, particularly the complicated ones, as they can often detract from the message simply by their complexity.

There is also a good argument going on in instructional design circles over whether games should be competitive or not. My recommendation is one

I've given you before: know your audience. Highly competitive people, for example, actually do not do well with competitive games, as the competition becomes more important to them than the learning; and of course people who are not competitive won't like being forced into competitive situations. You can deal with these individual differences by having strong introductions and debriefings on either side of the game, but you need to be careful in your choices. The trainer also needs to monitor the game to keep things from getting out of hand. This is actually not part of this book's content as it is a trainer skill, but the smart instructional designer will add to the facilitator guide notes about what to watch for as the trainer closely monitors this particular activity.

Here are some things to consider when choosing games:

- What purpose do you hope to achieve?
- Does the game's focus relate to one (or more) of your objectives?
- Is the group the right size for the game?
- Do all trainees have the right experience and background to play the game effectively?
- Is the purpose of the game to introduce new material, demonstrate a concept, or reinforce learning?
- Is the game simple to play?
- Are the directions complete?
- Will the game be fun?
- Do you have the time to both play and debrief?
- Are there better ways to do what you think the game will do?

Here is a list of some of the more popular types of instructional games adapted from the work of Sivasailam "Thiagi" Thiagarajan. You can find more of Thiagi's ideas in the Thiagi *GameLetter*. Note that some of these game processes are actually game templates, and as such can be rapid design techniques. We've marked those with our rapid hints icon.

Action Learning. A combination of action and reflection by a team to solve complex, strategic problems in real-world organizations. Existing skills and knowledge are applied, and new skills, knowledge, and insight are created through continuous reflection and questioning.

Board Games. Modeled after games such as Monopoly, Chutes and Ladders, and so on, board games use game cards and dice to encourage individuals and teams to demonstrate mastery of concepts, principles, skills, and problem-solving strategies.

Card Games. These games involve facts, concepts, technical terms, definitions, principles, examples, quotations, and questions printed on cards. Good for classifying and sequencing pieces of information.

Case Studies. Usually a written (sometimes video) account of a real or fictional situation surrounding a problem. Participants work individually or in teams to analyze, discuss, and recommend appropriate solutions and to critique one another's work.

Cash Games. These games use cash transactions for the development of interpersonal skills.

Computer Game Shells. Games that permit the loading of new content (usually questions) by the facilitator during the game.

Experience-Based Learning. Physical activities and challenges such as rafting, rock climbing, walking on rope bridges, and so on, in regulated outdoor environments, used to build team reliance and self-reliance as well.

Framegames. Game templates that allow content to be replaced to create new games.

Interactive Storytelling. Fictional narratives in which participants listen to a story and make appropriate decisions at critical junctures.

Kinesthetic Learning Devices. Physical activities performed on electrical and mechanical equipment specially developed for a particular challenge or to make a specialized point. The best of these are often directly related to the workplace.

Magic Tricks. Tricks that can be used to provide metaphors or analogies for some important element of the content.

Metaphorical Simulation Games. These simulations provide a simplistic abstract view of real-world processes. They are good for teaching principles related to planning, generating ideas, testing alternatives, making decisions, utilizing resources, and working under time pressure.

Puzzles. These can be used to preview, review, or test content for individuals or groups.

Read.me Games. Participants read a handout and play a game that uses team support to encourage recall and transfer of what they read.

Role Plays. Participants act out characters, personalities, and attitudes other than their own. Often used to reverse roles in supervisory training.

Television Games. Structured like popular game shows, they are used to present content and to drill on concepts and terminology.

Thought Experiments. Participants mentally rehearse new patterns of behavior by placing themselves in unique mental situations, such as holding a discussion with George Washington to find out how he would solve a problem or interviewing one's self. Through this process, new knowledge and insight are often gained.

Video Replay Games. Participants watch a videotape that presents content through a game situation, then replay the game live to apply the new concepts and skills.

Internal Summaries

In your instructional plan, you noted places where summaries of the presented material might be included. The most usual summary activity is simply to have the trainer repeat the important points covered in the just-completed segment, perhaps with a slide to reinforce the points. This is also the most boring way to summarize a piece of content. That's not to say you should not use this approach from time to time, but just don't make a habit of it.

To make your internal summaries more interesting, and possibly more interactive, develop questions that the trainer can ask that will allow the trainees to review the main points, or put a series of questions in the participant's manual that the trainees will answer individually and then discuss as a group. You can have the trainees summarize the main points as they saw them, with the trainer adding comments where necessary. You can even make a game of it with small groups vying to find all the main points of a particular piece of content and assigning points for the most complete summaries (although you'd better watch that competition thing).

You might have the learners do a one-minute paper on what they have learned so far, or a list of concepts they understand and those they find confusing.

One of my favorite summary activities in a multi-day class is to have groups of learners come before the class and summarize what happened the day before. The groups are judged on thoroughness and creativity, and a prize is given at the end for the best "morning summary."

Quizzes make good summaries at times, as do some of the simpler games. Videos can be used to summarize as well. Basically, any activity from the list

we've already seen can be turned into a summary. The key is to find a variety of ways to achieve this important aspect, and don't forget that all summary items need to relate directly back to your objectives.

Imbedded Questions

The concept of summaries brings up another aspect of the facilitator guide, which is questioning. There are a lot of rules and theory that relate to constructing good questions for use in a class or self-instructional program (*Test Construction for Training Evaluation* by Charles Denova, 1979). They deal with concepts such as open-ended and closed-ended questions, questioning techniques, and a number of other issues. Basically, imbedded questions, that is, questions that are found randomly throughout the program rather than in specific groupings, are a good idea. They are interactive, create new thinking processes, and can really drive home specific points.

Add imbedded questions where you can, but remember that as the instructional designer it is your job to add them, not the trainer's. Particularly if you have multiple trainers, your imbedded questions will be a key in maintaining consistency. You also do not want the trainers to be thinking up too many of their own questions, as this can easily get the class off track. Imbedded questions should be there in your facilitator guide, with well-explained answers for the trainer to use during the discussion.

Post-Class Activities

Post-class activities are done after the training has been completed, but they are yet another area of training that you need to develop now. Their purpose is to help the employees transfer their newly won knowledge and skills to the job, to reinforce those skills and knowledge, and, in the best-developed activities, to evaluate the success of the training by considering what the trainee is actually using on the job, that is, how his or her job performance has changed and, we hope, improved. This goes way back to our analysis of performance gaps and the fact that in many cases the purpose of training is to close them. We won't deal with the evaluative aspect of follow-up activities yet, as we will discuss it in the chapter on evaluation.

Good follow-up activities can also help your trainees to retain what they've learned through review and practice and even motivate them to learn more through enrichment activities.

Tried-and-true follow-up activities include contracts, diaries, letters to oneself, and action plans. The best follow-up activities involve the trainee's supervisor to one extent or another. This might include some of the ideas we discussed for pre-activities. Giving the supervisor a role in the activities mentioned earlier and below is good way to involve the person.

Some possible follow-up activities include:

- Personal action plans
- Group action plans
- Phased action plans that occur between days of training
- Developing personal performance aids
- Training others (colleagues, supervisor) on what the trainee has learned
- Contract with trainer, supervisor, or others
- Follow-up tests
- Follow-up questionnaires
- Return reports to trainer on how information was implemented
- Follow-up phone calls or e-mail to trainer
- Postcards that are written and addressed in class than sent back by instructor
- Assigning parking lot questions or concepts to be researched by learners and information sent back to all or posted on an electronic bulletin board
- Experiential log books are one of my favorite post-class activities, particularly for a class that has multiple meetings over an extended period of time, or for asynchronous e-learning classes. This allows the learners to keep track of performances they do on the job that are related to the class content.

Supplies List

One of the items in your facilitator guide that is more logistical in nature is a supply list. This list identifies for the trainer everything he or she will need to run the class. It should be very complete, with all media, special tools, or instruments, hardware and software, and any other items needed to facilitate the training and, if necessary, notations on where to obtain these things. Keep in mind that if the trainers do not have the proper materials and supplies at hand when they start the class, they won't use them, so all your wonderful activities that are dependent on them will be for naught.

Following is an example of a supply list:

Supply List for SS 100: Principles of Supervision

Training Materials

Leader's Guide (Rev. 2, 74 pp)

Overhead Transparencies (1–63)

Participant's Package:

- Unit 1 (Rev 1, 18 pp)
- Unit 2 (Rev 0, 23 pp)
- Unit 3 (Rev 2, 40 pp)
- Unit 4 (Rev 0, 19 pp)

Pre-reading package (Rev 1, 22 pp)

"I Prefer" survey

"Supervisory Styles" instrument and scoring sheets

Pass-outs:

- Performance Management Action Plan (3 per participant)
- Meetings Checklist
- Interviewing Guide
- Employee Development Case Study

Video: "Meetings, Bloody Meetings"

Video: "Influencing Others"

Video: "Man Hunt"

Equipment

- Overhead Projector
- Overhead Transparency Markers
- Flip charts (4) and markers
- VCR and monitor
- #2 pencils for scan form

Nice to Know Versus Need to Know

One problem with developing facilitator guides, and particularly activities, relates to content. It is very easy when using activities to move away from the "need to know" content and into the "nice to know." A little of this is not a bad thing, but often the entire class becomes sidetracked by some of the less important issues that the activities brings up. Help your trainer by adding thoughts on how far to go with these aspects, and what to watch out for, into your facilitator guide.

The whole concept of nice to know versus need to know is actually a rapid design shortcut. If you're looking for a way to cut back on material development time, make sure that you have stripped the training to truly what

the trainees must know. To use an old adage: "When in doubt, throw it out." This will get you to the leanest possible content, which you will be able to develop and implement more rapidly.

Facilitator Guide Reviews

That brings up one final thought on facilitator guides. Just as for objectives and many other aspects we've yet to discuss, have someone do a review of your facilitator guide if at all possible. Tell the person what you are looking for in the review, as we discussed earlier. It might be chunks, activities, structure, sequencing, number of summaries, or all of the above. Give the person a list of what you need, and let a fresh set of eyes take a look before you proceed with material development. It will make your facilitator guide better—and possibly save you a lot of time and revisions later.

Following is a facilitator guide development job aid that will help you as you think through your facilitator guide.

FACILITATOR GUIDE DEVELOPMENT JOB AID

1. What is the topic:

2. Who is the audience:

3. How many participants:

4. Location of program:

5. Who/what are my possible resources:

6. What are the topics to be covered:

7. Program objective:

8. Supporting objectives: At the end of this program the trainees will be able to.

9. Icebreaker: "How am I going to capture the audience's attention?

10. Motivation: "How am I going to create a desire in the trainees to listen and learn?

11. Review/Overview: "How will I review the previous lesson and give an overview of the next lesson?

12. Learning activities: "What activities can I use to involve the trainees?

13. Media requirements: How can I visually enhance the presentation? What handouts and pictures will help me make my points?

14. Summary: How will the main points of the presentation be restated?

15. Questions and answers: What types of question and answer processes will I use to make sure the trainees understand the material?"

16. Trainee evaluation: How will measurement of trainee mastery be determined?

17. Follow-up: What post-course activities can be useful in ensuring transfer to the job and/or retention?

Notes:

One last comment concerning facilitator guides. With all the things you need to remember, it's easy to forget the simplest ones, such as page numbers, slide numbers, and answer keys to both questions and activities. Your facilitators will need these to help keep them straight so develop them into your package.

SCRIPTS AND STORYBOARDS

As we've already mentioned, if you are going to use a self-directed delivery such as a DVD or asynchronous e-learning, you'll need to develop a script and storyboard instead of a facilitator guide. Actually, what you really need to do is take the facilitator guide and add in all the articles, prepositions, and other grammatical processes that make it read like a narrative. Here are some thoughts on developing scripts:

Script Hints

- Keep your sentences short.
- Use repetition.

- Remember to write for your audience, not yourself.
- Write as you speak.
- Scripts must be short, and script pieces even shorter.
- Three items of information in each script piece is a good rule of thumb.
- Stay on message.
- Write when the time is best for you.
- Do openings and closings and even transitions last.
- Plan for at least three drafts of anything.
- Listen to your reviewers.
- Use charts, graphs, bullet points, etc. as much as possible.
- Define all technical terms (use hot links).

A storyboard is simply a script with your ideas for the graphics that go with the words added to it. These ideas may be anything from words themselves, to stick figures to full-blown illustrations if you have that kind of talent. Depending on your delivery system, some of the items you might find on a storyboard include:

- Text or audio script
- Graphics
- Description of interactivity
- Sketches of visuals
- Branching instructions
- Programming notes

Here are some examples of the whole thing put together.

SIMPLE TWO-COLUMN STORYBOARD

Text	*Graphic File*
Lesson 3: Objectives Objective: Create proper learner centered objectives	Stock
Reading Read pages 84–98 in your text on Objectives.	84–98

Text	*Graphic File*
Exercise Answer the following questions based on your reading. We will discuss them in class. 1. What is the most important purpose of objectives? 2. What are the main parts of a well-written objective? 3. What are the two words that should never be used as behaviors for objectives, and why?	
Activity For each objective on the next screen determine and record its behavior(B), standard (S), and condition (C). The correct answers will be discussed in class.	Bright Side "Mod 1 Job Analysis Form.doc"
Activity For each of the objectives on the next screen state which part or parts of a well-written objective are missing. (Assume that "At the end of … " and "the employee will be able to . . . . are understood). The correct answers will be discussed in class.	Dim side "Mod 1 Job Analysis Form.doc"
Activity For each of the objectives on the next screen determine if it is a well-written objective. If not, rewrite it. (Assume that "At the end of … " and "the employee will be able to . . . . are understood). The correct answers will be discussed in class.	Sample Objectives "Mod 1 Job Analysis Form.doc"

THREE-COLUMN STORYBOARD FOR TECHNOLOGY-BASED PROGRAM

The Six Components of a PDB Storyboard

Module 3: Activity and Summary

Objectives:

1. Obtain hands-on experience with the activity of creating a process map using a familiar activity
2. Examine the six components of a Performance-Driven Business
3. Review key points

Screen	*Content*	*Visuals*
1	To complete this program, we've included an activity and a "do it yourself" summary for you to work on	PDB Logo
2	Activity: Create a Process Map for Baking a Cake: List the major activities (at least five) involved in baking a cake on your "Notes" page. Click here to check your list. Select one of the major activities and break it down into steps that must be executed to complete the activity. Next, map them on your "Notes" page as a sub-process of baking a cake. Include at least two decision diamonds for checking the quality of outputs from one activity as an input to the next activity. Be sure to include the proper symbols for beginning, ending, activities and decisions. Check that your arrows flow in the correct direction. When you've finished your process map, find two places where there could be interrupts in the process and two kinds of errors that could cause sub-standard outputs (cakes).	Stock graphic of cake At click, over cake graphic Major Activities for Baking a Cake Pre-heating the oven Selecting a recipe Gathering ingredients Baking Frosting the cake
	After you've finished the previous activities click here for a cake-baking example process map. Think about the remaining components of a performance-driven business by considering the implications of measurements/metrics, roles/responsibilities, training, communication, and tools/technology to your cake-baking process.	On click go to "Prepare Birthday Dinner for Eight" graphic from classroom participant guide. (3 graphics)

TEMPLATE FOR A FOUR-COLUMN STORYBOARD

Objectives (The trainee will be able to …)	*Content (Expanded Outline)*	*Methods and Media (Graphics, Questions, Activities)*	*Testing (The objective will be met when …)*

FIVE WINDOW E-LEARNING STORYBOARD

PDS Storyboard Format

Project: Fishing File Name: Introduction

Screen ID: Intro 2 Last Date Saved:

Graphics	*Text*	
Stock Fish from one	In order to catch a fish you must think like a fish	
Action	*Notes*	*Sound*
Button to tutorial Fish to Main Menu	Tutorial should begin with file point A.1	Splashing Water (.wav)

PARTICIPANT PACKAGES AND OTHER PRINT MATERIALS

By now you should have collected or created many different types of print materials that you can possibly use in your training. They may include fill-in-the-blank and other questions, directions for various activities and games, summary sheets, readings, graphics, diagrams to be referred to, and all kinds of other stuff. You'll have introductory directions, objectives, quizzes, and other activity-based material that you developed concurrently with the facilitator guide. These items will make up the bulk of your participant's manual, trainee's guide, or whatever you have decided to call your main handouts.

Basically, you'll need to gather all these pieces, relate them to your facilitator guide or whatever you are using as your guide for material development, add whatever might be missing and subtract the superfluous, and then have it all nicely and consistently formatted.

One word of caution here: too many developers take the easy way out by simply putting copies of their overheads together and calling it a participant's manual. This can make for a nice fat package if you have lots of overheads, but

a pretty poor training experience. The trainees will pay attention not to what the trainer says, but to the print overheads. They will also spend much of their time looking ahead or looking for overheads that may be missing, rather than listening and interacting.

If you want to use print copies of your overheads to great advantage, put them in your participant's manual with pieces missing so that the trainees will need to listen closely in order to complete them. Not too much missing, but just blanks to fill in. This process also makes another great summary activity.

Here is a list of the most common items you might include in your participant's manual:

- Pre-work assignments (if the trainees will receive their manual before class)
- Objectives
- Introductions
- Reading materials
- Instruments
- Worksheets for skill practice or role plays
- Feedback forms
- Case studies
- Directions for activities
- Gaming materials
- Job aids
- Quizzes
- Reference materials
- Bibliography
- Glossary
- Evaluations
- Supplemental materials for enrichment, such as magazine articles, related corporate policies or marketing materials, and technical articles or information

When all the parts have been collected, you will need to decide on a format for your participant's manual. There are as many ways to format a manual as there are to format facilitator guides, probably more. Some developers like a two-column format with room on one side or the other for notes; others put the objective each page is related to at the top of the page. Some use icons such as those you've seen in this book to note various aspects of the participant's manual; others like to put in graphics, such as line drawings or cartoons, throughout the manual.

Participant's manual formatting is one of those places where the instructional designer is allowed to stretch his or her creativity a little. There are no hard-and-fast rules, and I've seen many wonderful formats that combine artistry and usability to perfection. I've also seen some where the art gets in the way of ease of use, which is the main thing you need to guard against. The purpose of the participant's manual is to assist your trainees in their learning. Be sure that whatever formatting decisions you make keep this in mind. Don't create a pretty package for the sake of being pretty. It's usually time-consuming, always costly, and—unless it helps the learning—time wasted. There are some good hints at the end of the chapter that can help you create a great participant's manual.

Whatever your format, be sure your participant manual includes a title page, table of contents, and edition information.

Also, be sure to be consistent in your formatting, particularly in headings. The headings guide the learner so decide on a template and stay with it. For example:

Heading 1	16 pt Bold
Heading 2	14 pt Bold
Heading 3	Same as body of text but bold
Heading 4	Same as body of text but italic

Finally, get your participant's manual formatted and printed out by someone who knows good desktop publishing practice. Don't forget that this is your trainees' primary learning tool. Make it as easy to use as possible, with tables of contents, tabs, subtabs, page numbers, and anything else that will aid in their finding the things that are in it. Good desktop publishers know these tricks and more.

Also, remember that the participant's manual—more than anything else—will represent your training to others. Your trainees will show it to their colleagues and managers, and you will display it when someone asks you about your course. So make sure it looks good!

If you are using a self-instructional technology delivery, the chances are you will not be getting most of your participant's manual printed, but it is still there. It is made up of your screens, web pages, and whatever else you develop for your trainees to enhance their learning. Everything we've just discussed, up to the actual printing, is just as important for this type of delivery. Be sure you include all the "good stuff" you have found or created. Choose formatting that facilitates learning, not simply impresses. Don't forget the importance of seeing objectives, introductions, summaries, and all the other things that would appear in a print participant's manual. You may actually want to print some of these as a downloadable hard-copy document to make it easier for your learners to refer to. Aspects such as the objectives, instructions for accessing the program, and

self-quizzes are often printed out. Once again, there are plenty of good ideas to help you in the hints section at the end of this chapter.

The following short checklist can help you develop good print materials.

CHECKLIST FOR DEVELOPING PRINT MATERIAL

- ☐ Leave plenty of white space (25 percent/page is not too much)
- ☐ Leave space between blocks of content
- ☐ Leave space between headings and text
- ☐ Only 1 or 2 fonts
- ☐ Justify left margin
- ☐ Use running headers or footers with page, unit, course, and revision numbers and course title
- ☐ Use simple sentences
- ☐ Be sure that the reference for each pronoun is easily understood
- ☐ Use illustrations instead of words
- ☐ Have a table of contents
- ☐ Use a new right-hand page for each major subtopic
- ☐ Number the pages
- ☐ Leave wide margins
- ☐ Use "I" and "you"
- ☐ Use the active voice
- ☐ Explain why not to do something; don't just say "don't do it"
- ☐ Use 10-point to 14-point type
- ☐ Use short sentences with ten to fifteen words
- ☐ Make paragraphs short, with only three to four sentences
- ☐ Beware of
  - ☐ Stereotypes
  - ☐ Too much repetition
  - ☐ Technical jargon (without definition)
  - ☐ Acronyms (without explanation)
- ☐ Check readability
- ☐ Edit, edit, edit

A good copy editor can help you write scripts, develop storylines, content threads, narratives around case studies, scenarios, and most anything that requires writing. If you don't have one on staff, see who you can find to work on a project basis. These folks are neither desktop publishers nor editors, but can provide great writing help.

OTHER MEDIA

Beyond print material, there are a number of other types of instructional aids or what are often referred to as media that you might develop for your course. Some of the more popular are flip charts, wall charts, overheads (or the newer PowerPoint presentations), slides (also being replaced by computer graphic presentation media such as PowerPoint), video, audio—the list goes on and on. Of course, if you are using a media-based delivery system, such as DVD or e-learning, your media is an integral part of your content.

The key thing to remember about media is that it is a reductive, not a replacement process. This means that it can reduce learning time, but it should not be used as a replacement for hands on or interaction based activities.

Here is another example of a job aid for helping you to think about the best media to use for various purposes.

SAMPLE OF A JOB AID FOR SELECTING MEDIA

Media Type	*Handouts*	*Board*	*Flip Chart*	*Overhead*	*Power Point*	*Video*
Uses						
Explain/Clarify	1	2	2	1	1	1
Basis for Discussion	2	3	2	2	2	1
Organize Discussion	1	2	1	2	2	3
Summarize	1	3	3	2	2	2
Education	1	1	1	1	3	1
Size of Audience						
Small	1	2	2	1	3	2
Large	1	3	3	1	1	2

1 = Most desirable 2 = Alternative 3 = Least desirable

If you want to use posters but the room is too big for all learners to see them, create flip-chart size ones as well that groups can take back to their seats to look at while you are discussing the full-size one.

There are entire books written on each media format, so we are not going to go into how to produce them or how to use them effectively here. We have included a number of thoughts on some of the more popular formats in the hints section at the end of this chapter. Use them and the references as needed.

As you complete your material development, you will probably want to create a list of all the media, training materials, and so on, that you've developed for your facilitators to refer to. This is basically an enlargement of your supplies list, focusing specifically on the media aspects and giving much more detail on them. Here is an example of this type of reference. It should become a normal part of each facilitator guide you create.

COURSE MATERIALS REFERENCE LIST

Course: Managing Change *Revision Number: 1*

Material Number	*Type*	*Description*
1	Flip chart	3 steps of subtask 3.1.2
P1–2	Manual	Written role play
P3–5	Manual	Observer sheets
P6	Manual	3-step communication plan
1	OH	Course objectives
2	OH	Key steps to planning
3	OH	Change communication model
1	Video	Communicating change video role play 1

To summarize our discussion of material development, here is a checklist that you can use to review your (or other designers') facilitator guides and make sure they are complete.

ISD QUALITY REVIEW

Introduction

Purpose

This document can be used to evaluate both vendor and in-house programs to ensure that, before a program is ready to pilot, it adheres to standards of good instructional design.

General

Standards and Structure

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ **Structure** Is there a topic outline? If so, is it evident in the instructional materials (e.g., Facilitator's Guide and Participant Guide for ILT and on a screen for e-learning)? If not, note and return to the designer to make any necessary changes.	
☐ **Structure** Is the topic outline and its sequence followed throughout the program?	
☐ **Timing** Are suggested times for activities specified consistently in the instructional material? Do times add up correctly?	
☐ **Approach** Do the activities and instructional approaches maximize learner interaction and retention?	
☐ **Approach** Do the activities and instructional approaches adhere to the approved design?	

Instructional Design Review

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ **Objectives**	
☐ Are the prescribed objectives provided (LG, PG, first and last slides, or screens for e-learning)?	
☐ Are the objectives worded according to the correct performance in Bloom's taxonomy?	
☐ Is there evident objective-content match?	

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ **Pre-Tests, Post-Tests, and Self-Assessment Questions**	
☐ Do test items match the content and objectives, and are they representative of the content?	
☐ Are test items sound and well-constructed?	
☐ Is feedback (if provided) constructive, so that it aids in learning?	
☐ **Interactivity**	
☐ Is the content periodically in question form to engage the learners?	
☐ Do the materials provide regular opportunities for the learners to apply what they are learning in a meaningful way?	
☐ Are there an appropriate number of activities (games, problems, role plays, cases, or exercises)?	
☐ **Adult Learning Principles**	
☐ Are learners encouraged to draw on prior knowledge, skills, and/or experience?	
☐ Are there opportunities for learners to learn directly from their mistakes in a safe and supportive environment?	
☐ Can the learners discover things for themselves, receiving guidance and help when mistakes are made?	
☐ Is the focus on practicing critical job-related tasks, instead of less important content?	
☐ Does the course concentrate on skills and information that will advance learners professionally, avoiding "nice to know" or non-essential content?	
☐ Does the course have immediate, relevant, practical, and application-based outcomes for learners?*	

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ **Flow**	
☐ Does the content align with the learning objectives sequence?	
☐ Do the materials include a reasonable amount of content for the specified time period, neither too much nor too little?	
☐ Is there a clear progression of content?	
☐ Is the content organized into meaningful and manageable chunks?	
☐ Is there a consistent use of transitions, instroductions, and summaries?	
☐ **Relevance**	
☐ Are new concepts supported by useful and relevant examples, illustrations, case studies, and/or brief explanations?	
☐ Is the learners' "What's In It for Me?" (WIIFM) answered at several points in the instructional material?	

Delivery Specific

Instructor-Led Training

Facilitator's Guide

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ Is there a Facilitator's Guide? If so, does it contain all the components specified in the project guidelines? (Complete listing of participant materials, topic or section identifiers, properly formatted directions to the instructor, etc.)	
☐ Are the objectives stated at the beginning of the program and appropriate ones restated at the start of each section?	
☐ Are slides and ancillary materials in place and referenced consistently in the Facilitator's Guide? (Titles and numbers should match.)	

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ Is supporting text in the Facilitator's Guide used appropriately? Does it agree with related slides? Is there content there that might better be broken up and placed onto slides or published in handouts?	
☐ Are relevant, clear, and simple examples used to explain major ideas?	
☐ Are new terms, concepts, and principles defined?	
☐ When the instructor is directed to ask questions to engage the learners, are suggested answers to the questions provided?	
☐ Are notes to the instructor provided to ensure consistency of delivery?	
☐ Are the presentation methods appropriate for the audience and content?	
☐ Are there adequate directions to the instructor for activities such as case studies, use of media, and games?	
☐ Is the content clear and concise? Are there any points where the designer needs to revise, or, possibly, check with the Technical Specialist or contributor?	
☐ Are there effective lesson transitions?	
☐ Are there internal summaries and restatements of important concepts?	

Participant Guide

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ Is there a Participant Guide? If so, does it contain all required components? (Complete listing of participant materials, topic or section identifiers, properly-formatted directions to the learners, and so forth.) (May require a return to the ID and/or DTP to properly complete.)	
☐ Does the content in the Participant Guide agree with the Facilitator's Guide and other course materials?	
☐ Are there adequate directions to the learners for activities such as case studies, use of media, and games (if applicable)?	

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
Slides and Wall Charts ☐ Do slides effectively break up the content? (There should not be long sequences of slides that have the same title.) (If this is a concern, mark it for special consideration during the pilot) ☐ Are graphical elements (charts, diagrams, etc.) used instead of words whenever possible? Are photos, simple text graphics, and animation used judiciously to vary the presentation?	

Computer or Web-Based Training

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ **Navigation** ☐ Hyperlinks are attached to a few key words or a meaningful phrase. ☐ Links and URLs are unambiguous, clear, and specific, and are as brief as possible. ☐ **Module Design** ☐ Learning objectives are stated in observable, measurable terms. ☐ Each page is directly tied to a learning objective. ☐ Content critical to mastery of the learning objective and content needed most often are in a prominent place. ☐ **Graphics** ☐ Each graphic serves an instructional or informational need. ☐ **Text** ☐ Does the course have immediate, relevant, practical, and application-based outcomes for learners?* ☐ Text blocks are written in minimalist style: compact, yet useful.	

Job Aids and Resources

Evaluation Criteria	*Comments/Suggestions*
☐ Forms, reference materials, and/or websites that learners will use on the job are included in the course or module, so that learners become familiar with them?	
☐ Job aids that summarize critical information are provided, so that learners do not have to search through a slide deck or the Participant Guide for information they will use on the job?	
☐ Samples of completed work, such as the case study feedback, are provided as models for learners to take back to the workplace?	

ISD Quality Review Summary

Signoff and Acceptance

Evaluation conducted by: _____ Date _____
Instructional Designer

CHECKLIST FOR REVIEWING FACILITATOR GUIDES OR TRAINER MANUALS

- ☐ The learning objectives are stated.
- ☐ The learning objectives are followed.
- ☐ The introduction motivates and orients the trainees.
- ☐ The activities are based on the learning objectives.
- ☐ There are a variety of activities that will keep the trainees' interest.
- ☐ Time is adequate for activities and trainee participation.
- ☐ The activities have good debriefing questions attached where needed.
- ☐ There is a place and time for practice where required.
- ☐ Media is appropriate to learning and properly constructed.
- ☐ Summaries reinforce and pull together objectives.

- ☐ Questioning techniques are evident and appropriate.
- ☐ Evaluations are appropriate.
- ☐ A table of contents is included.
- ☐ A list of all necessary equipment and resources is included.
- ☐ Instructions for role plays or simulations are in enough detail.
- ☐ There is room for personalization.

When you have completed the development of your media aspects, you have completed your course. However, you're not done yet. Your training won't do your organization or your trainees much good until you actually deliver it to them. You determined a plan for this back in the design component, and now it's time to put that plan into operation. The next chapter looks at how you do this, both generally and for specific delivery systems. In training design this component is termed implementation.

HINTS FOR DEVELOPING MATERIAL

Classroom

- Make sure the participants have read and understood any pre-readings by giving a quiz in class based on the pre-readings. Let the participants use pre-reading material to find the answers.
- When using videos in classroom situations, include a list of questions in the participant's manual that the trainees will need to find the answers to as they watch the video.
- A good introductory exercise that is useful any time there is a lot of terminology involved is to give the trainees a list of terms (twenty or so at most) and ask them to first work individually and then in small groups to define the terms. Give about ten minutes for each aspect and follow with a group discussion or turn it into a game by providing the "right" definitions and scoring the answers. This works best if your trainees have some previous knowledge or have been given pre-work to get them started, but can be interesting and enlightening if they know little to nothing of the topic.

An Overhead Development Checklist

- ☐ No more than six lines per overhead
- ☐ No more than six words per line
- ☐ Sixteen-point letters or the equivalent is best (twelve-point is the absolute minimum)

- ☐ Use both upper and lower case letters
- ☐ Either vertical or horizontal format, not both, with horizontal (landscape) usually best
- ☐ Use bullets, stars, dashes, etc.
- ☐ Each overhead should have a title
- ☐ Key words are best
- ☐ Keep your phrases short and simple (no sentences)
- ☐ Use overheads for emphasis, not instruction
- ☐ One main idea per overhead
- ☐ Check your spelling and grammar, then have someone else check it again
- ☐ Use the right kind of pen for your need (permanent, erasable, water-based)
- ☐ Use graphics when possible (charts, diagrams, line drawings, cartoons), but keep them simple and guard against clutter
- ☐ When developing overheads using a computer, all of the above are true, only more so (more capabilities = increased possibility of problems)
- ☐ Keep your overheads large and legible. Test by placing your overhead on the floor and standing over it. If you cannot read it easily, it is too small

More Ideas on Graphics

- Black-and-white transparencies just will not do any more, so use a color printer to make your statement
- Limit colors to no more than three
- Stick to the same color throughout to code similar elements
- Use red, orange, or yellow for items you wish to stress
- Pick red to call attention to main points, to show priorities, or signal danger
- Use green to list things you want the audience to do or decisions you want them to approve
- Highlight goals and objectives with bright yellow because it signals optimism and confidence
- Use blue to calm; too much blue, however, can impair concentration
- Avoid large amounts of purple, which disturbs the eye's focus

Hints for Designing Computer Projections

- Keep each slide to one key thought. Use builds to add new concepts
- Use charts and graphs rather than tables, as they are easier to read at a distance
- Use the same format for all slides. Don't switch from vertical to horizontal
- Never add sound or visual effects without good reason
- Keep the design clean and the effects simple
- Keep backgrounds consistent and subtle
- Use only quality clip art, and use it sparingly
- Check all graphics on the projection system, especially gradient effects, to see how they will look
- Use the chart style that is appropriate for the data
- Use no more than four colors on one chart
- Use one thought per line, five to six words per line, five to six lines per slide
- Light colors on dark backgrounds attract the eye
- Use color cues to imply relationships
- Limit the number of colors on a single screen image
- Establish a color scheme at the beginning and stick with it
- Bright colors make small objects and thin lines stand out
- Don't use more than three fonts in a presentation
- Don't overuse bold face, italic, or all cap.
- In general, don't use a font size smaller than 18 points.
- Sans serif fonts, such as Helvetica, are easier to read when projected
- Use motion elements such as animation and transitions to attract attention
- Don't overuse them
- Add a WOW! factor and interaction to your projections with newer software such as "Prezi"

Activities

- As an activity and/or to get the trainees back on time, use "wuzzels" or other puzzle formats after a break.
- For big groups or multiple-day programs, give points when everyone at a table is back on time. Then award some type of prize at the end of the class.

- Remember for both games and role plays that the debriefing is the most important part. Be sure to give your facilitator debriefing points.
- Use five-minute physical action breaks where trainees do something. Ask the trainees to recommend what they might be.
- Have trainees write down what they have learned at the end of the class and share.

Flip Charts

- Prepare complicated flip charts in advance.
- Ten lines per page is a maximum.
- Don't use the bottom third of the flip chart, as those in the back may not be able to see it.
- Write key points only, no sentences.
- Title each page.
- Leave blank pages between prepared sheets.
- Use multiple colors, but use them systematically (red for emphasis, blue for key points, green for subpoints, etc.).

Print Materials
(*How to Write Training Materials* by Linda Stoneall, 1991)

- Begin with the elements that you have or may be required to use. For example, your company or group may already have a logo you should incorporate. Or you may be asked to use the same color scheme selected for the company brochures.
- Fonts are used in:
  - Content body (the main text on your page)
  - Header levels in the content
  - Page titles
  - Graphics and graphics captions
  - Fonts matter, as do their sizes and colors
- Your best option is to use fonts commonly found on computers, such as Times New Roman, Arial, and Helvetica, or to learn ways to specify specific fonts. For the font size, either use the default browser font and header sizes or select sizes that are easy to read (nothing below 10 points).

More "Print Hints"

- No centered paragraphs

- No decorative fonts or all caps
- Lots of white space
- Emphasize with text attributes
- Use highlighting or bold face to draw attention to the main points
- Vary the size and rotation of text to attract attention
- Multiple fonts should rarely be used. Pick a good font and work with its different styles
- Use boxes with restraint
  - Boxes should be treated with the same restraint as colors and fonts. Use boxes to emphasize important information, such as a sidebar or a pull quote
- Limit line length to 40 to 60 characters
- Tie headings to text
  - Headlines should be visually tied to the text they head. That means you want very little space between your headline and the following text, and a larger space between the end of the text and the next headline.
- Don't use all your fonts in one document
- Don't center large amounts of text
- Don't use all capitals—especially if you're using a calligraphic font

Developing Role Plays

- Know your purpose and follow it in the design
- Keep the directions uncomplicated and as brief as possible
- Make the role play challenging but nonthreatening
- Provide enough time to do the role play and debrief
- Use a template for the role play, such as this one:
  - The purpose of this role play is:
  - Our objective(s) that this role play deals with is:
  - The time required for this role play will be:
  - The number of people needed and their roles are:
  - Equipment or special seating required for this role play is:
  - Step 1: Choose someone for each role
  - Step 2: Read one of the following role descriptions, depending on your role
  - Step 3:

  - Step 4:
  - Step X: Draw conclusions based on the role play and prepare to discuss them with the entire group
- For role plays for which the content matter is not all available or very limited, use an "open-ended" role play in which the beginning is scripted but the trainer soon stops using the script and asks a participant, "Now what would you do?" then goes to another participant and asks, "And how would that make you feel?" and so on. This works as a class activity or in small groups as long as one member of each group takes on the trainer's role.
- One effective way of developing a role play is to set the stage with a video or simple audio of the role-play sender saying his opening lines. The live receiver uses this as a start to follow whatever model has been discussed. The live sender then reacts to the receiver.

On-the-Job Training (Job Aids)

- Use overviews and "what's in it for me?" in your OJT, just as you would in a classroom delivery.
- Why use job aids

  Cheap

  Quick

  Easy to design

  Good retention

  Consistent performance

  Support cross-training or job transfer
- Types of job aids

  Correctly filled in forms

  Checklists

  Worksheets

  Photo-diagrams

  Task lists

  Conversion tables

  Graphs

  Reference books

  Step-by-step self-instruction sheets or books

  Schematic drawings

  Flow charts

- Have your trainees prepare their own personal job aids based on the information provided in class and either a little or a lot of structure from you in the form of a template.
- A key to designing job aids is to organize the information according to how the user may see and use it, not according to the information itself.
- Instructor guides need to be a minimal outline in OJT so the trainer doesn't spend too much time talking from them.
- Participant manuals need to be more complete in OJT as they provide a main reference for after the training is over.
- OJT learner evaluations are best when done as case studies or solve the problem types of evaluation, or the actual performance itself.
- Because the audience is usually only one doesn't mean the audience analysis isn't important.
- OJT requires more questions built into the design that check learner progress.

An OJT Development Template

I. Materials
II. Objective(s)
III. Prepare trainee
    A. Purpose of session
    B. How session will be conducted
    C. Problems others have had
    D. Evaluation
    E. Any questions
IV. Key learning points
V. Expected results
VI. Work standards
VII. Sequence of activities
VIII. Demonstration
IX. Observation of trainee performance
X. Evaluation

If you are moving a piece of instruction for OJT to a technology-based self-instructional delivery where you need a script, videotape the OJT instructor doing the training and use this as the basis of your script.

The 70 percent rule. If you're in a real design rush, 70 percent of the time you can do a good job by simply creating a job aid, training on it, and then

evaluating its use. This is particularly true if your objectives are more performance than cognitive in nature. The other 30 percent is usually content that is fundamental to learning new concepts and so requires a more formalized training process.

Self-Instruction

- Your participant manual for any self-training package should include a piece on how users can learn on their own. This is true for any DVD or asynchronous e-learning self-training package as well (*Preparing the Learner for Self-Directed Learning* by George Piskurich, 1992).
- Your participant manual should include the following:

  Title page

  Course title

  Course identifier

  Department course was developed for

  Date of course

  Preface

  Course purpose

  Course objectives (high level)

  Intended audience

  Prerequisites

  Course instructions

  Self-directed learning instructions

  Content in whatever format you decide is most useful to the learners

  Self-quizzes

  Job aids

  Summary

  Glossary

  Final exam instructions

  List of other resources

  Certificate of completion

- You can use a decision tree as an activity in your print-based manual. Each decision sends the reader to a different page in the manual, where new material is presented and another decision called for. A decision map at the end of the exercise shows the users where they could (or should) have

gone with their decisions and why. This technique is even easier to develop and use in e-learning.

Computer/DVD-Based Training

- A rapid design shortcut for video production is to tape short video clips of SMEs doing what they do or talking about how they do it. These can be spliced in or spliced together to create video without going through the scripting and storyboarding process.

- A variation on this rapid design shortcut is to actually tape an SME as he or she does the entire training process. Analyze what the SME did and add necessary aspects, such as objectives and evaluation. Pilot the new program and make necessary changes, then complete the self-instructional aspects and re-record on a DVD so you have a "brand new" multimedia program.
- Use prototypes ("Rapid Prototyping" by S.D. Tripp, 1990).
- Create strong storyboards ("Storyboarding Tales" by Colleen Frye, 1998).
- Branch, branch, branch.

Here are the basic roles for those involved in creating DVD-based training.

- Project manager
- Training designer
- Writer
- Video producer/director
- Graphic artist
- Author/programmer
- Reviewer
- On-camera talent

Look for ways to combine two or more of these roles in one person.

- Use stock graphics where you can ("Playing the Stock Market" by John Hartnett, 1999).
- Develop a video shot list and a props list from your storyboard to make your production more efficient and share it with everyone involved. (An example can be found at the end of this chapter.)
- Use a video production checklist such as the one at the end of the chapter.

Scripts

- Take the time to write a good script (Write Successful Video Scripts, *Info-Line*, 8707).

Storyboards

- Items you might want to include on your storyboard include:
  - Text or audio script
  - Graphics
  - Description of interactivity
  - List of all previously prepared audio, video, or graphics files that will be used
  - Thumbnail sketches of visuals
  - Branching instructions
  - Programming notes

CHECKLIST FOR DVD (MULTIMEDIA) PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT

- ☐ Lesson or module test-outs were used to decrease learning time
- ☐ Strong storyboards include:
  - ☐ Text or audio script
  - ☐ Graphics
  - ☐ Description of interactivity
  - ☐ List of all previously prepared audio, video, or graphics files
  - ☐ Thumbnail sketches of visuals
  - ☐ Branching instructions
  - ☐ Programming notes
- ☐ Budget determined and approved
- ☐ Timeline determined, approved, and followed
- ☐ Objectives and their mastery used as basis of the program
- ☐ Alpha and beta testing planned
- ☐ Delivery hardware (and software) adequately supports program
- ☐ Branching included where possible
- ☐ Installation instructions and hardware requirements included
- ☐ Troubleshooting tips included
- ☐ Package includes a good glossary that's easy to get to
- ☐ Online help for course navigation and content added where possible
- ☐ Frequently asked questions (FAQ) section included

- ☐ Course history screen allows trainees to keep track of modules completed and those still needing to be done
- ☐ Tests have explicit directions on how to complete
- ☐ Hot spots (hyperlinks) used where possible
- ☐ Simulations included to increase interactivity
- ☐ Examples of cause/effect relationships shown when possible
- ☐ Click-and-drag exercises included to help with sorting and sequencing behaviors
- ☐ Graphics just detailed enough to get the point across
- ☐ Color and shading used to attract the trainees' attention to particular areas of the screen
- ☐ All graphics have good, readable resolution and are related to the content
- ☐ Lessons no more than fifteen to twenty minutes in length
- ☐ Video production checklist used
- ☐ Scripts are in active, not passive, voice and written for trainees
- ☐ Screen text is minimal and as readable as possible
- ☐ All parts are labeled with version numbers

HINTS FOR BETTER DVD (MULTIMEDIA) PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT

- If possible, use professionals for everything; if not, use them for as much as possible
- To save time and money, use a paper-based participant package with your DVD
- Use prototypes
- Don't start media production before the storyboard is approved
- Use good existing media when you can. Even if you have to pay for it, it will save you more in the end
- In multi-language situations or when literacy is a problem, keep text to a minimum and use audio, which is easily re-recorded in another language to the maximum. Don't forget to watch the amount of text in your graphics as well
- Use your course map or outline as an available screen to help guide the trainee
- Use hot spots (hyperlinks) to turn the training into a discovery process by having the trainees decide what they want to learn about

- Create simulations in which the trainee makes decisions and then sees what happens because of those decisions
- Use both positive and negative behavioral models with questions as to why they are right or wrong
- Create dual examples in which the trainee must discriminate between the right one and the wrong one
- Use story-based simulations as an evaluation process
- When requiring a trainee response in a simulation, use a three-level feedback process for wrong responses. First, the program asks the trainee to try again. Second, the program branches back to show what should have been done. Third, the program says: "Watch as I do it for you."
- The three-level feedback approach also works for self-quizzes, with the first wrong answer giving a "try again" message, the second branching back to the general area of instruction, and the third specifically showing the answer in a remedial branch
- Use stock graphics where you can
- Do your video pieces in small segments and use multiple narrators to make it easier to revise
- If possible, have all the media ready before you start to program
- Do videos on location if you can, and use real people for real situations
- Don't forget that most videos will be displayed in a small window, so keep them simple
- Be sure your video budget has included audio recording and post-production activities and money to pay both technicians and talent
- When writing scripts for video:
  - Keep the sentences short
  - Use repetition
  - Remember to write for your audience, not yourself
  - Write in case studies and role plays
  - Remember that it's dialogue, not a magazine article
- If you have multiple programmers, be sure that screen layout and format remain constant
- Use a professional narrator. Nothing makes a program sound more professional and more interesting
- Don't forget that your audio is as important as—and sometimes more important than your video

- Screen background should:
  - Be chosen for emotional effect
  - Not be distracting
  - Use soft colors and simple patterns
- Screen text should:
  - Flow the same way as the culture's written page
  - Be kept to a minimum
  - Not scroll automatically
  - Use a minimal number of font types (two to three maximum)
  - Usually use a blocked text design
  - Use the most readable font type for the software
- Keep your media sorted by lists (video, audio, graphic, animation, etc.)
- Be sure to label everything with version numbers, including scripts, media, and disks

E-LEARNING DESIGN HINTS

- Use the web's ability to access references from other websites for both off-line and online activities
- In instructor-mediated (synchronous) e-learning (virtual classrooms), case studies can be very effective, particularly if you have the case on a video that can be downloaded and viewed ahead of time so that online time can be used for discussion
- Graphic illustrations work well in asynchronous e-learning, but don't forget to use good graphic design principles ("Applying Graphic Design Principles" by B. King, 1993)
- Your program should have an indexing scheme that the trainees can refer to at any time to show them where they are in a lesson, where they are going, and where they have been
- Develop your material based on the characteristics of HTML
- Use the power of a web browser to add links for enrichment information, literally from all over the world
- The more hyperlinks you have, the more you'll have to watch them. Place them in a special reference section, rather than throughout the training
- Try your modules out in a print-based format

- Use proper message design principles (*Handbook of HPT Message Design* by H. Stolovich, 1998)
- Build community in a virtual classroom the same way you do in a face-to-face class with introductions and icebreakers
- Keep graphics, audio files, and video files as small as possible to avoid extended waits for downloading. Professionals in each of these areas and in web-based training can help you
- Ideas for increasing personal interaction in synchronous e-learning:
  - Provide a chat room and schedule discussion times
  - Have participants take turns presenting information and acting as the facilitator in online discussions
  - Design and use online training games
  - Structure online projects that must be completed outside of the virtual classroom aspect of the training
  - Require online teams to make presentations on the topic
  - Assign interactive exercises with specific limits on the number of e-mail notes that may be exchanged between any two people

Satellite-Based Training and Other Telephonic Formats

- Always prepare a study guide that is distributed beforehand and that includes questions that will be discussed and suggested readings
- Stay away from talking heads
- For tele-training with smaller groups, have people introduce themselves
- Any singular activity should take under twenty minutes. This includes lectures, panels—anything
- Don't forget to allow time for breaks, at least one for every two hours of broadcast
- Start your program with a check on trainee expectations
- Use other forms of technology for pre-work to shorten the length of your broadcast
- TV ratio is 3 feet to 4 feet, so make sure your graphics are also

---

Use the following combined list to plan your video shots and record them as they are completed.

VIDEO SHOT LIST/LOG

Course Name: _____ Taping Date: _____

Location: _____ Master Tape Number: _____

Shot Description	Shot ID #	Time Code In	Time Code Out	Comments	Take (x)

VIDEO PRODUCTION CHECKLIST

Complete this checklist before you begin your video production.

Course Name: _____

Location(s) of Shoots: _____

Shoot Dates: _____

- ☐ Storyboard approved by _____
- ☐ Budget approved by all parties
- ☐ Timeline, including production schedule, approved by all parties
- ☐ Locations checked out and scheduled
- ☐ Shot list ready and distributed
- ☐ On-screen talent approved and scheduled
- ☐ Video producer approved and scheduled
- ☐ Scripts ready and distributed to talent and technical people
- ☐ Rehearsal time scheduled
- ☐ TelePrompTer and/or cue cards prepared
- ☐ Props acquired
- ☐ Editing suite time scheduled
- ☐ Approval reviewers known and scheduled

Chapter 6

Getting It Where It Does the Most Good: Implementation

This chapter will help you to:

- Initiate effective beta tests and pilots
- Determine the types of reviews necessary for your training program
- Find out about common implementation problems
- Develop train-the-trainer training when appropriate
- Implement your training programs more effectively

Now you've come to what should be the easy part. At least you would think or maybe hope so. You've planned so hard, designed and developed so well, that the actual delivery should be pretty simple. It can be, too, if you follow a few good implementation practices. These practices are akin to the little extras you might put into our metaphorical house. They don't affect the structure of your program, and they may not even be necessary, but they add that extra little zing that separates the good ones from the great ones.

BETA TESTS AND PILOTS

The first of these implementation practices, and perhaps the most important, are *beta tests* and *pilots*. The purpose of these two processes is to check the viability of your course before you actually implement it. Due to their nature, we're discussing them here.

Beta Tests

Beta tests used to be called *design tests*. The term *beta test* has more or less been borrowed from the computer world, and it is beginning to be the common term for this process. You run a beta test to see how the pieces of your course hold together and whether they work as a whole. Betas are also used to isolate (in a controlled environment) particular aspects of your course that you are not totally sure of, such as special activities, laboratories, complex simulations, and so forth. The importance of a beta test is that it is the first time you will receive feedback from a live audience concerning your course and its component parts.

For a beta test, your audience would include a few representative trainees and an SME or two to give you their viewpoint on the material. If you can, invite another instructional designer for an instructional design review as well. In an extensive beta you might also include the managers and/or supervisors of your target trainees, and other training stakeholders, as well as anyone else you can round up to fill out the audience.

A beta test usually takes about twice as long as the actual training, due to the need for extensive feedback on all the various parts and pieces. You'll want to stop often during the test to receive that feedback, so be sure to schedule enough time, and let your subjects know why.

Designers approach beta tests in different ways. Some use a focus group, while others like to do a managed "talk through." They can be used as a first review or at the end of your first draft of the whole program. The following information describes how to handle a full "walk through" type of beta test, usually done after other reviews have been accomplished and a fairly complete draft of the materials is available.

A Beta Test Simulation

Suppose you've just finished developing a two-day class on dealing with change. You have a lot of activities in it and you want to be sure the activities work properly and that you've covered the material in the right depth and scope for your audience. You might hold a beta test to which you invite the department manager who requested this training, the three supervisors of your target audience, and two other trainers/instructional designers who will be responsible for critiquing all the little nuances of your instructional design. You also ask the supervisors to each bring along one of their best employees to give you feedback from the employee point of view.

Notice that using this approach also lets the invited managers know what is going to be in the training. As an extra added attraction, the process can sort of subtly train them on the change process you are about to institute. These are extra advantages of a beta test that you might want to consider when planning your audience.

Because this is a two-day class, you schedule the beta test to last at least three days. Four would be better, but that will probably not be possible with this group, so you take what you can get.

In your memo to the participants you explain the purpose of the training and of the beta test as well. You tell them what is expected from them in the way of feedback and why the beta test will take longer than the class (because of the feedback). You develop a series of questions for your beta participants based on those aspects of the training that you want the most feedback on. You send the questions out ahead of time to help them prepare.

At the start of the beta test itself, you explain again why everyone is there and reiterate the importance of their feedback. Your plan for the test includes stopping points at which you will solicit feedback. You let participants know where these points will be and what particular aspects you would like them to focus on at each feedback opportunity.

A good technique is to have your questions or feedback needs prepared on a flip chart that your participants can refer to during each segment of the training. Let them know whether you want the feedback to be spontaneous or to be held back until a stopping point (usually the better approach, as it helps smooth out what is already a broken instructional flow). Now you begin the training, just as you would if this were a regular class.

At each stopping point, you solicit the feedback you have focused on and any other information that your group may provide. When you've finished with the entire program, you review the key issues you thought you heard for clarity and agreement, ask for general or overall comments concerning the training, and use this time to ask for the group's support in getting the employees interested in the program (another one of those little benefits of a beta test).

Other Beta Test Considerations

I've found that a beta test is often more effective if I, as the designer, am not also the facilitator. This gives me more time to watch reactions and make notes and allows me to focus all my attention on the audience and their reactions to the materials, rather than the instruction. However, many times this is not possible, as there is no one else to do the facilitation. In this case, try to have one of your colleagues sit in as an observer and note-taker, so you won't have to stop the flow to scribble something every time a good point is raised. Tape recorders can help, too, if they don't make your participants uncomfortable and if they do not require cumbersome activities like passing the microphone.

If you are creating a program that other trainers will facilitate, you will want to do a beta in which one of them does the facilitation to check on how well your trainer's guide can be used.

Beta tests are also a good place to do pre/post testing to check on knowledge acquisition. Even if you are not planning to use pre/post tests as part of the program's actual evaluation, using them as part of your beta will help you to see where your content is weak. If you have followed our good instructional design practices up to this point, you should have a question bank of valid, well-reviewed questions that you can choose from to develop a pre/post test in practically no time. If you did not follow this concept, it might be a good time to start.

Do not forget that this aspect is only valid for those beta participants who are representatives of your training audience. Knowing how managers or SMEs did on a pre/post is not of any value to you.

Many beta tests and pilots start the debriefing with a question, such as "What did you like and dislike about the program?" Often this leads to a lot of discussion about things that are not relevant to the design, such as policies and procedures the learners don't like, or even discussions of why the course is even being given, particularly if the pilot is also the actual training for the learners. I try to stay away from these types of open-ended questions; in fact, lately I've been eliminating the verbal debriefing completely, relying on my written questions to give me what I need to know. One of the other problems with oral debriefings is that one or two individuals with an ax to grind tend to take over, and the others don't get a chance. If you feel you need to do oral debriefs, make your questions specific to what you need to find out about for your design.

Beta Tests and On-the-Job Training

A beta test is just as important for your OJT program as it is for a classroom-based delivery. For your OJT beta you would most likely think to create a one-on-one situation, but there is no reason why you couldn't have two, three, or even more participants involved to give you feedback. This includes those managers and other key players we mentioned when discussing the classroom beta.

The important thing about an OJT beta is that it be held in the actual training environment. If it is truly OJT, you will need to use the resources of that environment in the training, so you should be there. This can create a lot of scheduling difficulties, particularly where line machinery is involved, but it will be more than worth it in the end.

As with the classroom beta, use good focused feedback techniques and plenty of breaks in the training to get that feedback.

Beta Tests and Self-Instructional Programs

Beta tests are particularly important in self-instructional and technology-based implementations. This is the place where you will find out whether the

self-instruction actually is self-instruction (often it is not, and you'll need to revise some or many of your instructional pieces) and how the technology works with the content. Follow the same rules as we discussed for the classroom beta test as far as audience, breaking up the training with debriefs, and asking questions.

I've found it useful even for self-instructional or distributed deliveries to have all my beta test subjects in one room, rather than spread out across a number of sites. In this way I can introduce them to the content and the concept of a beta test and observe as they go through the program. This gives me the ability to ask questions when and where they seem to have problems and stop them at planned intervals for feedback, the same as for a classroom beta.

Some of you might be saying: "Yes, but that doesn't help you check on how the program runs in a real environment where trainees are on their own or connected from different work sites." Very acute of you, but that is more the venue of the pilot than the beta test. We'll discuss that next. In the meantime, here is a list of ideas to help you plan and implement your beta test.

RUNNING A BETA TEST

1. Explain what the participants will be doing and why they are here.
2. Describe how their feedback will be used.
3. Discuss confidentiality of feedback.
4. Audiotape if possible, but ask permission.
5. Keep track of time for first finished, last finished, and an average.
6. Don't forget breaks.
7. Ask the stakeholder to attend at least the debriefing.
8. Be sure to follow your evaluation criteria in the debriefing.
9. Give yourself enough time to gather all opinions and to write a good report.

Here's a sample of what a beta test instrument that goes along with your discussion might look like.

BETA TEST QUESTIONS

For Each Lesson

Do you feel you were able to master the objectives for this topic?

What more would you like to see or discuss in this section?

Are there any areas where you felt confusion?

Was the poster valuable in learning?

Do these activities help learning to occur?

Do you feel you were able to master objectives for this topic?

What more would you like to see or discuss in this section?

Are there any areas where you felt confusion?

Summary Questions for Entire Class
Were the objectives clear?

Were there any terms not properly defined?

Was the important content stressed properly?

Did the introduction make you ready to learn?

Was the summary complete and adequate?

Was the slide show effective?

Did you feel like you were a participant in learning?

Pilots

After you've done your beta testing and made revisions where necessary, you should run a pilot. The differences between the two are somewhat subtle, but monumental.

First, your pilot should run just a bit longer than your training normally will when you roll it out. The slight additional time is for a post-program debriefing and feedback session. Otherwise, if it's a two-day training session, the pilot should last two days.

Second, the audience for your pilot is different. Gone are the managers, instructional designers, and others who were part of the beta. Your audience for the pilot is the trainees intended for your program—and in the same numbers as your program will support when you roll it out.

Basically, if you plan for a class of twenty-five, your pilot should consist of a class of twenty-five. If your intended audience is all line workers, your pilot should be all line workers. If the class lasts two days, so does your pilot (plus a little extra for the debriefing). If your class is to be run off-site at a hotel, that's where to do the pilot.

Run your pilot within the exact parameters, and in the exact environment, as you will run the actual classes. The purpose of the pilot is to make sure the class will work just as you designed it when you deliver it for real.

Pilots Versus Betas

A pilot allows you to evaluate things that a beta test does not. Timing is one of these. You don't stop to garner feedback during a pilot, so you can check whether a two-day class can be run in two days and whether a one-hour activity takes one hour. Logistics should also be assessed during a pilot, which is why you always run a pilot in the actual training environment. A pilot might indicate that you need to have a bigger training room because of the amount of hardware you need, or that all materials must be sent to the training site at least a week in advance.

Obviously, the pilot also allows you to check on the trainees' reactions to the training. Do they have the ability to do the activities? Do they need more pre-work to be ready for the class? Are they bored? Overwhelmed? You are probably thinking that we considered this as part of the analysis process, and you are right. However, the pilot is where you test all those assumptions you made back then, because they were just *assumptions* and remain so until real trainees validate them in a real training situation.

As was true for the beta test, you may want to develop questions to ask about particular aspects of the program, but these are asked only at the end of the program in a pilot, not during it. Distributing these questions before the

pilot is not a good idea, as it tends to focus the audience on those issues when you need their reactions to the entire program.

Asking questions only at the end can be tough on the designer. As you instruct or observe a pilot, you'll want to jump in with "why's" and "how's" the same as you did during the beta. But control yourself! You'll lose many of the benefits of doing a pilot if you interrupt the flow of the instruction.

If you've done a good design job up to now, and particularly if you did a good beta test, what you learn from your pilot should neither surprise you nor cause you to do much in the way of revising the course. It is actually a final review, done to make sure that all those assumptions you made during analysis, design, and development are accurate.

Because this is (we hope) the case, your materials should be pretty much in final format for the pilot. Your handouts and other media should be finalized. Activities should be completely scripted, and technology should be complete. This is not true of your beta materials, by the way. Most often they will be in draft form for the beta test, and you will almost certainly need to make changes. If you consider the purpose of these two processes, and particularly the different audiences, you'll see why the materials should be at different stages of development for each.

Taken down to the lowest discriminator, you might say that you use betas to test the content and pilots to test the delivery and instructional flow.

Pilots for On-the-Job Training

Your pilot for an OJT delivery should follow the rules already discussed. That means one trainee and one trainer in the OJT environment. Because of this restriction, you may want to run a number of OJT pilots in order to obtain enough feedback.

There is an interesting controversy as to whether the designer should be allowed to observe an OJT pilot. Some people feel this interferes with the reality of the pilot; others note that the designer needs to observe what is happening. I don't have an answer for this one. If you think it may be a problem, try to videotape or audiotape the pilot. Otherwise, be content with the debriefing at the end of the pilot and your debriefing of the OJT trainer. Of course, if you are the trainer the issue is moot.

Pilots for Self-Instructional Programs

The pilot is again of particular importance in distributed self-instructional training, whether technology-based or not. This is where you find out whether you can convey the information to the trainees effectively and efficiently—and whether they can use it on their own. As with the classroom pilot, everything needs to be exactly as it will be for the final rollout. If you are sending CDs via

the post office during rollout, this is what you do for your pilot. If facilitators at the training sites are going to do evaluations, they need to do them for the pilot. If you have a chat room running for one hour every other day as part of the rollout, you need to do it for the pilot. Everything *exactly the same* are your pilot watchwords, particularly when it comes to the distribution logistics and the training logistics of self-instructional and technology-based programs.

Once again, the pilot is where you check to make sure that what you expect to work for your program actually does work. Don't make the mistake one instructional designer made: for his pilot, he personally delivered the self-instructional materials to each test site because the self-instructional concept was new and he wanted to "get them off on the right foot." Unless he was going to do the same for every training site every time, this "personal touch" automatically reduced the validity of his pilot.

He failed to find out that the manager/facilitators he trained to do the introduction process for the rollout did not have the time to do it and had delegated the task to subordinates. Because these folks were not trained, and thus had no idea how to introduce self-instruction to the target trainees, a major disconnect occurred. This resulted in the trainees being frustrated (as were the people who had this job delegated to them without training) and the program being viewed as too difficult to bother with by many of the trainees and their supervisors. A properly run pilot would have caught this problem and indicated that the delegates, and not the managers, should have received the facilitator training.

Other Thoughts on Pilots

A question I often hear is: "Because I'm designing a class that will only be taught once, or to a very small group, do I have to go through all this beta test and pilot stuff?" The answer, as usual, is that "it depends." A full-blown pilot is probably not necessary in many small-group or one-time environments. After all, if you only have one set of participants, and you use them for the pilot, what audience would be left for the training? However, some type of combination beta and pilot where you delve into the areas you are most unsure of wouldn't hurt. You can design a beta test, or for that matter a pilot, to do whatever you want. The procedures we have discussed so far are only a guideline, albeit a good one gleaned from hard experience. The important thing is that betas and pilots are the only way you can really learn whether all your design decisions were accurate before they go to your trainees. So choose what works best for your situation, but don't send your training—or yourself—out there without giving it every chance to succeed.

One last comment on these processes that I've also gained from experience. If you are developing a class for delivery in different cultures, do at least

a beta test, if not both a beta and a pilot, in each of these cultures. I learned this lesson when I designed a class with a whole range of great activities based on my own culture, only to find that in another culture one of the key activities was experienced and mastered by every grade school student, while in yet a third culture the follow-up activity was not acceptable, as it put too much stress on the trainee/supervisor relationship.

Even if you're designing within a multicultural team, you still need to test your program with real people from each culture in which your program will be delivered to determine whether cultural differences exist before the rollout.

Here is a checklist that you can use for both beta tests and pilots.

BETA TEST/PILOT REVIEW CHECKLIST

(To be used by the instructional designer as a guide to completing a beta test, or for a reviewer to answer questions concerning a program)

Design

☐ Amount of material appropriate for time

☐ Task analysis sufficient

☐ Objectives clear and complete

☐ All terms properly defined

☐ Important content properly stressed

☐ Plan for transferring training to the job is adequate

☐ Evaluations sufficient

☐ Objectives met

Lesson

☐ Directions to trainees clear and complete

☐ Adequate pace

☐ Overview adequate

☐ Sequence logical

☐ Trainee benefits explained in enough detail

☐ Links to previous training established where necessary

☐ Content relevant to trainee situation

☐ Practices implemented where needed and for proper time

☐ Feedback to trainee sufficient

☐ Activities effective and timely

☐ Transitions comfortable

☐ Reviews/summaries adequate

Presentation

☐ Media appropriate and effective

☐ Job aids used where possible

☐ Reading level is appropriate for the audience

☐ Participation adequate

☐ Atmosphere conducive to learning

☐ Small-group involvement sufficient

General comments:

Design comments:

Lesson comments:

Presentation comments:

One aspect of evaluating a pilot that is often overlooked is to have the ID who created the program or another ID evaluate what he or she saw. This can allow for a totally different perspective.

Here is a form I've given to IDs who are at the pilot to help with their evaluation of it.

INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGNER'S PILOT OBSERVATION TOOL

The first section of this tool is a topic-by-topic evaluation of the usefulness of the course for the participants. Observe how the participants are reacting to the topics and talk to them during lunch or breaks about what you observed.
The second section deals with instructor behaviors observed during the program.

Topic Review

Program Day _____

Section or module:	*Content and activities*	*Comments (If somewhat or not useful, please explain)*			*Time spent on each topic*
	Very useful and well-received	*Generally useful and well-received*	*Somewhat useful and well-received*	*Not useful or well-received*	
Topic and delivery					
Topic and delivery					
Topic and delivery					
Topic and delivery					
Topic and delivery					

Facilitator Behaviors

Facilitator: _____

☐	Yes	☐	No	Created a safe learning environment (no safety hazards).
☐	Yes	☐	No	Provided summary of how participants will benefit from the course content.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Set up room properly with all learning materials and equipment.

☐	Yes	☐	No	Moved around the room with purpose (not anchored in one place).
☐	Yes	☐	No	Maintained eye contact with participants.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Is open, and approachable.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Uses participants' names.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Uses a variety of question types to encourage interactivity and check for understanding.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Provides relevant stories and examples to illustrate a concept or relate a concept to the participants.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Asks participants for examples when appropriate.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Appears professional, comfortable, and confident.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Speaks clearly using vocal variation and effective rate of speech.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Uses easy to understand language and avoids jargon.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Avoids distracting gestures.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Is confident using required technology.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Managed participant questions well.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Created an environment where participants are comfortable contributing.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Managed time effectively.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Makes the connection between course content and their jobs.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Provides clear exercise instructions during exercise set-up.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Debriefs exercises effectively.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Available during breaks or after course for further discussion.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Used facilitator guide effectively.
☐	Yes	☐	No	Directions to the instructor for activities such as case studies, use of media, and games were utilized properly.
☐	Yes	☐	No	The instructor referred to the participant guide and explained the directions where necessary.

What needs to be revised in this program?

Summary

If this form is a bit too heavy for your situation, here is a shortened version I've used for pilot observations by IDs and also for the miscellaneous folks who always seem to just "drop in" during a pilot and sit in the back.

PILOT OBSERVER EVALUATION SHEET

Session: _____

Presenter: _____

1. The learning objectives given for this presentation were covered.

2. The participants were engaged.

3. The majority of content presented was related to the objectives.

4. The PowerPoint slides were properly designed.

5. The PowerPoint slides assisted the participants in mastering the content.

6. The activities/exercises were useful in helping the participants master the content.

7. The time was adequate for the amount of material.

8. The session was well organized.

9. The summary was effective.

10. The instructor presented the material effectively.

One thing that everyone remembers is a form for the participants to use when evaluating a pilot. Here is one I use a lot, although often with modifications so it resembles the previous form if I feel this is too much for my pilot participants.

PILOT PARTICIPANT SURVEY

5-point scale (1 = strongly disagree to 5 = strongly agree, plus N/A *for anything that's not applicable, such as "online delivery"*)

Course

☐ The course met the stated objectives.

☐ The material was appropriate to meet my needs.

☐ The examples helped me understand the content.

☐ The structure and flow supported my learning needs.

☐ There was sufficient time allotted for the course.

Learning Effectiveness

☐ I was able to master the objectives of the course.

☐ I learned new knowledge and skills from this training.

Job Impact

☐ I will be able to apply the knowledge and skills learned in this class to my job.

Support Tools

☐ The materials enhanced my learning and will be useful on the job.

☐ The additional activities (e.g., field trip, panel discussion, lunch and learn, etc.) enhanced my learning.

Environment

☐ The venue was conducive to learning.

☐ The equipment used (video/audio, etc.) was conducive to learning.

Instructor

☐ The instructor was knowledgeable about the subject.

☐ The instructor's energy and enthusiasm kept the participants actively engaged.

Online Delivery

☐ The online delivery had the right level of user interaction/involvement.

☐ This delivery method was an effective way for me to learn the material.

Administration

☐ It was easy to enroll in this course.

☐ The logistical and administrative support provided was good.

General

☐ What concepts were not covered and/or needed more coverage?

☐ What concepts received too much coverage?

☐ What about this class was ***most*** useful to you?

☐ What about this class was ***least*** useful to you?

☐ How can we improve the course to make it more relevant to your job?

☐ Do you have any other suggestions to improve the course (e.g., more activities, other content, takeaway materials, etc.)?

One thing a lot of people forget is that the presenter of the pilot might have some good ideas as well. Following is a short Pilot Presenter Evaluation I like to use.

PILOT PRESENTER EVALUATION

Session: _____

Presenter: _____

1. On a scale of 1 to 5 (5 highest), I would rate my overall presentation a _____.

   Comments:

2. I feel the strongest aspect of my presentation was:

3. The most critical change I will make in my session for the next iteration is:

4. Other changes I will make are:

5. I would appreciate assistance with:

REVIEWS REVISITED

The pilot test basically ends what has been a lengthy review process for our instructional design. We've discussed a number of points at which reviews are important, including after you write your objectives, after you develop your test questions, after the content has been written, for every piece of training material, and others. The problem with reviews is that they take time. If we are practicing rapid instructional design, this means we are not so rapid. However, reviews, betas, and pilots are important. In front of the trainees, whether in a classroom, on a computer, or on camera, is no time to realize that there are holes, gaps, or mistakes in the instruction, so *do all the reviewing that your time line permits*.

One hint that I've found useful: give your reviewers a special pencil or pen that is to be used only for reviewing. Use this memory jogger to remind them of the importance of providing solutions as well as noting problems during their reviews.

Here is a summary of the various types of reviews that we've discussed. It might help you think of ways to combine them for your particular situation and thus make them more efficient in terms of time.

Type	*Who*	*When*	*Comments*
Content	SME	After content is written	1. Hold to scope of objectives 2. Obtain enough information ("this needs more" is not enough information; tell me *what* is needed)
Design	Experienced instructional designer	Starting with objectives, do after each step	1. Review objectives, usability, questions, and media 2. Review objectives when written, with the content, and with the questions
Editorial	Someone new, preferably with proofreading experience	Just before printing	1. Media too 2. Secretaries are great for this
Organizational	Anyone who should	Whenever you feel it's needed	Helps sell your training
Beta	Some subjects close to trainee level and experience	Before pilot	1. Prepare them 2. Observe and ask questions level and 3. Debrief experience extensively
Pilot	The real audience	Before releasing	1. *Exactly* as the training will be used in the any real training 2. Observe if possible, but do not interrupt environment 3. Debrief with planned questions and goals

A rapid design shortcut for reviews is to have your reviewers or validators meet as a group if you are planning to use more than one for the same purpose. This not only takes less of their time but less of yours, as you do not have to collate their comments, but simply record what they all agree is right.

Here is a general review e-mail that you can use as a template when you send out any of your material for review. Notice that it gives accessing directions, asks specific questions of the reviewers so they don't go off on a tangent, gives a deadline, and provides contact information.

Training Review E-mail

Subject: SlL Training Ready for Review

Joe:

The deliverables for Service Leader Training are now ready for review.

There are two deliverables to review for this segment. They are:

- SL Training LG
- SL Training PG

To retrieve the soft copies, access:

1. Consumer on 'Nc-cic-vs14\Hrtrain1\Data'

The file names are:

SL Training LG_5.5

SL Training PG_5.5

Please consider the following questions during your review:

- Are exercises and scenarios realistic?
- Does information represent reality in the workplace?
- Does information have language that is easy to understand?
- Is information presented in a logical order?
- Is all essential information covered?
- Is information workable?

NOTE: If you answered No to any of the questions, please provide specific feedback on/in the documents. If you have any questions, please call George Piskurich, the lead designer for this segment. Please return all comments NO LATER THAN May 19 to:

George Piskurich

409 Gentry Walk

Macon, GA 31210

478–405–8977

Only comments received by May 22 will be considered for review unless otherwise noted. The review meeting for this segment is scheduled for May 23 at 9:00 AM.

Thank you

A rapid ID hint that works great for multiple reviewers is the aforementioned "scrum" process, where your reviewers post their reviews for everyone to see using some form of networking communications software. I've found that as I make changes using this method it's a good idea to use the track changes facility and to put the initials of the reviewer who suggested the change. More often than not, when someone higher up is reviewing the program he or she will want to know why you made some change or another, and having the name of the SME usually is enough for that person to say OK.

COMMON IMPLEMENTATION ISSUES

Overall, if you did your analysis well and remained true to it throughout design and development, your implementation should be relatively simple, particularly if you did beta testing and/or piloting to make sure your training works as expected. The purpose of implementation is to move your program to where it does the most good, that is, to the audience that you determined needed it when you did your analysis.

Classroom Implementation

For classroom delivery, implementation is pretty simple. You just have to arrange a meeting between the trainees, the trainer, and the materials, preferably all at the same time. Of course, anyone who has ever taught a class, particularly away from his or her home base, will tell you that it isn't as easy as it seems. There are a lot of issues, such as enrollment, room size, facility support, travel plans, material reproduction, or even the weather, that can interfere with the smooth delivery of your class.

The art of administering and facilitating a classroom training delivery goes well beyond the scope of this book. (See "Basic Training: Getting Ready to Present" by Bill Withers, 1999.) You'll find a few helpful hints at the end of this chapter and a checklist or two. Generally, the most cogent advice I ever received for a classroom implementation was: "Sweat the details." Check everything twice, then check it again. Have a backup plan, and a backup plan for your backup plan. Get there early and be ready before your trainees

come in. And, most importantly, *be flexible*. Anything can happen, from materials that never arrive to an earthquake, to lost or impounded luggage. Expect anything to happen; don't become flustered when it does; and do what you can with what you have. Remember that the oldest, and possibly most effective, classroom instruction ever done consisted of a master, a few apprentices, and a stick for writing in the dirt.

To keep your field trainers from wearing out during large implementations, design your programs for a maximum of three days. That way they can travel on Monday, teach Tuesday through Thursday, and still have Friday to travel home or be back in the office catching up.

A problem with classroom implementation is "no shows." Solve this by charging the employee's cost center a non-completion charge if they don't show up.

A second problem is that the learners do not finish the post-class work. Charge them for the course for this if it's not done in a specified time.

A third problem is the learners who come to the class without having done the pre-work. Send them home! Word will get around quickly enough that you mean business.

Implementation of Self-Instruction

Implementation is a bit more difficult when you use a self-instructional delivery. You have reproduction needs to consider and possibly a facilitation aspect as well. You'll need to train your facilitators well—well in advance of the actual implementation. Be sure they have the time, ability, and the motivation to do what your program requires of them.

You may also want to do a little training of your trainees to make them comfortable with self-instruction if this is the first time they've attempted this learning method. This might require an orientation to self-instruction, or even a small practice program that they can easily succeed at before they tackle the real training.

A key to good self-instructional implementation is simply to make sure that the programs are available when the trainees need them. If you do a good job at this, and at facilitator and trainee preparation, most everything else you do is simply polish to make the implementation shine a bit brighter.

Learning Center Deliveries

A self-instructional learning center delivery is usually simpler than a distributed self-instructional delivery, as you have only one (or possibly a few) sites to worry about. These sites most often come with a full-time facilitator who can handle program distribution, trainee angst, and a number

of other issues. However, you pay for this resource on the front end by having to set up the center and hire and train the facilitators. If you are using a pre-existing center for your program delivery, this will not (or at least should not) be a problem, but if you are creating a center for your programs to reside in you have a lot to do to make the center ready before the first trainee sits down (*Self-Directed Learning* by George Piskurich, 1993).

In a learning center delivery it is critically important to make sure your training is available when the trainees want and need it, and not subject to hardware availability. This is one of the main advantages of self-instruction, and if it is not part of your delivery process you have missed the boat somewhere. For example, I once saw a self-instructional system in which the learning center computer could only be used from 4:00 PM to 6:00 PM when it was not busy doing other things. What do you think the compliance level was for the "mandatory" training that was available on this delivery system?

This goes for the facilitator, too. If the trainees have to hunt for a facilitator to provide them with materials or to monitor their test, and then have to wait until the right planets are aligned for the facilitator to have the time, your program will most likely fail to achieve its stated goals, particularly those requiring heavy facilitation such as evaluation.

Distributed Deliveries

If you are using a distributed delivery for self-instructional implementation, distribution problems and breakdowns can be added to the above list of delivery difficulties. These include everything from late post office deliveries to a bulky intranet. Package couriers don't always deliver on time, papers are lost on the job site, DVDs go bad, and LANs go down. Higher technologies such as satellite delivery or web-based classrooms can make things much simpler—or much more complicated—for distributed delivery systems.

As with classroom delivery, expect Mr. Murphy to be a big part of your e-learning delivery; plan for anything to go wrong, because sooner or later it will. Have backup machines, backup materials, and backup plans for those times when the machines just refuse to work.

Since one of your biggest problems in a distributed delivery such as asynchronous e-learning is to prepare your learners, you might consider setting up temporary mini-learning centers that they can go to for their first couple of experiences. This will help them get off to a good start, and reduce both their anxiety and frustration levels when things don't go quite as planned.

Train the Trainer

Another aspect of delivery is what is normally referred to as T-3 or "train the trainer." If you are both the instructional designer and the only trainer, you do

not need to worry about T-3, so just skip this area until your situation changes. However, if others are going to train using your material, this is a big issue. A well-trained instructor can make your training sing; a poorly trained one can hamstring it.

The main issue here is to spend some time with the trainer. This does not have to be formal, although formal is better, but it should be systematized. Discuss your analysis and the reasons for the class. Go over objectives and exercises, particularly any that might be tricky. Elicit input and listen to suggestions. Some of my best design ideas were not mine at all, but concepts or simply random thoughts that came out of a T-3 session.

If you can create a more formal approach, all the better. This might consist of having the trainers observe you or someone teaching the material, then observing them while they teach. The beta test is a good place to do the first observation, and the pilot not a half bad place for the second or the first. I've often had anyone who might possibly teach my course as a guest and/or participant at one or both of these processes. You'll have to use another person as an observer if you are doing the instruction of a beta or pilot, but this is simply one more of those tradeoffs that you'll need to make. Is it more important for you to observe the pilot or to give your trainers a full model of how the instruction works? The choice is yours.

Be sure you supply the trainers with your well-constructed facilitator guide, and make it known that these are their copies to write on as they wish. For some reason, new trainers are often hesitant about marking up "your" lesson plan, so make a point of letting them know how much of the course is open to interpretation, and what parts must be done as written.

T-3 as we've discussed it so far is for experienced trainers only, those you are helping to learn the way your course is structured. For people with no training experience, T-3 takes on an entirely different meaning, as you need to teach presentation and facilitation skills as well as content and lesson plan flow. Once again there are many good sources of information on this type of trainer preparation if you need it, but find out what your trainers' needs are first, and then meet them. Here is a general outline for a T-3 program for inexperienced trainers:

Basic Classroom Facilitation Outline

I. Introduction
   A. What makes a good facilitator?
   B. What doesn't
   C. The basic presentation styles

II. Adult Learning Principles
   A. Principles that are most important for facilitation

III. Preparing for Facilitation: Long Before the Class
  A. Know your audience
  B. Know your design
  C. What resources do you need, have
  D. Practice, PRACTICE, **PRACTICE!**
IV. Preparing for Facilitation: Right Before the Class
  A. Arrive early
  B. Setting up the room
  C. Name tags and name tents
  D. Setting up equipment
  E. Setting up your area
V. Delivery
  A. Building rapport
  B. The keys to excellent facilitation
    1. Vocabulary
    2. Voice
    3. Eye contact
    4. Appearance
VI. First Videotaped Presentation
VII. Using the Facilitator Guide
  A. Objectives
  B. Icebreakers
  C. Motivation
  D. Overviews
  E. Activities
  F. Summaries
VIII. Leading Lectures, Discussions, and Demonstrations
IX. Question-and-Answer Sessions
X. Facilitating Small-Group Instructions
XI. Classroom Control
  A. Time
  B. Dealing with characters

XII. Using Media
   A. Handouts and pass-outs
   B. Flip charts
   C. Overheads
   D. Computer projection.ppt
   E. Other media

XIII. Evaluation
   A. Feedback to the learner
   B. Feedback from the learner

XIV. Final Videotaped Presentation

You may have noticed the area in this outline that talks about adult learning principles and may have wondered about the fact that we don't discuss them here. These principles are part of adult learning theory, and as I mentioned in the introduction, this book is more about practice than theory.

If you want more on adult learning theory, the only book to read is the authoritative source, Malcolm Knowles' *The Modern Practice of Adult Education*. If you want something just a bit shorter, here is my distillation of adult learning theory:

1. People learn differently from other people
2. People learn what they want or need to learn
3. People learn when they are ready to learn

Your T-3 can be a rapid design technique as well. The better your trainers are at training, the less explicit your facilitator guides will have to be and, thus, the less time you'll have to spend developing them. If you have the luxury of doing a T-3 for a specific program, you can really reduce your facilitator guide size by providing information there instead of in the document.

OTHER INSTRUCTOR-LED CLASSROOM IMPLEMENTATION NEEDS

To ensure a strong implementation of your instructor-led training (ILT), you may want to consider a couple of other processes. The one most often used is an instructor critique, which basically evaluates the skills of your classroom facilitators in the classroom. It can be used during your T-3, during pilots, or during a live presentation. Be sure the facilitators know what they are being critiqued on (the easiest way is by providing them with a form ahead of time), and that whoever is doing the critiquing knows the form and how to use it properly. Anything less is simply not fair to your facilitator or your course.

Here's an example of a relatively strong feedback form.

INSTRUCTOR FEEDBACK OBSERVATION FORM

Observer:_____ Date: _____

Instructor: _____

Course: _____ Module: _____

Beginning Time: _____ End Time: _____

Methodology (ies)	
Lecture	
Lab	
Role play	
Large-group discussion	
Small-group discussion	
Size of group	
Facilitator's Guide in visible use (Circle yes or no)	Yes No

Section One: Items Coded Once	*Observed*	*Not Observed*	*Not Applicable*
1. Presents objectives			
2. Conveys benefits of course			
3. Clarifies expectations			
4. Establishes behaviors/norms			
5. Follows suggested activities			
6. Follows time suggestions			
7. Operates instructional media properly			
8. Prepares legible visuals			
9. Reviews key points			
10. Relates key points to future activity			

Section Two: Rated Items (Items 11 to 21 should be tallied for frequency)	*Tallies*	*Comments*
11. Provides clear instructions		
12. Uses examples or analogies		
13. Asks open questions		
14. Paraphrases or repeats student comments		
15. Checks for understanding		
16. Circulates among small groups		
17. Probes for more information		
18. Addresses participants by name		
19. Uses correct grammar, avoids jargon		
20. Redirects student questions or comments back to audience		
21. Speaks with expressiveness and varies tone of voice		
Rating Scale for Items 22 to 24 *3 = Evident most of the time* *2 = Evident some of the time* *1 = Not present but needed* *0 = Not relevant to this module*	*Rating*	*Comments*
22. Maintains eye contact		
23. Deals with challenging behavior		
24. Addresses participant questions		
25. Demonstrates the ability to listen		
26. Uses body language (gestures, posture) and voice modulation to enhance delivery		
27. Uses appropriate language (non-sexist, non-racist)		
28. Deals effectively with difficult situations		
29. Gives positive feedback		
30. Is comfortable working with the group		

Another document you might create is a faculty strategy plan. Basically, this tool is a snapshot of what you need in the way of facilitators for your program and who is available who has the content knowledge and skills. This planning is more important for longer classes with multiple facilitators, but you can use a reduced version for just about any course.

Creating this plan is really part of your analysis process, but it is often overlooked until the program is ready to go. If you are designing an ILT, be sure you have who you need to facilitate it . . . or resources to train to do the facilitation.

Here's a template for a pretty formal faculty strategy plan.

FACULTY STRATEGY PLAN TEMPLATE

Course Title: _____

Use this template to list information concerning the primary and backup facilitators for each aspect of the program.

Facilitator's Name	*Primary or/ Backup?*	*What areas if not all*	*Expertise/ Experience*	*Understanding of Program Material*	*Requires Train the Trainer?*	*Requires Program Observation*	*Requires Co-Facilitation*	*Has Solo Facilitated Program*	*Ability to Travel*	*Notes/Plans*

Another document you might want to create is an instructor checklist. This piece is used every day by every facilitator when preparing for, instructing, and completing a class, so you might guess it has some importance for the proper implementation of your program. It reminds the facilitator of all the technical and mechanical things that must be done with the class.

These checklists can be as short as a page, or as long as a booklet, and cover everything from checking the room for safety issues to a reminder about what type of markers to use on the whiteboards. I was required to use one with a client that was thirteen pages long!

Here's a kind of middle-of-the-road example.

INSTRUCTOR CHECKLIST

- ☐ Confirm location and availability of emergency information and equipment, including:
  - ☐ Emergency phone numbers (medical, technology, facilities, support, etc.) and procedures
  - ☐ Participant emergency contact information
  - ☐ First aid provisions (including first aid kit and automated external defibrillator)
  - ☐ Fire extinguishers and pull stations
- ☐ Check that the training room can safely accommodate the expected number of participants
- ☐ Check wiring and cords for all equipment are secured or removed from walkways to avoid possible tripping hazards. Do not overload power outlets and cords
- ☐ Confirm that all equipment is working and ready prior to the session start time (including the PC projector and screen, projector remote control, pointer or laser, audio system with microphones, etc.). Check for any technology interference (feedback, volume control, etc.)
- ☐ Distribute the sign-in sheet
- ☐ Discuss safety and other concerns at start of first day
- ☐ Advise of any potential extreme weather
- ☐ Explain evacuation procedures, including location of emergency exits and assembly point
- ☐ Note location of emergency information and equipment
- ☐ If using PCs, allow time for participants to adjust their display screen ergonomics
- ☐ Communicate the restroom locations to participants
- ☐ Inform training manager and supervisor if a participant does not show up or does not return to the session, as soon as appropriate
- ☐ Distribute course feedback forms and ensure completion by all participants before departure

Train the Trainer for Self-Instruction?

No T-3 exists for self-instructional training, which is obvious. However, in many self-instructional deliveries, particularly distributed ones, you will need to do facilitator training. Self-instructional facilitators are not trainers. This is

both good and bad. It is good (because they won't need the depth of content knowledge training or classroom skills that a trainer needs) and bad (because in most cases they have no facilitation skills at all and know little to nothing of what is expected of them as facilitators).

There are any number of ways to do facilitator training for your self-instructional program, all based for the most part on what you need the facilitators to do. Remember when we did facilitator analysis to try to determine whether the right facilitators were available. Use this information and your design work to put together a training program that gives the facilitators the skills and knowledge they need to do the things you thought might be necessary back in the analysis stage.

If you do a beta test, have a few (or more) of your possible facilitators as beta subjects and ask them about your facilitator requirements. Your pilot will tell you where other facilitation problems may lie. Use all of this information in formulating your facilitator training.

The problem, particularly in a distributed self-instruction delivery, is to find a way to give that training to the facilitators. You may be able to develop a facilitator's manual, or you may need actual face-to-face time with them. The key is to know what is needed and then to create a system that works best for the facilitators in your company's environment.

An approach I like to use is a self-instructional package on how to facilitate each program. Using this method, the facilitators learn what is expected of them while experiencing self-instruction. This approach can be expensive and time-consuming with some of the higher level technologies, but there is no reason why you cannot mix your media and make the facilitator self-instruction a print-based package with references to the main technology program blended into the process. Also use some type of monitoring check to make sure your facilitators complete their packages and understand them. The usual post-quiz is a good tool for this purpose, although I've used everything from phone calls to videotapes, depending on the program.

And remember, a facilitator of self-directed learning:

- Doesn't know everything
- Doesn't have all the answers
- In fact, doesn't even know all the questions, as most often the learner provides these

Here is an example of a facilitator checklist for a self-instructional delivery that might be helpful for you.

SELF-INSTRUCTION FACILITATOR CHECKLIST

Each time a trainee takes a self-instructional package, use this checklist as your guide to help him or her start properly.

- ☐ Allow sufficient time for trainee to complete the package
- ☐ Provide quiet space
- ☐ Explain that the trainee is responsible for his/her own learning
- ☐ Give trainee an answer sheet from provided supply
- ☐ Explain that all answers are to be recorded on the answer sheet
- ☐ Check on trainee every twenty minutes
- ☐ Be available to answer questions
- ☐ Record the trainee's name, program title, and completion date on the program completion record
- ☐ Have manager sign the program completion record
- ☐ Provide at least one opportunity for guided practice

On-the-Job (1:1) Trainer Training

Training for OJT trainers has its advantages and difficulties as well. Because OJT trainers are usually subject-matter experts, you won't need to deal much with content. However, they are not usually trainers, so you will have to train them on training techniques, particularly one-on-one training techniques. You will want to show them how to use the materials you designed and go over any instructional or logistical aspects that might cause them headaches. I normally make it a priority to remind the OJT trainers how important it is to keep to both the time schedule and the required content. In fact, I remind them of these two factors continuously, as they seem to have the most difficulty with these concepts.

I like to teach my OJT trainers the seven-step approach to successful OJT:

1. Tell Me
2. Show Me
3. Do It for Me

then

4. Let Me Tell You
5. Let Me Show You
6. Let Me Practice

and, of course

7. Evaluate Me Doing It

I also remind them that they can not be seen by the trainees as the guru with all the answers, so they should use the four-step answering a question technique.

1. Learner asks question
2. Answer with "What do you think?"
3. If not a safety problem, then say "OK, try it."
4. Follow up with "What do you think went wrong?" if things did not go right

If job aids are being used, I discuss this five-step process with them:

1. Review the job aid to make sure it is right
2. Tell your learners what it is and what it is used for
3. Train them on how to use it through demonstration
4. Allow them to practice using it
5. Evaluate them using it

You can do OJT trainer training one-on-one or in a classroom, depending on numbers. The most important skills they need to review during this aspect are the basic communications skills (listening, verbal, nonverbal, empathy, etc.) that you would teach any facilitator. However, whatever your approach, make sure you give them plenty of *observed* practice time to bring their skills up to speed before they meet their first trainees.

Deployment Plan

Another good implementation practice is the creation of a *program deployment plan*. These are useful if your program is going to be facilitated by a number of people in various environments. The plan details overall information about the course, such as goals, objectives, audience, and so forth, and provides helpful information on what is needed to run the course, such as supplies, hardware, materials, registration, prerequisite concerns, room size, and all the other logistics processes.

These aspects are often part of the design document and facilitator guide in an ILT program or the facilitator's package, in the case of a self-instructional program, but in some cases there is an administrative person involved in doing the planning and organizing who does not receive the facilitator guide, or who

doesn't know how to use it. The deployment plan helps these folks to do their jobs effectively, which will make your training more effective. I worked with a client that had an entire support services department to take care of all the mechanical aspects of implementing a course. I learned quickly to involve someone from that group early on, usually during the analysis phase, and listen carefully to his or her input.

You can pull the majority of information for your deployment plan directly from these documents and add to it as needed. In your implementation planning, don't forget to at least consider whether you'll need a deployment plan.

Here are some of the other items you might put in your deployment plan:

- Names and contact information of required vendors
- Important program resources (sponsor, signoff authority, ID, SME, etc.)
- Target audience
- Registration process
- Demand: How many classes and how often in next year or two
- Required locations
- Program funding/tuition
- Awarding of credit
- Records storage
- Residential/non-residential
- Time to revision
- Maximum headcount/class
- Prerequisites
- Technical support needs
- Printing requirements
- Facilitator costs
- Participant travel costs
- After-class activities
- Required safety equipment
- Required room layouts
- Instructional media required (flip charts, projectors, video, etc.)
- Number of breakout rooms
- Food requirements
- Off-site activities

- Pre-work requirements
- Network access requirements

Communication/Marketing Plan

This type of plan helps you make sure you let everyone, particularly management, know all about "their" program. It describes how you are going to tell the managers about the course, what it will do, what their responsibilities are in it, and how they can help make it a success. If you invite managers to your beta test, it forms the basis for a good takeaway for them.

I like to include a one-pager that gives them hints on how they can talk to their employees about the importance of the course and lay a groundwork for their accepting and being motivated for it.

I have a rule concerning this type of planning. If I don't seem to need to do it, I go back and find out why. Managers and supervisors are an important element in almost every training program's success. They perform critical functions, from allowing their people to attend to following up on the training through post-class activities that help transfer the training to the job. Every program should have a tie-in to management, and part of that tie-in is a good communication/marketing plan.

The reason for the two-word title to the plan is that any communications you do concerning your course should market it as well. Even if you are developing a program to meet a major organizational need, you still have to sell its importance to the employees who need it and to the managers who will let them go to it and support it.

This all starts way back in analysis and even before, when you are trying to determine performance gaps and opportunities. Each person you talk to in your analysis and design meetings can be a supporter or not, depending on how you communicate with him or her, so plan your communications wisely.

As the course is being developed, and particularly when it's ready to implement, communicate with all those who will be affected by it in e-mails, meetings, communities of practice, and any other way you can think of. Give them updates, then trumpet the fact that it is now available.

Following are some thoughts on creating a good communications and marketing plan.

Communication and Marketing Thoughts

The general purpose of the communications plan is to ensure that all audiences affected by a course are reached at the appropriate time, and with the information each requires, relative to the course.

It can be created by anyone from a communications director to an ID, but it's a good idea to consult everyone involved in a course on its content and

plans depend on a number of variables, including the length of the course, its structure, the audience, and its visibility throughout the organization.

Here are some basic thoughts on creating a communications/marketing plan:

- Aim to over-communicate: Don't be concerned with repeating the story. Repetition makes the topic memorable.
- Keep it consistent: A consistent look and format makes each piece recognizable.
- Create a sense of urgency: Put on your marketing hat! We're not just informing, we should be asking our readers to take action in some way. Be creative and be visible.
- Tap into existing vehicles: Think about communications you receive. How could we utilize communication vehicles already in place in the SPU/discipline?
- Utilize communicators in the business: Are there communications teams in the area affected by the program that could help you tap into your audience?
- Refer to your stakeholder messages: Use a stakeholder analysis in combination with your plan. As you create materials for an audience, be sure you are addressing the identified key messages.
- Identify influencers: Who influences your target audience? It may not always be leaders—it could be peers. Use these influencers to help gain credibility.
- Look for ways to encourage actions on the part of the recipients of your communications, rather than simply reading missives.
- Know the purpose of each piece of communication before you send it.
- Keep your end goal in mind: Every communication piece should have a purpose. What would you like the reader to do with the information? Make that request clear in your messaging.

A good communications plan always includes the following:

- The purpose of the course
- The purpose of the plan, and each of its major component parts
- A list of the individuals affected by the plan, including:
  - Course champions
  - Course sponsors
  - Course owner

- Subject-matter experts
- Involved learning staff
- Course participants at all levels

Create a communications piece for each of the affected individuals or groups. Each communications piece that you have listed in your plan should usually include:

- The type of communications
- The timing of the communications
- The audience for the piece
- The purpose of the piece
- The actual content of the piece

Types of communications used in an effective plan might include:

E-mails	Conference calls
Meetings	Flyers
Newsletters	Monthly/quarterly teleconferences
Webcasts	Items on COPs
Surveys	Posters
Slide packs	

If you want to gain high-level support for your program, couch your communications in their language. Talk about how your program will help achieve a business goal or increase a performance, how it will affect KPIs and budget.

Next, give them what you want them to know in a succinct package that contains:

- The program goal
- The program objectives
- The intended audience
- A quick synopsis with lots of their language in it

Make this a part of your marketing and you'll have all the support you need.

With your implementation underway, you are pretty much done, right? Wrong! Remember back in Chapter 2 when we discussed that the only real reason for doing training was to meet an organizational need. Well, how do you know whether you've done that, or even whether your trainees have learned anything? The instructional design component of evaluation is the answer, and that's Chapter 7.

HINTS FOR IMPLEMENTATION

Classroom

- Give trainers in training a chance to observe the training before they do it
- Give the designer/developer and trainer a chance to talk together
- Competencies of a good trainer include:
  - Can use course material effectively
  - Can use trainee information effectively
  - Prepares well
  - Establishes and maintains credibility with trainees
  - Demonstrates good classroom management techniques
  - Is an effective communicator
  - Is an effective questioner
  - Relates well to trainees with questions and problems
  - Provides positive reinforcement
  - Uses instructional media properly
  - Is a keen evaluator of trainee performance

Flip Charts

- If you have prepared flip charts, keep them on one easel and write on another
- Talk to the class, not the flip chart
- Post key sheets on the wall to make them easier to refer to and for better retention

Logistical Items to Discuss in a Classroom Introduction

- Emergency exits
- Restrooms
- Location of phones
- Contact phone number at training site (on flip chart)
- Vending machines
- Ground rules

Presentation Pointers

- When using a PowerPoint presentation, print out the slides six at a time for your trainer's manual so your trainer has a better idea of what's coming up next

- Things your trainers should never have to say:
  - "I know that I'm not supposed to read these overheads to you, but since those in the back can't see them … "
  - "I don't have a handout, as I did not want anything to interfere with your learning from my presentation."
  - "I'll answer questions at the end of my presentation."
  - "I'll lecture for about an hour and then we'll do an activity."
  - "I know we only have twenty minutes left, so let me spend some time talking about the objectives on your list."

Hints for Facilitators

- Use games to get them back. Team games work best
- Everyone likes prizes
- Candy breaks, particularly in the afternoon, are real energizers
- Utilize both name tags and name tents, depending on the classroom environment
- Eat light before you facilitate, and at lunch
- Take a walk during the breaks to clear your mind
- Build a presentation kit with all the things you need for your media, from markers and a stapler to extension cords for computer projectors
- Start and STOP on time
- Use non-break breaks like throwing a ball, stretching, or mind relaxers
- Don't be afraid to be seen using your facilitator guide
- Over-prepare
- Don't be a slide narrator
- Stay up-to-date on content
- Reinforce each learning point
- Have fun
- Summarize
- Arrive early
- Resist the temptation to make any significant last-minute changes to your facilitator guide
- Memorize your introduction and have it down pat
- Silence can be golden

- Use quotations, metaphors, analogies, and stories to illuminate the content
- He who laughs last was probably offended by your joke
- Know where you're going and what you're going to do when you get there
- Observe others as they facilitate and note what they do that works

Guide to Room Size

- For approximately twenty trainees:

  Minimum = 20 to 24

  Best = 22 to 26

  Maximum = 24 to 30

On-the-Job (1:1) Training

- Train (certify) your OJT trainers in how to do one-on-one training, as well as on how to use your materials
- When demonstrating the job, sit or stand in the exact position that the trainee will be in when doing the job
- When the trainees are practicing for the first few times, have them explain what they are doing and why for each step as they do it
- Provide feedback on each step as needed
- Correct errors immediately
- Give praise for a successful performance
- Be sure the trainees know where to obtain help before being left on their own
- Be sure your trainers realize that learning must take precedence over production during the training
- Remind the trainers that, unlike classroom training, there is no learning from peers in OJT so the trainer is the source
- If you use OJT because your content changes often and rapidly, be sure to use a printer who can provide you with just-in-time printing of your materials. You lose a lot of cost-effectiveness if you have to keep throwing away outdated material
- Recognition for completion of OJT is often not considered. As for your other programs, use certificates, plaques, and mailed copies of completed training records. For multi-class programs, issue stickers at the end of each portion to be placed on a certificate. This also works well as recognition for completed projects on the way to long-term certification

Self-Instruction

If you plan to develop a learning center, sell the supervisors on its advantages and capabilities first

Training Centers

- Plan enough space for trainees to work and keep documents open
- Post a sheet of instructions on how to adjust "adjustable" chairs
- Have enough room for the trainer to spread out his or her material
- If you use a lending library format as part of your center, use a fax request form to allow trainees to sign up for programs or put them on reserve for borrowing
- In distributed self-instruction systems, charge a non-completion penalty against the trainees' department's budget if evaluations or monitoring reports are not returned

Computer Training Centers

- Use red and green cups that trainees place on their computers to notify the facilitator that they have questions: red for immediate help, green to signify a question that can wait
- Styrofoam hamburger boxes stuck on the wall in the proper order and labeled with a Magic Marker make a great instructional aid for teaching keyboard skills in software training
- Use the following checklist to help you implement a distance (distributed) self-instructional program of any type

CONDUCTING A DISTRIBUTED SELF-INSTRUCTIONAL IMPLEMENTATION

☐ An effective, efficient delivery system for the programs is being utilized:
- The human touch is being used, if possible
- Contingency plans for lost packages are in place
- A procedure is in place for packages that arrive without explicit instructions

☐ Effective control measures are being utilized:
- Packages are in a good physical location and available when needed
- Record-keeping techniques are in place to maintain control
- Formal and informal management observations at the training sites will be done
- Personal observations, facilitator reports, training completed reports, and other control measures are being implemented
- Top management is being kept involved to keep their support high

- ☐ Specialized evaluation measures of trainees and the packages are being implemented:
  - Trainee performance evaluations are being done correctly
  - Package effectiveness (training transfer) evaluations are being done
  - Program compliance is being checked
- ☐ Procedures to ensure continued compliance and support are in effect:
  - The programs are being updated on a timely basis
  - Revision and updating procedures are in place
  - Revision data from the sites is being collected
  - Edition control procedures are in place

Use the next checklist to help you implement a learning center for self-instructional programs.

OPERATING A LEARNING CENTER

- ☐ Adequate furniture has been purchased. Special consideration has been given to chairs
- ☐ Storage space is sufficient
- ☐ Lighting, heating, ventilation, and air conditioning, and interior decoration have been considered
- ☐ Electrical needs have been satisfied
- ☐ Hardware requirements have been satisfied
- ☐ Pre-packaged materials have been obtained when possible
- ☐ Facilitators have been selected
  - ☐ Staffing will be continuous
- ☐ Hours of operation have been set
  - ☐ Contingencies for shift workers have been developed
- ☐ Scheduling policy and procedures have been set
  - ☐ A decision on sign-in sheets has been made
- ☐ A card catalog system or its equivalent has been developed
- ☐ The mechanism by which trainees obtain packages has been tested and works
- ☐ Center directions have been posted
- ☐ Program directions accompany programs when needed
- ☐ Directions for using machines have been posted

- ☐ A center orientation for new users has been developed
- ☐ Center initiation publicity has been done
  - ☐ Group initial orientations have been done
  - ☐ The corporate newsletter has been used
  - ☐ A center program booklet has been developed
- ☐ Center evaluation mechanisms have been developed
  - ☐ Package effectiveness as a function of job transfer has been considered
  - ☐ Evaluation of trainee learning has been systematized
  - ☐ Center efficiency evaluation through use of sign-in sheets and opinionnaires has been considered
  - ☐ Enough data for a center cost/benefit analysis is available

Computer/DVD-Based Training

- ☐ Items to check for a DVD beta or pilot
  - ☐ Course runs on appropriate hardware
  - ☐ Screen colors are appropriate
  - ☐ All navigation points work as specified
  - ☐ All branching works as specified
  - ☐ Course can be entered or exited where necessary
  - ☐ Menus are available as needed to make course efficient to use
  - ☐ "Tone" of course is appropriate for audience
  - ☐ Narration is appropriate for audience
  - ☐ Graphics are constructed well and appropriate for course
  - ☐ Test questions are criterion-referenced
  - ☐ Feedback is available where needed and facilitates learning
  - ☐ Quality of audio and video is up to standard set for course
  - ☐ Objectives can be met through content
  - ☐ Activities are plentiful and timed to keep trainee interest high
- ☐ Have your storyboard validated by SMEs and other necessary reviewers, as it's much easier to change things here than later.

e-Learning

- ☐ General items you might need to determine during an e-learning pilot ("Synchronous Distance Learning: The Interactive Internet Classroom" by J. Stewart, 1999)
  - ☐ Is the training appropriate to the audience?
  - ☐ Does the audience have the proper computer skills?

- ☐ Does the audience have the right prerequisite knowledge?
- ☐ Will the hardware support the program effectively?
- ☐ Do all trainees have necessary add-ons and peripherals?
- ☐ Do all trainees have correct software versions?
- ☐ Can all participants connect to the network?
- ☐ Is connection speed what is required?
- ☐ Is the connection reliable for all sites?

☐ Ideas for increasing personal interaction in e-learning:

- ☐ Seat more than one participant at each computer
- ☐ Have online team members interact among themselves before responding
- ☐ Pose challenges that require online teamwork to answer
- ☐ Provide prizes and incentives (such as downloadable games) for participation
- ☐ Post ideas on your bulletin board that require comment from each trainee and reactions to their colleagues' comments
- ☐ Introduce facilitators and trainees through e-mail and/or pre-course questionnaires that all see
- ☐ Share common likes and dislikes through your bulletin board or chat room

☐ If you are using a web-based delivery, or even if you are not but have an intranet, you can do your trainee tests in a computer format instead of paper and pencil. There are a number of programs available to help you do this and it will save you a great deal of logistics time in distance environments

☐ Use the computer screen as you would a flip chart, allowing each participant to type in a response and then showing all the responses to everyone for discussion

☐ Train your synchronous e-learning trainers on how to use this delivery system effectively

☐ Use a non-graded pre-class session to allow the trainees to become accustomed to synchronous technology and to test your system. Make it something fun like a discussion of current events

Satellite-Based Training (Telecommunications)

☐ Determine your downlink sites based on where your employees currently travel to and from for training

☐ Keep track of the people who do not participate and try to involve them in future discussions

- ☐ Flip charts and whiteboards don't work well with satellites or cameras
- ☐ Use a graphics camera to show prepared visuals
- ☐ Be specific on ground rules and communications do's and don'ts during the training
- ☐ Check out all equipment and links before the trainees arrive, starting two to three hours in advance of the broadcast
- ☐ Rehearse, rehearse, rehearse
- ☐ Keep a name map to show you who is where

FIELD TRIPS

Field trips aren't used a lot, at least not in adult learning processes, but they do happen once in a while, and I picked up this wonderful one-pager on how to make them work from a colleague of mine, so I thought I'd share it with you. Thanks, Richard.

FIELD TRIP CHECKLIST

The phrase "field trip" may bring to mind long bus rides, sack lunches, and museum tours, but field trips can take a variety of forms that meet a variety of needs and can enhance deep, active learning. Along with the engagement with concepts that is required by these experiences, the student bonding that occurs on field trips enhances the learning experience and creates a learning community as learners continue onward in a discipline. Teaching in the field also gives instructors the opportunity to get to know their learners in greater depth in terms of how the learners see the world differently than the instructor does. This insight into student world-views can help the instructor to better communicate the concepts of the course.

Essential Field Trip Checklist

Front-End Analysis

1. Type and length of field trip?
2. Purpose?
3. Desired outcomes?
4. Does it fit into the curriculum?
5. Can a virtual intervention suffice?
6. Projected budget/costs?

7. HSSE issues?
8. Legal issues?
9. Communications/marketing plan?

Planning and Other Front-End Details

1. Site pre-visit/assessment
2. Visit sites, routes, logistical elements
3. Logistics
   a. Transport
   b. Accommodations and meals
   c. Equipment and materials
   d. Clothing requirements
4. Leadership/roles—selection and development
5. Communications plan while on the trip

Learning Design and Development

1. Pre-trip learner base lining
2. Lesson planning/roadmap
   a. Learning objectives
   b. Learning activities
   c. Learning measurement/assessment
   d. HSSE plan
   e. Alternate plans
3. Learning materials
   a. Leader guide
   b. Learner's packet including field guide
   c. Teaching aids and other support
   d. Special considerations
   e. Shipping
4. Leader prep, especially the site guides, with the desired outcomes and LOs
5. Implementation
   a. Personal conduct while on the trip
   b. HSSE
   c. Keep on schedule

d. Engage learners
e. Adapt to environmental conditions
f. Wrap up/AAR

Tips

- Always consider the environment and the unexpected
- Factor in the time of day, whether inside or outside, weather conditions, HSSE issues
- You don't usually have a nice classroom with full media capabilities, but rather a muddy hillside or an estuary in rainy and cold weather, so you need to design learning activities with such conditions in mind
- Consider your media—often there is no media or power connection for projectors, speakers, and computers
- It is so important to engage the learners at every opportunity—try to avoid the know-it-all leader who talks endlessly
- Consider how exercises are worked when out on outcrops, wading in a bay, or climbing on a drilling rig
- As with any learning activity, create your main learning goal, learning objectives, and measurement of learning plan
- Consider how you might utilize an hour or two driving across back roads and highways to create learning moments
- Well-designed and user-friendly field guides are critical. They may be a simple single one-pager for an hour-long field trip to a hefty bound guide with lots of imagery and space for taking notes. Smart tablets are increasingly finding a place for field trips. You will have to be able to design for many different guides and conditions
- Wide range of non-traditional teaching aids such as poster boards, large format imagery, clear vinyl overlays, head phones, megaphones, and so on. Oftentimes the sky is the limit
- Pre-trip preparation for the learners. Explain the ground rules, what they are about to see and do, why, the relevance of the trip to the learners' jobs
- Assessment of learning tools: Concept maps**,** concept tests**,** exams**,** oral presentations**,** poster presentations**,** peer review**,** portfolios**,** rubrics**,** written reports. Other assessment types might include concept sketches, case studies, seminar-style courses, mathematical thinking, and performance assessments
- Set up the field trip as a research project that includes data collection

- Conduct a theoretical examination of the issue in class long before going into the field. Learners should have a sense of what the field trip is going to be about before they go
- At least two weeks before heading into the field, develop the rudiments of basic hypotheses. At this point the instructor should give details about the field site so that learners know what to expect
- In the field, focus on the things that you've agreed to focus on and let the other stuff be icing on the cake
- Take a backpack full of extra warm/dry clothes and Snickers to pass out to learners as the need arises
- If for a large class, prepare TAs well to manage smaller groups of the class
- Prepare learners for practicalities, including appropriate attire, expectations for physical exertion, anticipated rest stops, supplies and materials they should bring

Chapter 7

Did It Do Any Good? Evaluation

This chapter will help you to:

- Discover why evaluation is important
- Find the key to appropriate evaluation
- Consider the applicability of the types of evaluation to your training situation
- Master the evaluation of self-instructional programs
- Create a revision plan for your training

Up to this point you've analyzed, designed, developed, and implemented, but there is still one more step. Sooner or later, more likely sooner, someone is bound to ask: "Did it work?" Did your training do what it set out to do? Was it any good? These questions and others are what evaluation tries to answer. To finish our house metaphor, this would be the inspection before you move in.

WHY EVALUATION?

Evaluation often reminds you of the old proverb concerning the weather. Lots of people talk about it, but few seem to be able to do much about it. You can probably see the main reason why. By now you've already spent a lot of time and energy on this training, and you may not want to invest more. You may also have been given new priorities, new training to do, or simply gone through any of a number of other business changes that say to you: "You don't have time to mess with evaluation."

However, you must evaluate. You might as well not have analyzed, or developed consistent materials, or implemented properly if you do not evaluate, because the end product is the same: training that is suspect, that may be good or may not—you just don't know.

You evaluate for two reasons: (1) because someone else wants to know whether the training you designed was effective or (2) because you want to know. These might seem to be the same thing, but they are not, and the difference between them is the difference between good evaluation and an exercise in futility.

Let's look at an example. Suppose you have done a little reading and you've found that there are at least four different kinds of evaluation (*Evaluating Training Programs: The Four Levels* by Donald Kirkpatrick, 1994). Being a good instructional designer, you decide to do all four kinds for your program. So you have the trainees evaluate the program with a reaction sheet, you evaluate the trainees' learning with a good criterion-based test, you monitor their use of the new skills back on the job through observation and supervisory interviews, and you develop a return on investment (ROI) evaluation that compares program costs with achievement of corporate goals.

You write a report that details the ROI, but no one in upper management really ever reads it. You compile data that shows that 87.6 percent of the trainees felt the course was outstanding, but since it is not being given again, no one really cares.

You get the point. What you've done was right from a pure instructional design viewpoint, but wrong (or at least worthless) for your organization. "But wait," you say. "What if I wanted to know these things?" That's great, but do you have the time to satisfy your own curiosity when there is so much else to do? "But wait," you say again. "Didn't you just hammer in the fact that evaluation *must* be done or the training is suspect? And aren't you saying now that evaluation doesn't need to be done at all?"

The answer is a resounding NO, and YES. This is another one of those clear-cut instructional design issues that we keep running across. No, I'm not saying you don't have to evaluate, and yes, evaluation can easily be a waste of time.

THE KEY TO GOOD EVALUATION

The answer to this conundrum is to *know what to evaluate,* and this is based on what you are going to do with the evaluation.

First, if doing evaluation means you get to keep your job, then by all means do evaluation. This may be a bit of an overstatement, but basically, if your manager or some other manager needs to see that the trainees liked the course, then evaluate for that. If this or that person needs to know that the trainees learned something, then evaluate for that. If the big boss wants to know whether your training was cost-effective, then evaluate for that. But know *why* you are evaluating, *who* your evaluation audience is, and *what* they

want to know before you start. Sound familiar? If not, go back to Chapter 2 and begin the whole design process again.

Evaluation is a lot like analysis. In fact, in really well-designed training systems it is difficult to see where evaluation ends and the next round of analysis begins. But for now, let's just deal with the concepts mentioned above. Know why you are evaluating, who you are evaluating for, and what they want to know, and then design your evaluation for that purpose.

For the most part, when others ask whether your training did the job, what they really want to know is whether it is helping the organization to meet its goals. If you have followed our instructional design approach, you should be able to link the training back through test questions, content, objectives, and tasks, all the way to corporate needs. So if your trainees learned, the training was effective, although you may need to do a little more than just say so to convince others.

This Evaluation's for You

But what if you are evaluating for yourself as the instructional designer? What do you evaluate then, and how? The answer to this is even simpler. If you are only evaluating your training for its own sake, let the training tell you what to evaluate—and the time you have to spend doing evaluation instead of the other things expected of you.

For example, one tried-and-true method of evaluation is the *class reaction sheet,* often known as the opinionnaire, and even more disparagingly known as the "smile sheet." We've all filled out dozens of these. Ever wonder what happens to them? Well, sometimes they are looked at; sometimes statistical analysis is done on them and they are summarized; and some are filed away in drawers and never see the light of day again. You might think it's a waste, but not necessarily. Remember our key to good evaluation. If the reason for this reaction sheet evaluation was to do it so that there was proof it was done, because someone might ask to see these evaluations some day, then it served its purpose.

But what if you planned to give this course again next year, and you were interested in which topics the trainees thought were covered well and which were not. Now your course has told you what to evaluate. Or perhaps in the next iteration you will only need three trainers, not the current six. Do you hear what your course is asking you to evaluate?

Obviously, asking questions such as "Were there enough breaks?" "Was the room too hot or too cold?" and "Did you like the donuts?" won't help you gather information about content, but the right questions will. And if

you want to know whether the same facility would be a good choice for next time, or the same bakery, then these other questions might be valid as well.

Or, if your course tells you that for it to be successful your trainees must take what they've learned and apply it to the job (remember the objectives from back in the design phase), then you need to evaluate its success by determining whether the trainees did transfer the skills to the job. This may require observation instead of a smile sheet; in fact, you may not use an opinionnaire at all for this training if it doesn't tell you what you need to know. Observation is the type of evaluation that your course demands, and so that's what you want to do.

Thinking this way about evaluation even answers the age-old question of "to test or not to test." Put philosophy and sociology and all the rest aside. If your training, through its objectives, says that success is measured by knowledge retention or skills mastery, then the right kind of test, as we discussed in Chapter 4, is the right kind of evaluation. If these things, or the other things that tests measure, are not important, then neither is a test.

There is another old saying: "Don't ask a question you really don't want to know the answer to." This works very well in marriages, and to some extent in instructional design evaluation as well. Let's change it to read: "Don't ask evaluation questions that nobody (including yourself) needs or cares to know the answers to." Know *who will review* your evaluation data and *what data* he or she wants. This will tell you what you need to capture, and how and when to capture it.

To make this whole evaluation thing simple, try asking yourself these five questions:

- Why do I want to evaluate?
- What am I going to evaluate?
- Who should I involve as part of the evaluation?
- How am I going to do the evaluation?
- When should I do the evaluation?

If you cannot come up with reasonable answers for these five questions that support each other when taken as a whole, you might want to rethink the whole idea.

What we have just discussed is in itself a rapid design shortcut. Don't play "follow the leader" by evaluating everything you can. Only evaluate what you need to evaluate—what there is a good "why" for. Otherwise,

forget it. You'll save tons of design time, record-keeping time, and a lot of headaches.

TYPES OF EVALUATION

From the discussion above, you may have discerned that there are four major types of evaluation. We've already mentioned them all and discussed a couple in some of the other chapters, but here they are, in order of popularity.

- Trainee reaction to the course
- Skills and knowledge mastery and retention *(same concepts, just different timing)*
- Transfer to the job, which can also be defined as improvements in job performance
- Return on investment/corporate goal fulfillment

This system of evaluation was created by Donald Kirkpatrick, and he assigned levels to each type of evaluation. By levels, it looks something like this:

Level 1: Reaction

Level 2: Learning

Level 3: Behavior

Level 4: Results

Some authors have split some of these, added to this system and rearranged it, the most common change being a fifth level added in which the results level is broken out into corporate goal fulfillment and ROI, so it looks something like this:

Level 1: Reaction

Level 2: Learning

Level 3: Application

Level 4: Business Impact

Level 5: Return on Investment (ROI)

Let's look at each level in turn more closely.

Level 1: Trainee Reaction to the Course

As we've discussed, this is the most used and probably most abused type of evaluation. Many designers do it, for no better reason than they think it *should*

be done, and then have no idea what to do with the data. Some good reasons for doing this type of evaluation might be:

- You are giving this particular course again and want to know what was received well and what was not
- You are thinking of using the trainer again and want information on the trainees' opinion of him or her
- You are the trainer and want to know what you can do better
- You are going to revise the course and want information on what you should revise
- You want to know what the trainees thought about certain aspects of the course (activities, exercises, etc.)
- Someone or something is forcing you to do this type of evaluation (boss, accrediting agency, etc.)

Ways to Do It

For all the above reasons except the last one, you should design an evaluation instrument that asks the trainees exactly what you want to know. If it's about the trainer, ask about the trainer. If it's about donut freshness, ask about donuts. The worst thing you can do is have a general trainee reaction instrument that asks a little about a lot of things and so tells you very little about anything (but does keep you busy collating and summarizing data).

The exception to this rule is that last bullet. For this category, develop and have approved a reaction instrument that you use every time. If you think you can actually get some use out of it, frontload it with the questions you really need to ask, but otherwise just collect the data and have it ready and statistically manipulated when asked.

These written surveys come in all sorts of styles with three-choice answers (good, bad, indifferent), four-choice answers (all the time, some of the time, occasionally, never), five-choice answers, and so on. They are all pretty much the same and none is really any better than any other, although there are those who believe an odd number is best and others who fight for the even.

Pick a type of answer that you are comfortable with, and make sure your questions all match the answers, that is, read your questions and the possible answers to ensure that the answers make sense for the type of question you wrote.

You might use an answer format in which the trainees write a paragraph or two (or ten!) on what they thought of particular course aspects, but these are hard to summarize and often not worth the effort. Leaving a place

for comments at the end of a multiple-choice type evaluation works just as well.

You don't even have to use an instrument at all. You might pick random trainees and conduct an interview, or simply request a show of hands for a series of questions that you ask at the end of the class.

One of the best general reaction instruments I've ever seen was three questions asked verbally at the end of the class, with the answers written on any old piece of paper the trainees happened to have. Here it is.

1. Rate this class on a scale of 1 to 5.
2. State the one thing you liked best about the class.
3. State the one thing you would most like to change about the class.

I sometimes add a fourth:

4. What do you think was the most important thing you learned from the class?

If you like a bit more formality, here is another four-question Level 1 instrument that the learners can answer simply yes or no, that I think works well:

1. The instructor was well prepared and organized, and did an effective job of facilitating the material.
2. The course contained the appropriate amount and level of information.
3. I gained new knowledge that I did not previously have.
4. I will be able to apply what I learned here on the job.

You can take these questions, add a 1 through 4 scale and a place for further comments, and have a pretty good paper Level 1 instrument as well. Short, to the point, and about as much information as you are likely to need, or receive, from a reaction evaluation.

The key issue in trainee reaction evaluation is to make sure you ask questions (1) that the trainees have the expertise to answer, (2) that are important parts of the training design, and (3) that you control. If you have no control over an aspect, it's not worth asking a question about.

Here are some other examples of reaction evaluation instruments. Note that the questions in each of them may not all be valid all the time, so customize them according to the comments we just made concerning the key issues.

REACTION INSTRUMENT 1

For each statement below, circle the response that best indicates your opinion.

1. Quality of the material	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
2. Ability of the facilitator	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
3. Usefulness of the content	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
4. Quality of the training facility	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
5. Relation to your job	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
6. Quality of the media (slides, video, etc.)	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
7. Practice sessions	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
8. Fulfillment of objectives	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
9. Meeting of your training needs	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent
10. Overall impression	Poor	Fair	Good	Very Good	Excellent

Comments:

REACTION INSTRUMENT 2

Use the scale below to indicate your opinion on each of the following statements.

3 = agree 2 = neutral 1= disagree

1. This course was relevant to what I do on the job. ___
2. I was able to master the course objectives. ___
3. The course was interesting. ___
4. The course gave me practical information. ___
5. The course materials helped me in my learning. ___
6. The role plays were useful activities. ___
7. The trainer helped make the learning easier. ___
8. We had the time to complete all the course material properly. ___
9. The course was well organized. ___
10. Overall, the course was worth the time I spent in it. ___

Comments:

REACTION INSTRUMENT 3

This session:

1. Was taught well	6 5 4 3 2 1	Was poorly taught
2. Had value for me	6 5 4 3 2 1	Was worthless
3. Was well organized	6 5 4 3 2 1	Seemed disorganized
4. Was too easy	6 5 4 3 2 1	Was too difficult
5. Had enough skills practice	6 5 4 3 2 1	Needed more skills practice
6. Went too quickly	6 5 4 3 2 1	Went too slowly
7. Was related to my job	6 5 4 3 2 1	Was not related to my job
8. Was active	6 5 4 3 2 1	Was passive
9. Met its objectives	6 5 4 3 2 1	Missed its objectives
10. Met my needs	6 5 4 3 2 1	Did not meet my needs

Comments:

REACTION INSTRUMENT 4

Course Name: Course Type:

Date: Venue:

Please rate the following statements on a scale of 1 to 5 by circling the appropriate score.

1 = Strongly Disagree 2 = Disagree 3 = Neutral 4 = Agree 5 = Strongly Agree

Content						*Comments*
The course met the stated training objectives	1	2	3	4	5	
The flow and pace of the course supported my learning needs	1	2	3	4	5	
The structure of the course was logical	1	2	3	4	5	
The materials were appropriate to support the course objectives	1	2	3	4	5	
I will use the materials for reference purposes following completion of this course	1	2	3	4	5	

Venue, Materials, and Equipment						*Additional Comments*
The venue and meeting room were good and suitable for the course	1	2	3	4	5	
The equipment (audio/visual, IT, etc.) was good and suitable for the course	1	2	3	4	5	

Instructor						*Additional Comments*
The instructor was knowledgeable in the subject matter	1	2	3	4	5	
The instructor kept the group engaged throughout the event	1	2	3	4	5	
The instructor delivered an effective training event	1	2	3	4	5	

Administration						*Additional Comments*
It was easy to enroll in this course	1	2	3	4	5	
The logistical and/or administrative support provided was good	1	2	3	4	5	

Overall						*Additional Comments*
The course met my learning needs	1	2	3	4	5	

General
Which aspects of the course were most useful?   What improvements would you make?

You can make your Level 1 evaluations more effective by adding technology to them. Even if your delivery system is not a form of e-learning, you can have your tests put online for the learners to complete as well. There are software packages that will allow you to do this and that will gather statistics on your questions as well for item analysis. They allow you to give immediate feedback to learners on what they missed, and can even be used as a diagnostic tool.

Pass out your Level 1 evaluation instrument at the start of a class and go over it quickly so the learners have it in mind as they go through the day. In a multi-day class, use an evaluation each day, or keep reminding the learners at the start of each day about it.

For long-term development courses, periodic Level 1 evaluations are critical. (See the example of a blended Level 1 evaluation at the end of this chapter. This was done quarterly for a two-year program, with the names of the activities changed to reflect the quarter.)

Self-Instructional Reaction Evaluations

In self-instructional courses, one aspect that is usually included in the survey is the amount of time spent by the trainee in doing the course. This is different for each trainee, but there should be an average time that you were aiming at when you started your design. This is the place to find out whether your estimate was accurate or whether the course is too difficult (or too easy) for that particular time frame.

You can also ask the trainees whether they thought the course was too short or too long, but be sure to give them a place to explain why, as this will help you redesign the training if necessary. Just as a note: this question is often asked for classroom-based courses as well. I never have figured out why, and I don't ask myself, but if you think it gives you some important information, make it part of your classroom survey. I prefer to ask whether there was time enough to complete the activities and master the material.

Since most of self-instruction has migrated to e-learning, here is an example of an e-learning Level I instrument. It is easy to modify for non-technology based self-instruction by deleting the technology questions.

E-LEARNING LEVEL 1 EVALUATION INSTRUMENT

Course Name:

Course Type: e-Learning

Date completed:

Rate the following statements on a scale of 1 through 5 by circling the appropriate score.

1 = Strongly Disagree 2 = Disagree 3 = Neutral 4 = Agree 5 = Strongly Agree

	Usability Questions							Additional Comments
	It was easy to log in to this course	1	2	3	4	5		
	It was easy to navigate through the course	1	2	3	4	5		
	The setting in which I took the course was appropriate	1	2	3	4	5		
	The course controls were easy to use	1	2	3	4	5		
	I was able to access the e-learning when I needed it	1	2	3	4	5		
	The amount of time it took me to complete this e-learning was acceptable	1	2	3	4	5		

	Engagement Questions							Additional Comments
	There was the right amount of interaction	1	2	3	4	5		
	The content was well presented	1	2	3	4	5		
	The length of the course was appropriate	1	2	3	4	5		
	The activities reinforced the content	1	2	3	4	5		
	The e-learning was engaging and interesting	1	2	3	4	5		
	Feedback in the form of self-quizzes and activities helped validate my learning	1	2	3	4	5		

	Content Questions							Additional Comments
	The e-learning met the stated training objectives	1	2	3	4	5		
	The structure and flow of the course supported my learning needs	1	2	3	4	5		
	The content was logically organized	1	2	3	4	5		
	The graphics and illustrations used were meaningful and assisted in my learning	1	2	3	4	5		
	The scope of the content was appropriate to my needs	1	2	3	4	4		
	The content was easy to understand	1	2	3	4	5		
	The examples helped in understanding the content	1	2	3	4	5		
	The content is directly applicable to my job	1	2	3	4	5		
	The quality of the audio/voice-over was good	1	2	3	4	5		
	The questions and exercises in the course were set at the right level	1	2	3	4	5		
	Overall the e-learning was an effective learning experience	1	2	3	4	5		

What specifically did you like about the course?

Was there anything incorrect or wrong in the course?

What aspects of the course were most useful?

What improvements to the course would you make?

Level 2: Skills and Knowledge Mastery and Retention (Learning)

We've already spent some time discussing this type of evaluation. Basically, it is the learner evaluation process that we started with criterion-based question writing back in Chapter 4. In fact, it is the only learner evaluation process we will discuss. Everything else is evaluation of the learning intervention.

In developing your facilitator guide you decided where and when you wanted these tests. Your objectives told you what kind of questions you needed to create and what type of tests you needed to construct. As an evaluation process, the information on who mastered what and who did not and how many they had right and wrong tells you much about the effectiveness of your material and your instruction.

Your aggregate test scores indicate whether the content has been successfully transmitted to the trainees, both individually and as a group, and whether they can perform as required based on your analysis. If this is not important to you, you may need to go back and ask why you are doing the training in the first place. There is an old adage that states: "If it's worth teaching, it's worth testing." We've already noted that this may not be true in all cases, but it is in the vast majority.

These tests, or at least the test questions, can also be used to evaluate retention. Simply administer another test later. When you do this depends on the length of time you want to check—thirty days, ninety days, six months, whatever. But don't forget our prime directive: Don't ask if no one needs to know.

Evaluating Your Skills Evaluation

You may also want to evaluate your tests themselves, or at least the questions that make them up. The simplest way to do this is to keep track of the questions missed. If you see the same question missed a lot, you should look back at the objective and the content related to the question. You may find that a question was written poorly, that the content did not cover this point in enough detail, or that the objective simply does not make sense. If any of these are true, you'll need to change whatever is wrong or out of synch. This is another one of those places in instructional design where evaluation leads you back into analysis again, and the circle is complete.

Some evaluations in this category also look at the time various levels of trainees spend taking a test. Usually, more experienced individuals take less time for the test. If this is not true for your test, it may indicate that the questions are too difficult or are off the mark in relation to the job.

Everything we just said, although aimed toward paper-and-pencil tests, is also true of your performance tests, so use them and evaluate them in the same way when needed. However, remember that the best performance tests are those that are conducted in an environment as close to actual job conditions as possible.

When testing high-level knowledge using multiple-choice scenario-type questions, check your distractors by writing a statement or two on why they are wrong. You can even give the statements to the participants after the test, and perhaps start an interesting debate.

Do away with some testing by using a pre-post self-assessment directly based on the course objectives.

Level 3: Transfer to the Job/Improvements in Job Performance (Application)

The third type of evaluation, often termed application, is evaluating how, or if, the training was transferred to the actual job, and whether the job is being performed at a higher level now because of the training. This is a popular aspect of evaluation to talk about, and you can see why if you remember that way back in the beginning we were tying our training to job performance. However, it is not done quite as often as it is talked about, mostly because it is quite time-consuming. Also, because it is done after the training, it is seldom monitored too closely because of time and resource constraints.

Basically, transfer to the job tries to answer the question: "Are the trainees using the knowledge and skills taught in the class in their everyday work?" You can also evaluate whether their work has improved (productivity increased) due to this transfer, although this is also considered part of the next evaluation category.

Methods

It is often possible to intertwine this type of evaluation into activities that begin in class. For example, a contract or action plan that incorporates the important learnings is developed in class, then shared with the supervisor, and reviewed (read "evaluated") at a later date.

The supervisor can also play a role in another evaluation method for this category, the *post-training interview*. This is a simple process of interviewing the trainees and their supervisors some time after the training has occurred and asking whether they have seen the transfer to the workplace of the skills that were taught in the training. You may ask this a number of different ways, but the basic idea is still the same.

You can also perform this type of evaluation through a written instrument that you send to trainees, supervisors, managers, customers, and other assorted individuals who might know. You will need to be very specific with your questions or the data you collect will not be worth much. Restating the objectives as pure behaviors and asking whether these have been observed is usually a good approach.

Once again, the simplest approach usually works best. A five-question "transfer to the job" evaluation might go something like this:

1. Did the training address the requirements of the job?
2. Were the trainees performing the job requirements competently before the training?
3. Are the trainees now performing the job requirements competently?
4. What are the trainees still not doing correctly?
5. Were there any unintended consequences of the training?

Another quick method for doing a Level 3 evaluation is to develop a five-question yes-or-no answer instrument that asks the learners and their supervisors whether various concepts that were taught are being used on the job. Send these questions every six weeks or so for six months to a year to obtain some trending data and also for reinforcement.

Here are some examples of transfer to job instruments using the objectives listed in Chapter 4. Note that all of these forms can be given to the employee, colleague, or supervisor.

TRANSFER TO JOB INSTRUMENT 1

For each of the performances listed below, circle the number that indicates how well the employee performed this task on the job before training and after, with a 4 indicating very well, and a 1 meaning not well.

	Before Training	After Training
Choose the correct tread size	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4
Reverse the interior matrix	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4
Lay on the steel belt	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4
Sequence the assembly machine	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4
Trim excess rubber	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4
Inspect for proper seal	1 2 3 4	1 2 3 4

Other comments concerning trainee performance after training:

TRANSFER TO JOB INSTRUMENT 2

Circle the response you feel most accurately describes your ability to perform each of the tasks below on the job:

Choose the correct tread size	Did well before training	Do as well now	Do better now
Reverse the interior matrix	Did well before training	Do as well now	Do better now
Lay on the steel belt	Did well before training	Do as well now	Do better now
Sequence the assembly machine	Did well before training	Do as well now	Do better now
Trim excess rubber	Did well before training	Do as well now	Do better now
Inspect for proper seal	Did well before training	Do as well now	Do better now

Other comments concerning task performance after training:

TRANSFER TO JOB INSTRUMENT 3

On a scale of from 1 percent to 100 percent, estimate the employee's ability to complete each task before and after training:

	Before Training	After Training
Choose the correct tread size	_____	_____
Reverse the interior matrix	_____	_____
Lay on the steel belt	_____	_____
Sequence the assembly machine	_____	_____
Trim excess rubber	_____	_____
Inspect for proper seal	_____	_____

Other comments concerning trainee performance after training:

As a shortcut you might also use your performance checklists as a transfer evaluation. Simply re-title them, then go to the job site some period of time after the training (how long is up to you), and either observe or ask whether the performances are being exhibited on the job.

You can create more general Level 3 instruments and use e-mail to distribute them. For these, simply restate the objectives as necessary, and for each ask the following questions and ask the respondents to check the proper response:

Before the class, my level of knowledge on this performance was	High	Average	Low
After class, my level of knowledge on this performance was	High	Average	Low
Before class, my level of ability to utilize this performance was	High	Average	Low
After class, my level of ability to utilize this performance was	High	Average	Low

You might even add a really general question to the e-mail such as:

I feel I am using _____ percent of the knowledge and skills I gained in this class.

Other general questions you might add to a Level 3 e-mail evaluation are

- Have you had the opportunity to use the skills and knowledge you acquired on the job?
- Did you use them?
- If not, what stopped you from using them?
- If so, what can you do on the job now that you couldn't before the class?
- How often have you used the knowledge and skills you acquired in class back on the job?
- What was the most useful thing you learned to do in the course?

A new and very interesting approach to Level 3 evaluation is to use the questions above, or something like them, as postings on a corporate training evaluation electronic bulletin board. This method works particularly well for younger learners who are used to the bulletin board process.

Of course, the replies are always anonymous, and if you allow reactions for others to the postings you end up with a lot of electronic gripe sessions if you don't design your questions well, but the evaluation data you can gain from this methodology, and the increased retention that is a natural outcome of the process, can make it more than worthwhile.

Here is one more Level 3 instrument designed specifically for managers.

LEVEL 3 EVALUATION INSTRUMENT FOR MANAGERS

1. Have you observed your report using the knowledge and skills gained through the program on the job? If yes, please give examples:	Yes	No

2. Which of the following topics covered in the program do you feel your report has mastered and is using on the job?
   Please check all that apply.
   ☐
   ☐
   ☐
   ☐
   ☐
   ☐

3. Do you feel that the work done in this program has made your report a more effective employee? Yes No
   If yes, please give an example.

4. What other topics do you feel your report needs to master through this program to become even more effective on the job?

Level 4: Results (Business Impact)

This level of evaluation is concerned with your training's effect on the goals and objectives of the business. This is not as statistical a measure as ROI; in fact, it has little to do with numbers at all, except perhaps profit numbers. If you did a good job back in Chapter 2 of linking corporate needs with your training, then this evaluation is a simple process of taking some of the credit for meeting those needs (or goals) through your training. If you did not spend the time in the beginning of your design work doing this, you will have to try to "retrofit" the training to the corporate goals in order to do this type of

evaluation. Retrofitting works sometimes, and becomes a real stretch at others. If you plan on doing this aspect of this type of evaluation, start at the beginning as described in Chapter 2.

One hopes that you've just had another one of those "blinding flashes of the obvious" and said: "Hey, I have to start planning for evaluation back when I start planning my training!" No doubt about it! You've probably also seen once again the connective nature of instructional design. Everything is related somewhere along the line, from analysis, through material development, to evaluation. You really need to think of your training design as one piece of cloth made up of a number of interconnecting threads.

When doing Level 4 evaluation, some of the data points that might be assessed depending on the corporate goals are as follows:

Customer satisfaction	Stakeholder satisfaction
Employee satisfaction	Investor satisfaction
Regulatory compliance	Time to market
% market share	Turnover
Diversity	Health and safety
Bench strength	Profit per employee
Business metrics	Human capital metrics
Financial reviews	Growth/capability measures

Of course, this isn't a complete list by any means; there are as many possibilities as there are corporate goals and objectives. However, this should give you an idea of what Level 4 is trying to evaluate.

Following are some questions you might ask management (and yourself) as part of a Level 4 evaluation:

1. Why did we need to offer this program?
2. What business drivers were affected by this offering?
3. What are the business performance gaps that this offering was intended to address?
4. Which KPIs were affected positively by this program?
5. What metrics related to the business drivers/KPIs that this program affected are available and collectable?
6. Do the program objectives directly relate to the business drivers/performance gaps?

You might have looked at these questions and said, "Where have I seen something like this before?" If you answered that it was when we were doing organizational analysis or deciding on what training needs to address, give yourself a gold star.

Both Levels 3 and 4 evaluation can be quite time and resource consuming, and in many cases difficult to implement. An alternative is to ask what are termed predictive questions during your Level 1 evaluation. These questions are usually done using a Likert scale with the end points being "strongly agree" and "strongly disagree," and look something like this:

Level 3

- I will be able to apply many of the skills I've learned here to my job
- My job performance will increase due to what I've learned here

Level 4

- This training will positively impact the following corporate goals and processes:
  - Operational excellence
  - Production
  - Customer satisfaction
  - Our two sales KPIs

Predictive Level 3 and Level 4 works best when you're asking the questions at intervals (three to six months for a year after the training) and do some trend analysis. I have to admit that I wasn't a fan of this evaluation technique until I saw the trend analysis and did some of my own interviewing to follow up. It does work.

Level 5: Return on Investment

In its simplest form, ROI is how much you've spent on the training and how much you will save or the company will make because of it, converted into a ratio.

Although the amount you've spent on the training is usually pretty easy to determine, what you have saved or made because of it is often much less clear. Beyond simple profit gains or increased productivity, there are aspects such as increased efficiency, quality improvements, better personnel performance (less absenteeism, reduced grievances), and decreased accidents or down time to consider, and some less tangible processes as well, such as increases in capability and/or capacity, customer and employee satisfaction, increased teamwork, reduced conflict, and possible or realized growth potential.

There are some intangibles in the "how much you spent" category, too. For example, many designers forget to factor in time off the job for the employee while attending training, particularly as it relates to benefits costs or lost productivity in their cost estimate. You might even want to factor in the cost of wasted training investments for training the wrong person at the wrong time, or the cost of lost opportunities for sales, or satisfying current customers because the trainees were not trained properly, were trained too late, or were never trained at all.

This gets pretty esoteric after a while and sometimes degenerates into a best-guess process, so make sure that if you are going to do ROI you can find hard, valid data to use in your analysis.

We discussed some of this ROI process in Chapter 2 as part of your pre-analysis work when doing a cost/benefit analysis to decide whether the training should even be attempted. If you did a cost/benefit analysis then, evaluating ROI will be pretty easy now. If you did not, but are now interested in the process as part of evaluation, go back to Chapter 2 and use the methods described there. Just remember that your new goal is to evaluate your program's success in relation to ROI, not to analyze the logic of doing the program to begin with.

Your cost/benefit analysis will allow you to produce a basic ROI as a ratio of the benefits to the cost expressed as a single number. The formula looks something like this:

$$\text{ROI} = \text{Net Program Benefits} \times 100/\text{Program Cost}$$

Where the net program benefits is calculated by subtracting program cost from the dollar amount assigned to the benefits of the program.

Remember that positive ROIs are good, and the more positive the better. How positive a number you want depends on your ROI goal. This is often set by upper management. If it is not, any positive number is good. Even a break-even goal is good in some circumstances. A negative ROI means that *as far as can be calculated* the company is not receiving enough of a benefit to justify the expenditure for your training program.

Don't forget that "as far as can be calculated" phrase. There may be a number of reasons for doing training (employee satisfaction, long-term development, accreditation) that cannot be expressed in dollar values and so do not produce a valid ROI. Employee orientation, software training, new employee technical skills training are all required in any company, but their ROI is difficult to determine, even if you assume that the company will go out of business without them. This makes ROI a less than ultimate measure of a training program's success.

In an ROI evaluation it is most imperative that you isolate the effects of your training solution and attempt to express them in terms of numbers, and that you look at as many possible data points as you can in relation to these effects. Often these effects are not numerical, however, and then you need to use conversion factors for your ROI evaluation. These factors can be obtained from books, by examining historical or industry-wide costs, by forecasting trends, through customer input, by expert estimation, or by using contributor and supervisor estimates. They may not always be the same across companies, or even within a company if one department functions differently from another, and it is better if you use more than one source for the conversion factors, possibly averaging them if they are significantly far apart.

Effects can also be gleaned from business metrics (revenue, profit, cash flow, margins, etc.), HR statistics, internal performance measures, and industry comparisons, but once again you will need to isolate the effects of your program on these statistics and more often than not use conversion factors again.

If you know that you will want to evaluate for ROI, it is helpful to gather baseline information on the aspects that you will use to measure your gains from training. For example, your company may keep records of the scrap rates from various machines. By comparing the scrap rate before training to the scrap rate after the training, you will have one measure of ROI. If dollar amounts can be assigned to the scrap, annual savings can be computed, further augmenting your ROI process.

For another type of training, you may want to capture any records that document the number of times employees in an area are "written up." After your supervisory training, you can see whether this has changed. If you have information about how much lost time is incurred during the process of writing up an employee (by management and employees) and multiply the time by the cost per hour, you can use the figure as another measure for your ROI.

EVALUATION OF SELF-INSTRUCTION PROGRAMS

Self-instruction, particularly in technology deliveries such as e-learning, is becoming a more and more important part of training design. If you have designed your training as self-instruction, no matter what the delivery system, you may want to do a special form of evaluation that looks a little deeper into the self-instructional aspects of your program. This type of evaluation is usually divided into five parts: sufficiency, usability, currency, compliance, and effectiveness.

Sufficiency

The first aspect to evaluate is the *sufficiency* of your training by asking the basic question: "Is all the information that is necessary to the training in the program?" You can ask this of the trainees who have completed the program (after they have been using the training on the job for a period of time), their supervisors, and other subject-matter experts. If you did an SME review before implementing your self-instructional training, you will already have some SME feedback, but look for new ways to do this post-review.

You can do your asking by personal visit (this way you can see what's going on as well as listen), phone, e-mail, or through a formal (or informal) opinionnaire. Be sure if you use the opinionnaire approach that you keep your questions focused on the sufficiency issue. This is probably the wrong audience to answer other types of evaluation questions, and nothing is more worthless than an evaluation that asks the wrong audience the wrong questions.

Following is an example of a simple self-instructional sufficiency instrument.

STORE MANAGER QUESTIONNAIRE

Below is a list of all the self-instructional CD-ROM packages in use by your employees. Place an X in the box next to the ones that you have reviewed or completed. Then tell us whether there is any information missing from any package that you feel would be helpful to a new employee.

☐ Orientation

☐ Inter-store Transfers

☐ Merchandising

☐ 1:1 Ordering

☐ Order Receiving

☐ Outside Vendors

☐ Photofinishing

☐ Recalls

Other comments on content of programs:

Usability

The second aspect of a self-instructional package to evaluate is usability, that is: "Was the training package as easy to use as possible?" The audience for this aspect is, obviously, the users, your trainees. There is no one question for this aspect, and the questions you do ask will be dependent on your particular delivery process. They may include such queries as:

- Was the text hard to read?
- Were there problems obtaining the necessary supplies?
- Was the layout of the screens effective for reading and navigation?
- Did you have trouble getting onto the network?
- Could you find a facilitator when needed?

Once again, you might use a personal visit, a phone call, or a questionnaire to collect this information. An example of a usability instrument follows.

SURVEY ON SELF-INSTRUCTIONAL PACKAGES

This survey is designed to give the Training Department an idea of how the self-instructional learning packages are working. There are no right or wrong answers to these questions; just tell us how they work in your store. Circle "yes" or "no" in each case.

1.	Is the print portion of the packages easy to read?	Yes	No
2.	Are the instructions in introductory screens clear and easy to follow?	Yes	No
3.	Were the activities and practice exercises "doable" in your store?	Yes	No
4.	Did the activities and practice exercises help you perform the actual task?	Yes	No
5.	Did the objectives give you a clear picture of what you were to know and be able to do at the end of the program?	Yes	No
6.	On the average, how long does it take you to complete a package?	Yes	No
7.	Are you usually able to complete a package from start to finish without interruptions?	Yes	No
8.	How often does the store manager check on your progress when you're completing a package? _____		

9. Where do you usually go to complete a package?
   _____

10. When you finish a package, does the store manager watch you perform the procedure before you're expected to do it on your own? yes no

---

Currency

One major problem with all self-instructional programs is that they can rapidly become dated. This is not as true of classroom or on-the-job training, as the trainer can make changes literally "on the fly." However, your DVD or CBT package must be called back in and redone if changes are necessary. That is why its important in self-instruction to evaluate its currency. The main question here is: "Are the materials in your package up-to-date?" The people you ask may include your SMEs or the managers, but a better source is to find the people responsible for policy and procedure or job task changes and ask them.

The best method is to keep track of whoever might be making changes to your program content and to give them a call periodically. Ask them to put you on their distribution list for all changes. It is particularly important to make these contacts when it is time to make a revision, but "just checking" calls at various times is also a good idea.

Compliance

The next aspect is *compliance*, which evaluates whether your package is being implemented according to your plan. If you are only responsible for a singular self-instructional package, compliance is not a major issue; but if you have a number of packages, what you might call a self-instructional system, you will want to find out who is and is not doing the training, how they are doing it if they are, and why they are not if they are not. You can find out this information from users, from their supervisors, and from your facilitators. You can also look at training records to see an overall picture of compliance, but you'll have to go to the source to learn the why's and why not's. Another good way to check compliance is simply to observe and ask questions.

Effectiveness

The last evaluation aspect for a self-instructional program is *effectiveness*. The questions here are concerned with mastery of objectives by the trainees.

Remember that, in a good instructional design, if the objectives are mastered, then the training was effective—at least as far as getting the right content across to the right people.

For this aspect, you only need to go back to your trainee evaluations for the data. You might also want to do a little spot checking by asking some of the trainees how they mastered the objectives. These two pieces should give you what you need to know.

Of course, in most cases effectiveness also relates to using what has been learned back on the job. The methods for doing this are pretty much the same for self-instructional or instructor-led training, as discussed earlier.

REVISIONS: WHAT TO DO WITH WHAT YOU'VE LEARNED

A new task that often comes from evaluation is revision. In most organizations things change rapidly, and you will need to revise your training to keep up with those changes. We mentioned earlier the importance of considering revision possibilities when choosing your delivery system, so you already have a fair idea of its significance.

Any of the evaluation data you collect might be useful for the revision process, as there are really two types of revisions that might happen: *as-needed* and *planned*.

As-Needed Revisions

As-needed is what most people think of first when you mention revision. You usually do an as-needed revision because you find your content is out-of-date. This could be because a policy changed, a procedure was revised, or a whole new system was introduced. Whatever the reason, an as-needed revision may mean a change in your facilitator guide, participant materials, or the whole darned DVD.

You can't stop as-needed revisions; in most situations you won't even be able to control them. You simply need to keep in close contact with those people who may create a change that will necessitate an as-needed revision. In this way you might at least know that one is coming.

Planned Revisions

It becomes a much more serious issue if your training needs revising and you aren't aware of it. To guard against this, you need a systematic plan for periodically revising your training. If you're doing periodic evaluations such as those discussed earlier, then these should be the impetus for your planned revisions. The revisions will be based on the data obtained through the evaluation.

Timing of Planned Revisions

There is no simple formula for doing revision planning. It is dependent on your program's content and your company environment. The amount of change that occurs to policy and procedures in some companies requires that planned revisions occur at least every six months. I worked in the nuclear power field for a time, where each course was revised every year. For other courses with more stable content such as management training, two or three years is a good time period between revisions. Technical subjects need planned revisions more often, basic topics less. Companies that are fast growing or in crisis will demand shorter revision cycles. Stable companies can use longer ones.

Decide what is best for each of your programs, then set a schedule, and—most important—keep to your schedule. It's easy to put off a revision if you're in the middle of a big project and it comes up on your schedule. You might just give it a quick look and say, "Well, I don't think anything has changed, so we'll wait till the next round." *This is the last thing you want to do*.

The purpose of planned revisions is to find out whether anything has happened *that you don't know about*. If nothing did, that's fine, and your revision becomes simply a review with no changes made. But if something did change, and your program doesn't, you will have lessened its effectiveness, and its usefulness for your trainees.

Information for Revisions

There are a number of sources of revision information. These include your own evaluation process, policy and procedure changes that come via inter-office snail mail or e-mail, memos, meetings, and many others.

Your best source for good revision information is the initiator of your training, that is, the individual or department that requested the training in the first place. Depending on how you set up the course, there may be a course owner, that is, someone in the requesting group who is responsible for overseeing its continued implementation. This individual is a good place to start and can provide you with other SMEs if needed.

In larger organizations, there may be a course administrator in the continued implementation role. This is another excellent source of information for your revision needs.

It is critical that you ask the right people. As we discussed in the evaluation process, look for the people who know what is going on in their areas. Open lines of communication with them. If you can, work out a relationship in which they feel a responsibility for the information in your training program. One good idea I've seen used is to distribute a phone sticker with your number and e-mail address so you can be easily notified if a change in content occurs.

Decrease the time and complexity of your revision by reminding the SMEs that their job here is to check for currency and accuracy. Don't let them get involved in talking about the design or the class activities. Keep them on-point.

Other sources of information might include trainers, facilitators or site implementers for self-instructional programs, and field trainers. If you talk to these individuals as part of your evaluation process, be sure to keep in touch with them concerning revisions. As these people continuously work with the subject matter, they'll have first-hand knowledge of areas that are out-of-date or now contain erroneous information. I like to get as many of them as I can together as a group, live, telephonically, or otherwise, to discuss revision needs for the course.

Some questions I usually ask are

- What's going right with the course?
- What's going wrong?
- How is the timing, both overall and for specific sections?
- What needs to be changed?
- What needs to be augmented?
- What should we do for this revision that we didn't have time to do last time?
- What else?

Of course, one of the most important sources of revision information is the participants who have completed the program. I like to talk to a few directly, either in person or over the phone, and send another group an e-mail. My questions are usually pretty much the same:

- What aspects of the course worked well (be ready with some prompts as to what you mean by aspects)?
- What aspects could be done better?
- Are there any topics that should be added or dropped?
- Has the course made any difference in your on-the-job performance? (Not really a revision question, but I always want to know.)
- Do you have any other suggestions for the course?

Who Should Perform a Revision?

If you are a team of one, responsible for design, development, and instruction, then you will be the one who does the revising. However, if there are other resources available, you may want to have another person work on the revision.

He or she can often come at the topic with some fresh ideas. This is usually not as efficient as having the original designer revise the material, but can be more effective in the long run.

As usual, I think the answer is somewhere in between. Who does a revision is dependent on why the revision is being done. If it's simply a matter of looking at how up-to-date the material is, the original designer will be most efficient at adding, subtracting, or changing material. However, if usability or effectiveness is an issue, you might want to try a somewhat different approach from a new person.

A lot also depends on who is available to help, the time the person has, and the time you can afford in general to do revisions. The key is to consider the alternatives and needs before assigning revision work. Too often the original designer is the choice by default—and sometimes not the best choice at all.

Controlling Revisions

When the content has been revised, the next step is to make sure that everyone is using the latest revision of the course. This is particularly important in self-instructional courses, in which the stories of two, three, or even four revisions of the same program all floating around the same company are legend. I've had it happen more than once myself.

To guard against this, use a revision-tracking mechanism. For example, each of your programs should have a very visible revision number on it, preferably on the front or back cover of all print pieces and on the first screen of any e-learning material. You don't need codes or cryptic numbers: something as simple as "Rev. 1" or "Revision 2" and a date will be more than adequate. Some designers like to put a header or footer on each page with the revision number. This probably is not a bad idea, and with computers it is easy enough to do.

You will also need a way to inform your users of which revision is most current. If you have more than one trainer using your material, the best approach is to call in the old material and send out the new. In a learning center delivery process, your facilitator should find it easy to keep up with revisions. If you are using a distributed self-instructional delivery, where you have programs at sites in various locations, you will need a revision list that you keep current and send out often. In fact, this type of list is a good idea for any training system. You should have someone at each training site who is responsible for checking revisions. To formalize the process, you can have this person sign off on your revision list and return it to you. If you want to be even more formal, you can have out-of-date material returned to you.

In the nuclear industry, correct revisions are so critical to the training process that some facilities have a department whose only job is to keep

revisions up-to-date in the files and to check to make sure there are no invalid copies in the plant. I'm not suggesting that you go quite that far. However, if you are going to put the time and energy into doing revisions properly, be sure you work out a mechanism to ensure that the correct revisions are being used.

Of course, all of this means a lot less if you are a one-person operation, but it is still a good idea to keep track of your revisions in case this changes somewhere along the line, or someone else asks to use your program.

Following is a template for a course maintenance plan that I've used to help me keep track of review and revision plans.

COURSE MAINTENANCE PLANNING

Overview of Program

Current Status of Program

Program Delivery Schedule

Next Maintenance to Occur:

Maintenance Type:

- Review
- Refresh
- Full Revision

Next Full Revision Date:

Materials and Resources Required for Next Maintenance:

Other Revision Considerations

We discussed the relationship between revisions and delivery systems earlier, and if you did not consider it before now, you may be in deep trouble when a revision is needed. Costs of reshooting video, redoing computer animation, and so on, may make revisions almost impossible from a budgetary viewpoint. If so, you may need to go back to the drawing board and redo your entire training program now that a revision is necessary.

Another revision argument concerns whether to revise pieces or to revise the whole training program. Once again, this is particularly important with self-instructional materials. The answer is again dependent on you and the particular needs of your program(s). However, this decision affects everything else that goes into your training, from binding of print pieces to media choices and development, so be sure that you consider all the ramifications before you decide.

In anticipation of revisions, keep intact masters of all current materials stored where no one can use them or take them accidentally. I've found that you should also have a handy official revision copy of everything available and easily accessible. That way, when anyone thinks of something or finds out about something that needs to go into the next revision, it can be recorded where the reviser can find it.

This is true not only for printed materials, but for video scripts and storyboards, slide/tape programs, and computer materials as well. If your training program is large enough, I'd suggest a file drawer that has revision copies of everything that you have in current use and another locked one for your master copies. I used such a system when I had a staff of four designers working on thirty different self-instructional packages, and it functioned quite well. Even when one of my designers left, we had all her thoughts on how to revise her materials where we could find them for the next revision.

This pretty much ends our formal discussion of instructional design, or at least the ADDIE process in general. However, the title of this book is *Rapid Instructional Design*. We've given you a few ideas of how to speed up the process throughout the chapters, but we'll now take one more chapter to look at some more complex techniques for making instructional design less time-consuming. If you are an occasional designer or new to the field, many of these may be a little more than you can handle until you get some more design experience, but you might want to read on anyway to see what else is out there. For more experienced designers, we hope that Chapter 8 will provide a useful overview of the more common rapid instructional design techniques and whet your appetite for more information on those you find useful.

Chapters 9 through 11 will look at very specific delivery systems that have become, or are becoming, a major part of any designer's repertoire.

HINTS FOR EVALUATING

Classroom

- An evaluation plan should be based totally on company profits: dollars spent = new skills learned = behavior changed = performance changed = increased productivity = increased profits
- For a really well-considered evaluation, and to guard against the last-minute evaluation rush, give out your opinionnaire type evaluations at the start of the class so the trainees know what to look for; give them time every so often during the class to pull it out and make notes.
- If you have multiple trainers for a program, make sure each receives his or her own evaluation from the trainees.
- Never underestimate the power of a good lunch.

On-the-Job Training

- Here's one of my favorite evaluation scales for trainee reactionnaires of training and trainers:
  - Excellent
  - Exceeded my expectations
  - Met my expectations
  - Below my expectations
- Does the OJT program:
  - Identify the work tasks to be taught?
  - Have organized learning objectives?
  - Produce technical competence?
  - Develop social competencies as necessary?
  - Convey clear expectations of results to trainees?
  - Assess progress toward competency properly?
  - Provide feedback to all interested parties as required?
  - Provide clear teaching roles and responsibilities?
  - Provide trained trainers to handle the teaching role?
  - Support the trainers as necessary?

Self-Instruction

Here's an example of a form that can be part of your self-instructional package (SDL), completed by the site facilitator and sent back to you to monitor compliance. You could use this form with some modification for a technology-based self-instructional package or even use it electronically.

EVALUATION FOR SELF-INSTRUCTION

Complete this form by filling in the blank spaces. Return the completed form to _____ by _____ .

1. I gave the [title] _____ SDL package to [employee name] _____ .
2. The SDL package was completed in [time] _____ .
3. I had the trainee complete the SDL in the [location] _____ .
4. I checked back with the trainee every _____ minutes or so.
5. I spent [time spent] _____ providing a guided practice session with the trainee.
6. I recorded the trainee's name, SDL title, completion date, and my initials on the [form] _____.
7. In general, I feel that the [name of program] _____ will be [impression of program] _____.

Your Name: _____

Store Number:_____

Date:_____

An example of a form that can be used to gather evaluation data from site facilitators on how well a distance self-instructional program or system is operating is given next.

SELF-INSTRUCTIONAL LEARNING FACILITATOR SURVEY

We need your help in determining how well the [self-directed learning system title] is working now that the first packages have been in the field for almost a year. Please take five minutes to complete the questions below. Return this survey to [name of person and department]. Thank you for your time!

Region: _____ District: _____ Store: _____

Store Manager's Name (optional): _____

1. Have you used any of the SDL packages? Yes No
2. How many employees have completed one or more of the SDLs?
3. What is the average length of time it takes an employee to complete an SDL package?
4. Are there any SDL packages that are particularly difficult for associates to complete or understand? Be specific please:

5. Do you think the activities and practice sessions are realistic and helpful? Yes No
6. Are the instructions in the SDL packages clear and easy to follow? Yes No

   If not, why not?

7. When your employees are working through an SDL package, how often do they need help from you or other employees?

   Never Sometimes Frequently
8. Do you have any other comments about this self-directed learning system?

Here is a sample of a short trainee opinion survey for an e-learning course:

SAMPLE E-LEARNING TRAINEE OPINION SURVEY

1. Is your overall opinion of the course	favorable	not favorable	
2. Did the course prepare you for your job tasks?	Yes	No	
3. The course presentation was	interesting	boring	
4. The instructional segments were	the right size	too large	too small
5. Was it easy or difficult to exit and return to the course	easy	difficult	
6. The directions for how to use the course were	clear	confusing	
7. Compared to other multimedia programs I have used, this course was	better than	not as good as	
8. I found the material presented in this course	useful	a waste of time	
9. I would recommend that others take this course	Yes	No	
10. To make this course better I would:			

Multimedia Program Evaluation Questions You May Want to Ask

- Is the computer interface appropriate for the target audience?
- Does the content properly and completely match the objectives?
- Do the trainee evaluation processes match the objectives?
- Does the interactivity support and reinforce the learning?
- Do the multimedia pieces support and reinforce the learning?
- Was there transfer to the job?
- Were there any unanticipated outcomes?
- Were the trainees satisfied with the program and this form of training?
- Did the program meet the proposed cost/benefit goal?

e-Learning Program Evaluation Criteria

- Possible evaluation criteria for asynchronous e-learning:
  - Reduction in training time
  - Reduction in travel cost
  - Reduction in errors committed
  - Reduction in facilitator time
  - Reduction in customer complaints
  - Increased consistency
  - Delivery of training just in time
- Have as much of your evaluation and record keeping on the system as possible.

Here is a list of questions you might consider when evaluating a technology-based training program. Some are restatements of what we've already discussed, while others speak specifically to the use of technology. These should work for almost any technology delivery, with a few modifications.

TBT Program Considerations

- What is the course intended to do? (Is it simply for practice or does it present new information, or both?)
- Who will be looking at the evaluation?
- What will be done with the evaluation data? (What decisions might be made using it?)
- Must the records be kept private?
- What system requirements (disk space, memory, etc.) are needed for running data-gathering processes and storing the gathered data?
- Will there be technology problems involved in getting the gathered data to the right place (other software programs, other networks, etc.)?
- Will the record keeping cause new problems (need for special disks, find people to collect, require evaluation administration)?
- What is the real purpose in gathering the data?
- How long must the evaluation data be kept and where?
- Are there any legal or organizational requirements regarding the data that must be met or considered (use for performance appraisal or promotion, etc.)?

Satellite-Based Training

- When doing multi-broadcast programs, do not solicit or take too heavily into account random feedback from individuals or even downlink sites, as it is not systematic and can lead to knee-jerk reactions that you don't want and that may play havoc with your program design.
- Call participants prior to the session to establish rapport.

And here is an example of a Level 1 evaluation for a fairly complex blended learning program.

BLENDED LEVEL 1 EVALUATION

How valuable have you found the various aspects of your blended learning course on a scale of 1 to 5, 1 being not valuable, and 5 very valuable? Please respond to all items that currently apply.

Learning Journal Activities

1 2 3 4 5	Activity 1	_____
1 2 3 4 5	Activity 2	_____
1 2 3 4 5	Activity 3	_____

Did you find any one area to be the most valuable, and why?

Any recommendations or requests for other activities or changes to the current ones?

Classes

1 2 3 4 5 _____

1 2 3 4 5 _____

1 2 3 4 5 _____

1 2 3 4 5 The value of the introductory class in preparing you for the rest of the program

Was there any one class that you felt particularly useful for you, and why?

1 2 3 4 5 Interactions with Your Coach

On an average, how much time did you spend with you coach each week?

Are there any ways we can make your interactions with your coach more effective?

Was there any one particularly valuable insight you and your coach shared?

1 2 3 4 5 Interactions with your manager/team leader

On an average, how much time did you spend interacting with your manager on program-related topics each week?

1 2 3 4 5 Assigned Research Project

1 2 3 4 5 Program Website

Do you read the postings by other participants on the website?

Do you read and respond to the discussion questions posted on the website?

Any recommendations or requests?

1 2 3 4 5 Program Community of Practice

Do you access the COP? How often?

Do you post to the COP?
Do you respond to posts?

General Questions

What aspect of the program has been most useful to you on the job so far, and why?

What are you doing differently in your role as a result of the program?

Which of the following aspects have you found useful in your day-to-day work? Please check all that apply:

- ☐ Knowledge gained from introductory class
- ☐ Discussions with your coach
- ☐ Utilizing and recording in the learning journal
- ☐ Knowledge gained in other face-to-face classes
- ☐ Virtual discussion questions on the program website
- ☐ Assigned research project

Are there any topics or areas of interest that you feel are important that the program is not currently addressing? If so, what are they?

What adjustments do you feel should be made to the program and why?

Chapter 8

Doing It Faster: More Rapid Design Shortcuts

This chapter will help you to:

- Consider the usefulness of various types of instructional design software
- Find out about the technique of rapid prototyping
- Discover what learning objects are and what they can do
- Determine the appropriateness of performance support-based training for your training needs
- Consider other techniques of rapid instructional design

Throughout this book we've tried to supply you with a variety of hints, shortcuts, and other ideas to make your instructional design process more efficient, as well as more effective. Most of these have been tied to the various aspects of instructional design and were mentioned as we discussed the area they were related to. However, there are a number of shortcuts that don't really fit one particular part of instructional design, but can be great time savers, and are certainly worth mentioning, if not exploring in detail. Many of these are pretty cutting-edge in nature, as they are based in the newer technologies or related to new advances in instructional design theory, but that doesn't make them any less useable, even for a new or occasional designer.

If you are an SME trying to keep your head above water as you create your training program, these shortcuts may not be your cup of tea. I hope you'll have a little time someday to explore them, but for now they may not be particularly relevant to your needs. For everyone else, they are worth at least

a look to see what they have to offer. Under the right circumstances, one or more of these shortcuts might save a great deal of time and effort.

We've divided the chapter by shortcut, with no consideration as to where they fit into the instructional design process, as many overlap a number of areas. Some of them are full-blown processes, others just a little more than a hint. Add customization as you wish to make them your own.

SOFTWARE FOR INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN

A number of vendors sell various types of software designed to help you through an instructional design process. We've mentioned this type of software earlier, particularly authoring systems and conversion software, and noted that some of the packages claim you don't need to know about instructional design to use them. Stay away from anything that makes such a claim. If you've been through the rest of this book, you know that no software can fully take the place of understanding what instructional design is and how to make it work.

That said, there are some really great packages out there that can help you mightily, if you already know what you are doing. They will correlate data into reports for you, give you hints on how to do things when you forget, provide advice from experts on the how's and why's of instructional design, and basically speed up most of the administrative parts of the instructional design process. Some have templates to help you create attractive, consistent, and understandable reports; others give you models of what your outputs should look like. Many include online coaching. All the market claims aside, they will still not do your thinking for you.

I'm not comfortable with recommending any particular product, but look for software that matches your intended training plan, especially your delivery system. Some packages work best for classroom instruction, others are e-learning-based, and still others are meant for use with an e-learning delivery. Each type leads you toward outputs that fit into the end product it has been developed to produce, so make sure you pick the right one. For example, the software that you would use for an e-learning program will (or should) lead you to a script and storyboard as outputs; one for classroom training helps you create facilitator guides and participant packages; and an e-learning software program should provide you with end products that are formatted to be delivered on a net.

The software should also match the way you like to do instructional design. If you prefer a limited design document and plenty of multi-level objectives, your software should support your required outputs. If you like to write test questions as soon as you finish your objectives, the software should allow you to do just that (some do, some do not).

A number of these programs also come with a public workshop to help you learn to use them. These are often designed for a beginner audience, and by now you may be beyond that point as an instructional designer (I hope so, or this book was not very successful at meeting your needs), so look the curriculum over carefully before you spend your valuable time going to a seminar that tells you what you already know. My rule of thumb is that if it takes more than two days to learn to use a piece of software, then either the software is not worth it or they are talking about more than just the software itself.

You can find a list of vendors for instructional design software (and just about anything else in training) on the ASTD website (www.astd.org). Call or e-mail your vendor(s) of choice and ask for a demonstration or evaluation copy. Play with the demos until you find the one that works best for you.

ANALYSIS SOFTWARE

We mentioned in Chapter 3 that there exists on the market software to help you perform the various types of analysis. These packages may also come equipped with a facility to allow you to do both paper-based and web-based questionnaires. Like the instructional design software discussed earlier, the marketing gimmick for many of these programs is that you don't need to know analysis to use them; and this is akin to going out onto a football field without your helmet. It may work fine. But then again. . . .

The best of this type of software includes a training cost analysis function, the ability to create graphs and flow charts from your data, and file conversion facilities so you can move the analysis data to other types of software such as a design package or authoring system.

If you know what analysis is about and the types of analysis you need to do, a number of these packages can be helpful and time-effective. Once again, check them out, and if you find one that's right for you, use it.

TEST DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE

Another software-based instructional design shortcut is the use of test development software. The warnings concerning the use of these packages are the same as for the analysis and instructional design software. Know what you're doing first and they will make you more efficient in certain situations, when and if a package fits your style.

One thing all this type of software does is to make computerized testing and computer-generated tests possible. If you are doing a lot of knowledge testing in a distance environment, the ability to generate tests and/or administer them totally on the computer can save you large amounts of implementation time. If you are going to use information from these tests as part of your evaluation process, you'll save even more data-gathering time.

With this type of software, you can deliver tests via computer, DVD disk, e-mail, or the web. Most come equipped with random question generators, so no two tests are ever the same. Using this type of shortcut is another good reason for developing a test bank, as we discussed in Chapter 4.

Some of these programs allow you to add pictures, video, and audio to your test questions, thus making it easier to do performance-based testing, another cost and time savings, particularly for your examiners.

Things to look for when considering using this type of software include:

- Ease of use
- Whether the system grows as your needs grow
- Whether it has the capabilities you need now (random generator, video support, etc.)
- How easily tests can be printed
- Whether there is an integrated spell checker

MISCELLANEOUS SOFTWARE

There are many other types of software that can increase your instructional design speed, particularly in the material development aspect. These include flow-charting systems, outlining software, word processing software, of course, grammar checkers, graphics design packages to help you create professional looking graphs and charts, and even presentation software that can be used to produce entire stand-up presentations.

Once again, the question becomes one of investing time. If you don't know how to use the software and you are not going to use it often, is it worth the time investment to learn how to use it? Often it is more efficient to find someone who already knows how and have him or her do it for you. Of course, if you don't have the budget, this is not an alternative.

The issue here is to know what is out there and what it does, and then to use it as efficiently as possible to cut down on your design time.

RAPID PROTOTYPING

A relatively new shortcut, but one that is growing in popularity, is the concept of *rapid prototyping*. This idea was developed by technology-based designers, but is useful in almost any design process. Basically, it stresses the development of only a portion of the training, but with all of the bells and whistles that the entire program will have. It is literally a process of taking only one aspect of your training program all the way from analysis through evaluation before you do any other piece of the design. Much more than an outline, it is an actual piece of finished training that will allow the client (external or internal) to have the real "feel" of the finished product.

At times more than one prototype is developed and evaluated in order to analyze the strengths and weaknesses of various approaches and to choose one, or a combination, that will work best.

There are other conceptualizations for prototyping as well. Some go beyond the above description; others are much simpler. One of these simpler approaches suggests that the user interface, navigation, and other technology aspects be developed quickly (and maybe not too prettily) and then tested with content that is not yet complete but filled in enough for testing purposes.

The key to these and most other systems is that the rapid prototype is a continuing process, with new aspects being added and evaluated in this mode each week until you finally have the complete program.

You can see the importance of this type of approach to technology-based designs. Client questions or trainee problems can be caught early and fixed before too much of the heavy duty media work (video, graphics, or even programming) is done. Interfaces can be changed, screen design altered, colors reprocessed, or the whole tone of the program redeveloped for much less than what it would cost when changes became necessary due to data gathered at a beta or even alpha test. Some proponents say that, when done properly, rapid prototyping can even do away with storyboards, although I'm a bit skeptical.

As an instructional designer, you'll want to do rapid prototyping where it fits to save you time and money on edits; as a purchaser of instructional design expertise, you'll want your designers to use it for the same reasons.

LEARNING OBJECTS/GRANULAR TRAINING

These two concepts mean roughly the same thing, although *learning objects* (often referred to as object-oriented learning) is quickly becoming the more widely accepted term. What they entail is the creation of very small, discrete pieces of training that are reusable in a number of different circumstances. How big "small" is and how the learning objects are reused differ in different systems. Some proponents feel that each object should encompass no more than one objective; others feel that two, three, or even five objectives can make up an object. Their reuse is dependent on the training system that the objects are a part of. For example, if you developed a learning object that dealt with the skill of paraphrasing, you might use that piece of learning in a course on listening skills, interviewing, questioning skills, dealing with the media, or even in doing a training needs analysis.

In some systems the objects are stored as a database and can be called out when their learning objective matches a proposed objective for a program.

The key here is to develop the piece of training once, but make it both basic and general enough to be used in a number of programs. Systems have already been created to keep track of learning objects and to guide designers in

how to choose them. Perhaps in the near future there will be a system agreed to for designing and standardizing them, which will in turn make it possible to share them.

At the moment, learning objects are most useful for designers working within a large training system in which there are many opportunities for the creation of reusable training. Standardizing them might make it possible someday to buy learning objects off the shelf the same way one can now buy a video, a graphic, or a training program.

PUBLIC COURSES

You can cut your development and implementation time way down by using public courses where appropriate. Make the courses your own by creating a special participant's manual for your trainees based on your job analysis of what they need to know. Add objectives (sadly missing or inadequate for most public courses), guidance on the key concepts that the trainees need to consider in detail, pre-course and post-course activities, and even self-quizzes that are completed at breaks or at the end of the day for a self-assessment of mastery.

OFF-THE-SHELF PROGRAMS

You can use off-the-shelf programs (video, DVD, or web-based) in much the same way as we just discussed with public courses. Focus your trainees on the content areas that are important to your company and their jobs through objectives, directions, special activities, and testing that is found in a companion participant's manual that you create specifically for the needs of your company. Modify the content of these programs as needed to make them even more effective shortcuts. Just be sure you obtain permission first from the vendor.

Questions to ask vendors about their off-the-shelf programs:

- How do your courses use sound instructional design methodology?
- What is your testing philosophy?
- How do you design in interactivity?
- How do you handle skill objectives?
- What media do you prefer and why?
- What are my training requirements as you see them?
- How do your courses integrate with my need?

TECHNOLOGY VENDORS

Technology vendors can help you reduce your design and development time in a number of ways. We've discussed the possibility of using professional programmers for your multimedia e-learning productions in lieu of your

learning an authoring system, or simply handing a storyboard and script over to a multimedia production house and letting them take it from there. As a less drastic approach, you can hire graphic artists to do your graphics for any type of program or a custom video house to do your videos.

If you are designing e-learning, there is a type of vendor who can take your previously existing media and convert it to net-compatible formats ("Outside Services for Converting Audio and Video to the Web" by Maria Palazzolo, 1997) for you to use in both your instructor-led and self-instructional e-learning programs.

Some general questions to ask technology vendors:

- How long have you been in business?
- Can I talk to your long-time customers?
- Who is your primary competitor?
- What are your pricing models?
- How many new courses are you currently developing?
- How will you pilot your course for us?

Some things to consider when choosing a technology vendor:

- Is there an established track record?
- Is this their main business?
- Are their definitions of terms like yours?
- Are there trained IDs on staff?
- Is their technology current?
- Are their programs interactive?
- Does the program meet your objectives and your audience needs?

PERFORMANCE SUPPORT–BASED "TRAINING"

We've talked a bit about this shortcut before. It is based on a strong analysis, particularly a performance analysis, and its precursor is our old friend the job aid. Performance support–based training is not really training, but rather the process of looking for places where the performance need can be met by the creation of something other than training. Depending on what this other "something" is, it is possible to save a great deal of design time and money, not to mention the costs associated with training delivery, by creating on-the-job support materials rather than actual training.

These materials can be as simple as the aforementioned job aids or as complex as an electronic performance support system (EPSS) (*Electronic Performance Support Systems* by Gloria Gery, 1991). However, when you get into

these more complex processes, performance support–based training becomes a questionable instructional design shortcut, as you may spend more time designing the EPSS than you would have creating training.

An example of performance support–based training would be the "flip file" that you often see on registers in retail stores, or behind airline ticket counters. These performance support tools give the user explicit directions on how to do various tasks. If the system is designed well, these would be tasks that are done infrequently or are very complex and are therefore difficult to memorize.

During training, the tasks that are done more frequently are covered in detail and tested on, while these infrequent tasks are covered with a quick reference to the support tool and are not tested on except as part of the process of using the support tool. This means that a lot of training material development related to these infrequent tasks is done away with, creating a true design shortcut.

Other performance support–based training tools include decision matrices, wizards, interactive guides, pop-ups, and hypermedia glossaries. When considering performance support–based training, ask yourself the following:

- What tasks will the performance system support?
- How will the system relate to the training?
- What training will be needed for the system?
- What are the features and benefits you need from the system?

Performance support–based training has few disadvantages and should be considered each time you develop a training program. Of course, this means strong analysis, particularly what we referred to as *criticality analysis* in Chapter 3, but you've been convinced that analysis is important anyway—right?

You can use this quick design method for software training within a performance support methodology:

1. Perform a criticality analysis of software tasks
2. Train on only those tasks that are most critical using a performance support tool
3. Distribute performance support tools for the non-critical tasks
4. Evaluate learning with a series of simulated cases that the learners choose the correct performance support tool(s) for
5. For changes to software, don't design training at all. Simply create a three-column performance support tool that lists the function, the old method,

and the new. Then distribute self-directed/evaluated simulations with the tool for practice using the new change.

PROBLEM-BASED LEARNING (PBL)

Cut down material development time and increase trainee interaction through problem-based learning. Here is the six-step approach to this training method:

1. Trainee teams meet in class and are given problem(s) to solve.
2. Team works together, with facilitator available if needed, to discern needs and steps to solve problem.
3. Team distributes pieces of problem-solving process to each individual member.
4. Each member goes out and on own gathers what's needed to complete his or her aspect of the problem-solving process.
5. Teams re-form either in class or on own and information is shared.
6. Teams meet in classroom environment to use gathered information to develop and share solution(s).

TRAINING MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS/LEARNING MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (LMS)/LEARNING CONTENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS (LCMS)

These terms, and the concepts behind them, are mostly interchangeable in today's world, although that wasn't always the case, and you might run into a few purists who disagree. They are basically software systems that combine a number of the shortcuts we have discussed already, such as computer-based record keeping, often computer-based testing, sometimes computer-based analysis, and even separate programs to create and deliver e-learning and other technology-based training programs. I say "often" and "sometimes" because different systems have different capabilities. Some systems actually maintain files of learning objects and can use them to deliver training, have a place for you to store your task and objective lists, and include templates for design, analysis, and evaluation.

The obvious shortcut here is that many of your design processes are contained in one piece of software that has a common interface, so it is easier to learn. There is also a common output structure that makes the products of the system easier to use and understand. Naturally, these systems also have all the efficiencies of their component parts.

Depending on the product, a training management system can also prescribe training modules to an individual based on an individualized assessment, link with your human resources information system to download

training and other relevant data, notify individuals of new critical training necessary for their jobs due to procedural or other changes, become the beginning of a knowledge database for object-oriented learning, and link your training directly to an organizational competency process for hiring, advancement, or even performance appraisal.

DIGITAL CAMERAS

Think about using a small digital camera everywhere, to record classes, to record small groups in breakout rooms, to record pilots when you can't be there, for one-way role plays, for instructor development—the list goes on and on, only bounded by your imagination.

WHAT DOES AN ID DO?

I am asked this question often, by both non-professionals and those in the profession as well. There is so much, and each company does it so differently, that it is often hard to explain, but I think looking at the levels of being an ID helps. So I give you one version of "what an ID does" by level.

Instructional Designer

- Design and develop a variety of learning solutions (web-based learning, instructor-led training, virtual training sessions)
- Ensure that the instructional design of deliverables address business needs and performance issues identified in the design document
- Ensure that training solutions incorporate best practices in adult learning theory
- Assist the project manager and senior instructional designer in implementing the project, providing work estimates, progress status, and interacting with the client's SMEs

Senior Instructional Designer

- Analyze current state environment, including analysis of performance gaps and job/task/needs analysis
- Synthesize the data gathered to create models and recommendations
- Facilitate discovery meetings and conduct interviews to confirm performance needs and translate those needs into concrete options for learning interventions
- Facilitate design session with key stakeholders, subject-matter experts, and project teams

- Write concise, creative, and effective instruction. Course deliverables include design documents, storyboards, prototypes, instructor and participant materials
- Create project documentation including the design templates, standards, style guides, technical specifications, straw models, train-the-trainer and pilot materials
- Work directly with technical subject-matter experts to capture course-specific knowledge
- Ensure that learning solutions incorporate best practices in adult learning theory
- Propose, design, and champion innovative learning solutions
- Create thought leadership by being aware of leading-edge learning solutions and market trends
- Ensure the final project deliverables are the highest quality
- Design, develop, and implement measurement and evaluation strategies to assess the efficiency and effectiveness of learning solutions on performance
- Develop, mentor, and coach instructional designer resources

Supervising Instructional Designer

- Proactively work with business partners to define and resolve workplace performance challenges and opportunities
- Assist the project manager when necessary
- Monitor the project plan throughout the ADDIE life cycle
- Work closely with the senior instructional designer on the creation of implementation and communication plans
- Conduct kickoff meetings in collaboration with the signoff authority
- Maintain strong client relationships
- Oversee project design, Beta testing, pilots, and technology-readiness testing
- Work with project senior instructional designers on:
  - Audience and performance analysis
  - Learning objectives and preliminary design
  - Development of design solutions, prototypes design documents, and defining resource requirements
  - Scoping the project

  - Defining and managing client expectations
  - Collaborating with stakeholders
- Determine high-level training needs and perform curriculum assessments
- Consult on the definitions of stakeholder requirements
- Consult on estimation of cost and planning priorities
- Consult on the definition of team and vendor requirements
- Monitor the creation and implementation of the evaluation strategy
- Monitor creation of the maintenance plan
- Develop instructional designers and senior instructional designers

MISCELLANEOUS

Here are some one-liners I've gathered from here and there to help you "think rapid."

- The only course description you must have is a statement of the objectives.
- If you're stuck for an explanatory analogy, remember that movies are the single most commonly shared experience in modern culture. And there are probably as many analogies as you'll ever need at the Internet movie database (http://us.imdb.com).
- Don't forget telephone conferences for distance learning needs. If they will fit the bill, they are easy to design and cheap to implement. Send a participant's manual out ahead of the call to add structure.

Usually, asking for audience questions or reactions during a teleconference-based training isn't very effective, but you can warm them up a bit to participating by starting with an activity where everyone talks or asks something.

- E-mail is another way to save design time and implementation dollars for *some* distance learning needs.
- Busy people put off things that are not due immediately. Send them your pre-work a week in advance, and don't schedule multiple classes more than two weeks apart.
- Use MP3 player technology for corporate newsletters, training tips, and even for your EPSS.

Here is one final hint for rapid instructional design. Don't forget to use *situational design*. Now that you know what the instructional design process is all about, you should be able to see places where you can create your own shortcuts. For example, decrease the complexity of your facilitator

guide because you know that your trainers are all top notch and will only need limited guidance. *Consider your own situation carefully and design accordingly;* that's probably the best shortcut I can think of.

Well, that about does it. If you stayed with us for the book so far, you should now have a pretty good idea about how to do good instructional design, that is, how to create training that effectively and efficiently meets the needs of your organization and your trainees. If you've only dipped in here and there to read about the concepts that were most relevant to you, that's OK, too. I hope it helped you to become a better designer.

The next chapters will discuss specific types of delivery systems that are in vogue today in detail and present an overview of some that are considered cutting-edge as of this writing, but like the delivery processes we've already discussed, the foundational instructional design to make these work remains the same.

We have a tool for you that summarizes everything we've discussed. We call it *seven rules for good instructional design*. Thanks for reading, and for caring enough to want to be a better (and faster) instructional designer.

SEVEN RULES FOR GOOD INSTRUCTIONAL DESIGN

1. Know that what you are going to do is important for your organization.
2. Know that the content you are going to provide is what your trainees need to learn.
3. Know that the way you plan to present the content is the most time-, cost-, and learning-effective way for your trainees and your organization.
4. Know that the training materials and methods you are going to use in presenting the content to your trainees are the best ones for your training situation.
5. Do it all right!
6. Know that what you did was what your organization needed, and that it did some good.
7. Use whatever works for you to make instructional design easier, faster, and cheaper.

Chapter 9

Asynchronous e-Learning Design

This chapter will help you to

- Differentiate between asynchronous and synchronous e-learning
- Determine what planning must be done by the organization in advance of designing an asynchronous e-learning program
- Formulate basic criteria for choosing a learning management system
- Analyze the offerings of e-learning vendors
- Develop effective, activity-based asynchronous e-learning programs
- Prepare your learners for the self-direction necessary in asynchronous e-learning
- Properly implement and evaluate asynchronous e-learning programs

Asynchronous e-learning is just the latest in a long line of technology-based training deliveries that have been touted as the wave of the future, only to flare for a time and then be eclipsed as their often overhyped promise is tempered by their inherent disadvantages.

We have mentioned the concept of e-learning at various places throughout this book, as well as its two basic components, synchronous and asynchronous. However, let's do some redefining of the concepts now, just to make sure we are all on the same page.

DEFINITIONS

e-Learning is the delivery of training using the Internet or a company's intranet. It differs from older technologies such as computer-based and CD-ROM-based training, and newer technologies such as DVD-based training, in that the computer being used by the learner is not a stand-alone

machine, but rather is part of a computer network. The learning programs are delivered through the network to the learner's computer, either ahead of the actual learning experience, or just as the learner is engaging in the learning. This leads to a number of instructional design advantages, and, of course, disadvantages, just like any delivery system, which is what e-learning is in the final analysis.

Asynchronous e-learning is e-learning done in a self-instructional mode. This means among other things that there is no instructor available to answer learner questions or clarify issues, and that the learners can avail themselves of the learning at any time that works best for their needs, hence the term *asynchronous*. When most people talk about e-learning in general terms, they are referring to this aspect of the process, with its self-instructional advantages and disadvantages. However, it's not uncommon for them to confuse the two components, ascribing advantages and disadvantages of both to the general concept, to the point where no one is really sure what they are talking about.

Synchronous e-learning or virtual classrooms is a slightly newer and vastly different concept. The only thing the two processes actually have in common is the use of networked computers. In a synchronous e-learning delivery, all the learners are online at the same time, and a facilitator is present via the computer to lead the learning. The term *synchronous* indicates that all the learners are engaged in the learning, with an instructor, simultaneously. Of course, this negates the self-instructional advantages of the learners learning at their own pace and at a convenient time, but it does provide the advantage of a human component that enhances interactions and allows for the immediate exploration of questions.

Blended e-Learning

As we've come to better understand the intricacies of the Internet, and its usefulness for learning, we've begun to realize that you can blend aspects of synchronous and asynchronous e-learning to create a hybrid delivery system that utilize both components for maximum effectiveness. So you might have an asynchronous program that includes an electronic bulletin board function where independent learners can still pose questions for an SME, or even a chat room function where questions can be discussed in a synchronous environment. Or you may design a virtual classroom delivery that requires asynchronous pre-work to be done in the form of a self-instructional e-learning package. Even e-mail can be blended into an

asynchronous e-learning system to provide a place for answering questions and holding discussions.

These e-learning blends can be very effective, but they can add to the confusion that occurs when discussing or determining the effectiveness of e-learning. If the designer is not careful, these can also bring an entire new set of design problems into play, such as record keeping, and the efficient use of trainer time.

Chapter 10 will deal with synchronous e-learning design, and to an extent with the blending of e-learning components through another form of e-learning that I term *online learning*. For the rest of this chapter, let's talk asynchronous (*Blending e-Learning* by Karen Mantyla, 2001).

CREATING AND IMPLEMENTING AN E-LEARNING SYSTEM

The design process for asynchronous e-learning is basically the same as that of a classroom design until you get to material development. The only major difference is that all of your design steps must be more rigorous, due to the simple fact that there is no instructor in an asynchronous delivery to make up for your design errors. We've already discussed this important design consideration when considering any form of self-instructional program, so it shouldn't be a big surprise to you when I say that your asynchronous e-learning program succeeds or fails based on what you put into it, not on how a facilitator delivers it.

But before you can even think about designing an asynchronous program, you need to have a general e-learning system functioning in your organization. The creation of such a system should not be the job of the instructional designer, but knowing how the system works so you can design your courses properly is. Having a well-thought-out and properly implemented e-learning system is critical to the success of your programs, so let's talk a little about e-learning systems first.

Some Sad Statistics

When you hear averages such as 68 percent of eligible learners never register for voluntary e-learning courses, 31 percent don't register for required e-learning courses, and a 60 to 80 percent dropout rate for an e-learning course is not uncommon, you may begin to wonder whether designing asynchronous e-learning is such a good idea.

Add to this other reports that say 62 percent of a poll of top executives said e-learning failed to meet their expectations, and less than 25 percent felt their

e-learning system improved corporate performance, and you might be sure that it isn't. However, you may be wrong in this assumption. As usual, statistics don't necessarily tell the whole story.

In many cases, the surveys and polls did not take into account whether or not the programs and the system itself were properly created. Good asynchronous e-learning programs in a well-implemented e-learning system can produce remarkable learning results. The problem is developing that good system.

When asynchronous e-learning first came on the scene, the planning basically consisted of "If we build it, they will come." Well, we built it, although in truth we often didn't do a very good job of it, but they didn't come, or at least they didn't stay for long.

The first attempts at major e-learning systems were learning portals that allowed learners access to hundreds, sometimes thousands of programs. But few companies prepared their learners to take advantage of these amazing resources; even fewer prepared them for the difficulties that transitioning from being taught to being a self-directed learner created; and fewer yet took the time to consider the quality of the programs being offered on their portal. I even had one very large and well-respected company tell me when I asked how they evaluated their e-learning that as far as their e-learning system was concerned, "Any training is good training."

As they say, experience is the best (sometimes the only) teacher, and we realized that a more systematic approach was necessary. It would be easy to write an entire book on just the processes involved in creating an effective e-learning system, but as this is a book on instructional design, we'll try and keep it to some basic thoughts for you on how to determine whether your company has what you and your learners need to make asynchronous e-learning work (*e-Learning: Strategies for Delivering Knowledge in the Digital Age* by Marc Rosenberg, 2001).

The key to a successful e-learning system is outstanding planning, not proper planning, or even good planning, but *outstanding* planning. This includes:

- Determining a comprehensive e-learning strategy
- Designing and developing good programs
- Preparing the organization globally for e-learning
- Planning for a smooth, successful implementation
- Creating an effective monitoring and evaluation plan

DETERMINING A COMPREHENSIVE E-LEARNING STRATEGY

This planning step has three sub-steps:

- Analyzing your motives for utilizing e-learning
- Determining your organization's readiness for e-learning
- Creating an e-learning vision

Analyzing Your Motives

When analyzing your motives for utilizing e-learning, ask questions such as:

- Why do we want to do this?
- Can we link this process to our business goals and strategy?
- What baseline technology do we have available?
- Can we build a business case for instituting e-learning?

If your motives for planning to use asynchronous e-learning mostly are concerned with saving time and saving money, then you had better think twice or even three times and do a comprehensive cost/benefit analysis before going on. Under the right circumstances, asynchronous e-learning can accomplish both of these goals, but it seldom does. It most often simply replaces one form of cost and time expenditures with another. For example, you may save learner and instructor time in traveling to a class, but you end up spending much more design time and dollars on programming and graphics. Your cost/benefit analysis can help you determine whether you really will be saving resources with an asynchronous e-learning delivery.

We discussed cost/benefit analysis earlier, so I won't go into it again, but the key indicator for comparing e-learning to other delivery systems is cost per learner for the delivery. Add up all the design, development, and implementation costs of e-learning, including the hardware, software, and other ancillary factors, then divide by the number of learners who will take the course or utilize the system. This will give you a per-learner cost. If you find out that this number is less than the per-learner cost of a classroom or other delivery method that you are using, you may actually have a cost savings. The problem is making sure you calculate in all those ancillary costs on both sides of the equation.

Other "not so good" motives for deciding to try e-learning include:

- We'll put our classrooms on the web and the trainers won't need to teach anymore

- We might as well use it because all our employees know how to work computers
- We need to do it because everyone else is and it works for them
- It's self-directed so it will be easy for the employees to use
- It's a better way to learn

Do more thinking on it if any of your motives sound like these!

Determining Your Organization's Readiness for e-Learning

Organizational readiness for e-learning is somewhat subjective, but here is a short instrument you might use to help you think about some of the factors involved in this process ("Analyzing the Organization's Need for e-Learning" by Tom Floyd in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning*, 2003).

QUESTIONS TO CONSIDER WHEN ANALYZING YOUR ORGANIZATION'S READINESS FOR E-LEARNING

- Do the strengths of e-learning match the content we must deliver?
- Do the delivery advantages of e-learning match our learning environment?
- Will e-learning save us design/development/implementation time?
- Will e-learning be more efficient for our learners?
- Overall, will e-learning provide us with any real cost savings?
- Will our culture support the non-classroom environment of e-learning?
- Are our trainers/instructors ready to make the shift to asynchronous e-learning?
- Do we have the technology infrastructure in place to support e-learning?
- Do we have the funding to augment the technology as necessary?
- Will we be able to support and maintain the e-learning initiative under current or future conditions?
- Will our learners be ready to become e-learners?
- Is there visible high-level support for the process?
- Do we have the right design resources for e-learning?
- Are our learners comfortable with computer operating and e-mail systems?

This certainly isn't everything you'll need to consider, and you may want to add your own items or subtract those that are not applicable, but it's a good place to start.

Creating an e-Learning Vision

If you are comfortable with your organization's motives and readiness, you are now ready to create an e-learning vision. Start by determining what your e-learning is and isn't. Is it just another delivery system or are you looking at a complete shift in your approach to learning? Will it be driven by the training function, or is it something much larger in scope? Who will it serve, and who won't be included? Who will it serve first and/or most? What will it look like to the executive level, the business units, line supervisors, the learners? What are the goals and objectives of the process? Are they linked to business goals and strategy? What change management issues will have to be addressed?

By answering these questions, you should be able to create a succinct paragraph or two that states your e-learning vision. Don't skip or pay short shrift to this part of the planning as it will guide everything else you do in your e-learning process.

DESIGNING AND DEVELOPING GOOD PROGRAMS

We'll be discussing the instructional design component of this step in detail a little later. Actually, we've already been discussing it throughout this book whenever we talked about self-instruction, so our discussion may be shorter than you expect. However, a key planning question to ask yourself here is: Do we have or can we obtain the resources required to create effective asynchronous e-learning programs? This includes instructional designers who understand how to create self-instructional packages, programmers who have the experience and especially the time to do it right (no overworked IS personnel need apply), graphic artists to make it sing, software for design and implementation, the list just goes on. If such resources are not available, your programs and your learners will suffer.

Policies and Procedures

The second component in this planning step is to create the policies and procedures that will facilitate the success of your programs. This includes all the who, what, where, when, and how's that make up the infrastructure of the system, what special roles will be played by various people in the organization, what committees will be needed, and what their responsibilities are. Special consideration should be given as to who owns the process, and who will be allowed to publish on it and under what circumstances.

You'll need to write P&P on who has access to the learning and how, what aspects require management approval, how learners can request learning, how scheduling of classes is to be done, who can author courses, who can change or edit courses, penalties for not completing required courses, rewards for

achieving learning goals, record-keeping processes, and anything else you can think of specific to your own culture and learning environment.

Preparing the Work Environment

The third component is planning the preparation of the work environment for e-learning. This means making sure you have the right computer hardware where it is needed for the learner, working with your IS department to load the necessary software properly, determining whether the e-learning will be delivered via desktop or in learning centers, or both, and generally ensuring that the delivery environment is amenable to learning. One organization I visited was having such a difficult time with the privacy problem that they created "knowledge closets" where a learner could go and literally shut the door. Everyone was made aware that people in the knowledge closets were not to be disturbed unless it was an emergency. Some of these facilities actually were closets, where the stored materials, and in one case even the brooms and mops, were replaced with a chair, desk, and computer.

You also need to determine whether the time for asynchronous e-learning actually exists in the work environment. The tales of learners who couldn't learn because the workplace gave them neither the privacy nor the time to do it are already legend, while those of entire e-learning systems failing because no one realized that the IS department bought computers without sound cards or some other necessary item are so common that they are not worth repeating. Basically, this happens because of incomplete planning.

LEARNING MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS AND LEARNING CONTENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS

One special and particularly important aspect of the work environment is the existence of a learning management system (LMS) or learning content management system(LCMS). You can use asynchronous e-learning without one, but having one available sure does help.

These software systems assist in both the design and administration of e-learning, and any other type of learning as far as that goes. They track registrations, course access, time spent on courses, learner progress, and grades and can be used to design courses, provide a learner interface, create knowledge libraries, implement threaded discussions and chat rooms, assign learners to courses, and create and administer evaluations.

While you'll see both acronyms still in use, the difference between an LMS and an LCMS is becoming less and less distinguishable. Early on, an LMS was

an administrative tool that handled everything but the actual course content, whereas an LCMS managed course content to the point at which you could actually reuse screens and even whole sections of asynchronous content that you developed for one program in another.

Here is a table that compares some of the aspects of an LMS to a LCMS:

Aspect	*LMS*	*LCMS*
Who uses it	Trainers Administrators	Designers Trainers Administrators
Ability to provide collaborative learning	Not usually	Usually
Ability to plug in development tools	No	Usually
Integration with HR S/W	Usually yes	Usually no
Event scheduling	Yes	Normally no
Learner progress reporting	Yes	Usually no
Learner profile information	Usually yes	Usually no
Results tracking	Yes	Yes
Content creation	No	Yes
Learning object manipulation	No	Yes
Test question development	Yes	Yes
Test administration	Yes	Yes
Pre-testing	No	Yes
Navigational controls	Normally no	Yes
Complete learner interface	Normally no	Yes
SCORM compliant	Yes	Yes

Here's a sample of a design for an e-learning session:

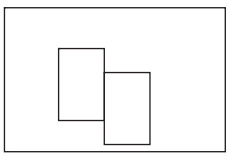
SAMPLE PROGRAM DESIGN

Project Name: Learning@Acme

File Name: c:\20Acme Learning Presentation\ WBT Script Rev 2.doc

Screen ID: 01

Save Date: 7/31/02, 1:41 PM

Programmer Notes	*Text*
Acme Brand and Sam Smith picture 	You are part of one of the most successful financial institutions in the world. Our annual revenue is close to $5 billion, and our net profit is nearly $4 billion per year. How do we do it? What do we have that creates that kind of revenue and profit?
Audio voiceover with fading replacement of brand with generating station graphic, automobile assembly line graphic, then large crop. Replace Sam's picture with dissolved-in Flash "video" of Customer Service Rep on headset, "Welcome to Acme. How may I help you today?"	In other words, what are Acme's assets? It's easy to see the assets of, say, an automaker or the power company, or even a farm . . . but what are our assets? "Welcome to Acme. How may I help you today?"
Action/Buttons	*Related File Names*
"Next" upon end of audio on all screens	Graphics, audio, script, and graphic list are located at: gfx01.jpg: Acme Signature gfx02.jpg Picture of Sam gfx03.jpg Assembly Line gfx04.jpg Generating Station gfx05.jpg Agribusiness aud01.wav: Sam's Intro aud02:wav: Welcome

Today, all of these functions are usually included in a single package, or at least enough of them that the difference between the two systems is not critical, that is, if you are buying a new one. If your organization already has one and has had it for some time, you'll have to look very closely at what it can and cannot do.

Various questions need to be answered when considering an LMS, such as whether it will be used for administrative purposes only or to create and deploy

e-learning as well, whether it will be integrated with other corporate HR and customer service systems, and how expensive it will be to customize it. Here are some questions of more interest to the instructional designer concerning the usefulness of an LMS:

- Can HR data be imported from other databases?
- Is there automatic synchronization with these databases?
- Can the naming conventions be customized if needed?
- How are learner guides, facilitator guides, equipment, and software tracked?
- What learner transactions (registration, attendance, cancellation, testing) are tracked?
- Are learner transactions tracked automatically?
- How difficult is it to generate transaction reports?
- Can custom courses be created, tracked, and maintained?
- How does the system handle pre- and post-activities?
- Can the system tag, store, and retrieve various kinds and pieces of content?
- Does the system work with our e-mail system?
- What are the graphics standards that it supports?
- Does it allow the sharing of normal business documentation?
- Are the search functions and organizational tools easy to use?
- How is stored content output? Can it be translated when necessary (HTML to XML to PPT, etc.)?
- Can the system combine vendor and custom courses and even course content?
- How flexible are the content creation templates?
- How simple is it to make small content changes?
- Can more than one designer work on a course simultaneously?
- Does it have bulletin board and chat room functionality?

In the end, a major problem with many of the big LMSs is that they try to be all things to all people, including designers, administrators, HR, programmers, graphics designers, and others, and end up being entirely too complicated for anybody to use effectively. The key to an LMS is to determine what you absolutely need and then apply the tried and true KISS principle when choosing one. The best LMSs reside entirely on a singular server, not on individual machines, and can be used by anyone with minimal training.

Beyond an LMS, here are some questions that sum up what you need to know about the general availability of technology in your organization for asynchronous e-learning:

- Do all targeted learners have access to the Internet or our intranet in their work environment?
- Do the learners use corporate websites that are already online?
- Do we have an effective LMS?
- Is there easy access to the corporate servers for obtaining learning programs?
- Is there space on the corporate servers for the learning programs?
- Is the necessary hardware (computers with minimum system requirements, sound cards, access lines/modems, graphics cards, CD-ROM or DVD drives, monitors of sufficient resolution) available to all targeted learners?
- Is the proper software (current browsers, plug-ins, presentation software) on the learners' machines or can it be easily downloaded?
- Will IS supply support as necessary?

Of course, you will want to talk to your IS department about these questions and make sure they are on board with the whole idea of using "their" computers for training and all that entails ("Learning Management Systems" by Bray Brockbank in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning*, 2003).

PREPARING THE ORGANIZATION GLOBALLY FOR E-LEARNING

This is the planning step that has been forgotten so often in the past, and unfortunately still is. It includes marketing the concept of e-learning to the organization through the use of benefits, WIIFMs, and even branding, preparing management by discussing their role and their benefits, doing the same with supervisors, and then preparing the learners themselves, both for becoming self-directed learners, and for the utilization of your particular system, especially the use of the learner interface and the procedures for signing up for a course.

You'll need to help management understand that this is a three-to-five-year commitment of time and resources if you really plan to achieve the benefits that e-learning offers. You'll also need to help the supervisors understand their role as e-learning gatekeeper, coach, and support person and the advantages self-directed employees can have for them in terms of higher levels of performance, higher employee satisfaction, and better trained workers (*Selling e-Learning* by Darin Hartley).

Here is a partial list of e-learning selling points that you might use in this planning step.

Selling Points for e-Learning

- Cost savings (be careful)
- More effective
- Greater learner choice
- Greater manager control
- Reduced training time
- Geographic implications
- Allows learning 24/7
- Easily updateable
- Provides a consistent message
- Trains large numbers in a short time

There are various methods for preparing the learners and their supervisors for e-learning, one of them strangely enough being the holding of classroom sessions for this purpose. We don't have the space to deal with these methods in detail (*Preparing Learners for e-Learning*, George Piskurich, 2003), but to help you get an idea of what might be included in this aspect of preparation, here is a list of objectives from a section of one of those learner preparation classes.

At the end of this session you will be able to:

- Define the concept of e-learning
- Discuss why self-directed learning is an important aspect of e-learning
- Discuss why SDL is important to you personally and to the organization
- Develop an appreciation of how much SDL you already do
- Determine your SDL readiness level
- Recall various corporate resources that can be utilized in learning activities
- Determine SDL strategies that will be effective in your personal work environment
- Isolate environmental obstacles and barriers to e-learning success
- Create an e-learning plan for a personal on-the-job learning need

And here's another objective list from a supervisor preparation class:

- Discuss the importance of e-learning to the organization from a managerial perspective
- Describe methods by which managers can help or hinder the development of self-direction in their workers
- Determine how you will create an environment that is conducive to e-learning for your work group

- Utilize the e-learning contract to manage self-direction in your individual contributors

Learner preparation and motivation is such a critical aspect in the success of asynchronous e-learning that you just can't talk about it enough. So here are a few more resources for you to use as you create your learner preparation process. The first is a list of things you might do to prepare and motivate your e-learners, the second is a job aid to distribute to your learners to help them succeed at asynchronous e-learning, and the third is a self-assessment you might have them do as part of your preparation plan.

SELF-DIRECTION AND E-LEARNING

Any discussion of learners and e-learning always brings up the concept of self-direction, or self-directedness, or self-efficacy, or a dozen other terms. A lot of this is pretty theoretical, and we said we'd stay away from too much theory in this book. However, the more self-directed a learner or group of learners is, the more successful they are likely to be in doing asynchronous e-learning.

The level of self-direction can also be a major factor in individualized employee development processes, succeeding at continuous learning, and the use of social network–based learning and social media as part of a blended implementation (see Chapter 11).

Our ability to enhance self-directedness has been under debate for years. Some experts feel it is a characteristic we are or are not born with. Other researchers theorize that everyone is born self-directed (take the example of a young child putting a finger in an electric socket, even after being warned time and again not to), but that this self-direction is overwhelmed by years of public school, where it is often not just frowned upon but engenders punishment. Still others believe it is the environment, particularly the home environment in the formative pre-school years, that creates self-directedness in individuals.

Whatever the case, enhancing or reestablishing self-direction so learners can take advantage of all learning modalities is important, even critical, in business, where continuous, on-demand learning, often in singular modalities such as WBT, M-learning, or a virtual classroom, is the rule.

One method of enhancing self-direction is simply to let learners know that it exists. The concept has become so integral for learning specialists that we forget others have no clue as to what it means and how it might affect their learning. Even a brief introduction to "learning on your own" at the start of an e-learning program can be extremely helpful and comforting for learners who are faced with being self-directed for the first time in a learning environment.

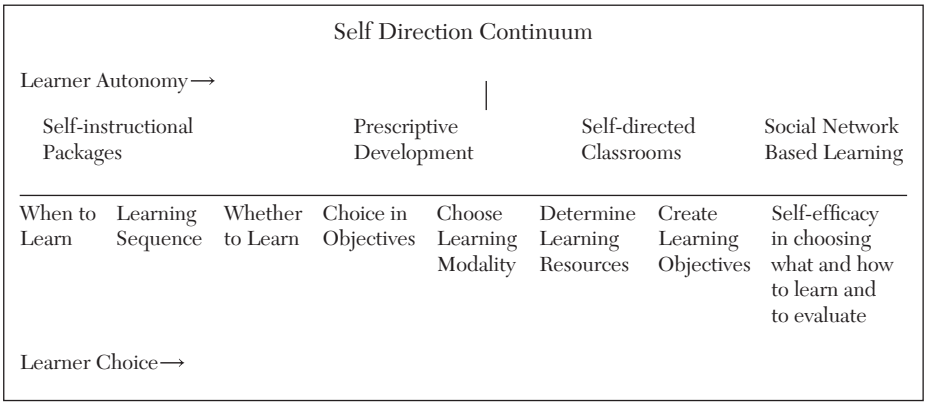
I've had success with simply showing learners that outside their business lives their learning is often self-directed, such as that related to a hobby or even hooking up new electronic equipment at home. Realizing that they are engaged in self-directed learning all the time seems to make the concept much less daunting.

A slightly more complex method is to use one of the instruments that look at individual self-direction, such as the Self-Directed Learning Readiness Scale or the Learner Autonomy Profile, with the learners. These instruments by themselves seem to have little effect on self-directedness, but they are good at introducing the concept to the learners and, when used as a discussion starter for a conversation on self-direction, can be most effective. The characteristics of highly self-directed people and the advantages of self-direction that these instruments illuminate can help learners to find their own reasons for becoming more self-directed.

At a higher level of interaction, providing learners the opportunity to practice self-direction can also be an effective enhancer, although not in the often-used method of simply throwing them into e-learning or a virtual world self-directed environment to sink or swim. One successful method of providing practice is to design self-directed activities into the classroom, such as experiential discussions and answerless problem solving. These classroom processes allow the learners to practice self-direction in an environment where a facilitator/coach is available to answer questions and keep them moving forward if necessary, thus giving them a positive experience and enhancing their self-directedness.

One of the most effective introductions to a self-directed process that I've been involved with occurred when a client wanted to repurpose their basic face-to-face training system into an e-learning environment. Knowing that learner self-direction would be a key to their success, we developed an introduction to self-directed learning in which both the learners and their managers were engaged in facilitated conversations about the WBT process and the levels of self-direction involved in it, utilizing the SDLRS as a discussion starter. They were then asked to collaborate on a learning contract with the manager acting as learning coach.

This method worked so well that it not only helped the e-learners to succeed, but it was adopted as the basis for an individualized, contract-based development system for the employees, with the learners deciding what they would learn, when and how, and creating both their own learning objectives and evaluation methodology. The manager acted once again as learning coach, helping the employees to focus on where their development would take them in the company and on identifying learning resources.



Here is a list of things to consider as you work to prepare and motivate self-directed e-learners.

Other Thoughts on Preparing and Motivating e-Learners

- Know your learners and their goals
- Know the work environment they will be learning in
- Match their values and motives to your program
- Create a personal stake in the learning for the learners
- Make giving time for the learning an organizational priority
- Allow them to evaluate their learning
- Inform them that you will be monitoring their learning
- Focus on learning results
- Make the learning process important in the company
- Make the programs hands on where possible
- Celebrate successes
- Provide support, before, during, and after
- Make sure your program content is valuable to the learners
- Try to keep the technology as unobtrusive as possible
- Design the learning in small chunks to make it easier to learn and leave
- Don't sacrifice learnability for glitz

We've already covered some of these, some are related more to program design, and others are just good common sense. Use them as you can.

PREPARING TO BE AN ASYNCHRONOUS E-LEARNER JOB AID

- Develop the drive to be a lifelong learner
- Practice self-motivation
- Learn to be an excellent manager of your own learning time
  - Make learning checklists
  - Turn off the phone when working on a program
  - Post "Do Not Disturb" signs
  - Add time for learning to your weekly schedule
  - Learn any time you have spare time
  - Negotiate for learning time with your supervisor
- Become comfortable with computer/web technology
- Know your e-learning system
  - Where are assignments, due dates, and other notifications located?
  - What tools are available to set my personal learning profile and calendar?
- Know your e-learning program
  - How do I navigate?
  - What help structure is available?
  - What interface facilities (toolbars, icons, bookmarks) are available?
  - What learning facilities exist?
    Objectives
    Outlines
    Summaries
    Testing
    Activities
    Hyperlinks
    Remediation
    Enrichment
- Build your personal learning network with other asynchronous learners
- Know your purpose before you begin your learning
- Scan the content to develop a learning map before getting into the details
- Find ways to apply your learning to the job as soon as possible

E-LEARNING SELF-ASSESSMENT

	Yes	*No*	*Comment*
I am comfortable using a computer			
I have little problem learning to use new software			
I can use a web browser effectively			
I have used electronic bulletin boards in the past			
I have engaged in threaded discussions using a computer			
I participate in chat rooms			
I'm comfortable interacting online with people			
I'm comfortable using my computer as a learning tool			
I am self-motivated to learn			
I feel I can manage my own learning time effectively			
I feel learning can happen in other places than the classroom			
I believe I can manage my own learning			
I have good access to a computer in my work area			
I have access to a computer and the Internet at home			

PLANNING FOR A SMOOTH, SUCCESSFUL IMPLEMENTATION

To achieve this planning step requires a good rollout and continuation plan. There are literally hundreds of aspects that may be included in your rollout, but here is a sampling ("Implementing e-Learning" by Loretta Donovan in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning*):

- Use quick start guides to help the learners hit the ground running
- Run focus groups ahead of time to find learner needs and build excitement
- Have a pop-up support function available inside your programs
- Make sure your start-up phone support is 24/7 for the first few weeks

- Create help screens in your program introduction
- Have a help desk number available as a menu pop-up
- Create a major launch event that goes throughout the organization
- Use "giveaways" to remind the learners about e-learning
- Use personal contact when possible
- Step up your marketing to all levels
- Use e-mail to announce new programs
- Communicate learner and departmental successes
- Write reports and send them to all interested parties
- Develop rewards and incentives for learners and supervisors
  - Produce printable completion certificates that can be exchanged for prizes
  - For management development and other multiprogram processes, create a wall plaque with spaces for stickers as programs are completed
  - When a program is completed, send a copy of the completion certificate to the learner's boss's computer
- Create a culture that prizes learning
- Find incentives for sharing learner learnings with others
- Develop peer recognition processes
  - Learner of the month
  - Special events
  - Group e-mails
  - Learner chat rooms or electronic bulletin boards
  - e-Newsletters

Your responsibility here is to create a plan that initiates the system successfully, then allows for both sustainability and adaptability as needs of the organization change. It should also include a variety of methods for continuing communications, which brings up the final planning step.

Help your learners learn more by advising them to take time off between modules of a program. A day or two will allow them to internalize the information better and possibly have a chance to practice it on the job.

CREATING AN EFFECTIVE MONITORING AND EVALUATION PLAN

A major part of ensuring that your e-learning system is sustainable and adaptable is the way you monitor and evaluate it. You'll need to create a monitoring plan that includes conversations with and surveys of everyone, particularly the

learners and their supervisors. They will give you on-the-firing-line information about whether your e-learning is succeeding and what needs to be done to make it better.

Monitoring is usually an informal process, but for your formal evaluation you should consider the five levels as we discussed earlier, and create an evaluation plan that encompasses all of them. Since this is self-instruction, you'll also need to consider the five aspects of self-instructional evaluation that were discussed in the evaluation chapter:

- Sufficiency of information in the program
- Usability of the program itself by the learners
- Currency of the material in the program
- Compliance of the learners to the program process
- Actual effectiveness of the program at both Level 2 and Level 3.

As noted, we've already discussed this process, so we'll not go into detail again, but be sure you cover everything in your evaluation plan.

One other important aspect of evaluation planning, particularly if you need to do a Level 5 (ROI) evaluation, is to define your success metrics. These are the numbers that will say to you, and more importantly to management, that your system is succeeding.

Here is a list of criteria that you might use for success metrics:

- Number of courses taken
- Number of courses completed
- Number of courses created
- Revenue
- Help desk calls
- Customer service ratings

You might also use some more esoteric but just as important results-based criteria:

- Reduced training or other costs
- Improved individual and work group performance
- Maintenance of core competencies
- Increased flexibility and reactivity of organization

By now you may once again be thinking that if you need to do all this just to get to the point where you can create an asynchronous e-learning program, it

may not be worth the effort—and you may be right. Asynchronous e-learning is not an easy delivery system to use, no matter who says that you can go from PowerPoint to e-learning in fifteen minutes. Without proper preparation, most people in your organization, particularly your learners, won't understand what it is you are trying to do or how to do it.

The best asynchronous e-learning processes are integrated into the corporation's culture and business strategy, and that takes time. You can't just drop an LMS and a bunch of content on the employees and figure that sooner or later it will take. A few learners will learn simply because their need is great enough to overcome all obstacles, including your lack of planning, but the majority will simply turn away. Even the design process itself, which we will discuss next, is much more rigorous and loaded with pitfalls than some would want you to believe. However, there is an old Chinese proverb that states:

> When the learner is ready, the teacher will appear.

You can change that concept through outstanding planning and good instructional design to a new asynchronous e-learning proverb:

> When the learner is ready, the learning resources will be there.

ASYNCHRONOUS E-LEARNING DESIGN AND DEVELOPMENT

As we've already noted, much of asynchronous program design is the same as what we've already discussed for a classroom delivery, at least until you get to material development, so let's look at the process using the same format that we used for the rest of this book, the ADDIE model.

ANALYSIS

The early stages of analysis remain pretty much the same for asynchronous design. The first important change occurs in your job/task analysis. This process must be much more exacting for an asynchronous delivery. It can't be repeated often enough that there will be no instructor to augment your analysis of the tasks that need to be taught, or to fix places where it wasn't quite what it should have been, so completeness and clarity are critical. Also, once your program is finished, it is usually very expensive and time-consuming to make changes in it, so your JTA needs to find everything out the first time through.

Delivery Analysis for Asynchronous e-Learning

Your delivery analysis also has a new twist to it in asynchronous designs. In its basic mode this analysis tells you whether asynchronous is the right delivery system, but beyond this decision you also need to consider whether your program will be created in a linear or nonlinear format. We're all somewhat familiar with the linear format, where the learner begins at the beginning, follows each learning step to its conclusion, and ends at the end. This is the way most asynchronous e-learning is developed.

However, there are asynchronous programs in which the learners are given no more than a problem via the computer and asked to solve it using what can be gleaned from a list of computer-based learning resources. Or they might be given a task through a computer-based scenario and asked to decide how to do it, using another list of learning resources to determine key decision-making points, and then submitting their task completion plans for critiquing (*Designing World-Class e-Learning* by Roger Schank, 2002). There is even a nonlinear methodology in which the learners are required to develop their own learning objectives based on a personal learning needs analysis, come to a conclusion on what computer-based learning resources they'll need to meet their objectives, and then utilize those resources to complete a self-evaluation process that tells them and the learning facilitator whether the objectives have been achieved. This is often done through the use of individual learning contracts.

The main thing that all of these nonlinear designs have in common, and have in common with linear designs as well, is the need for precise performance-based objectives, present in enough depth and number to guide the learning and the learning evaluation. Even though the learner is much more self-directed in the nonlinear formats, the objectives are just as critical, perhaps more so. As you may have realized from our previous discussions, intensive preparation of your learners for the high degree of self-directedness required in these nonlinear formats is of critical importance.

Following is an example of a self-directed learning plan or contract that can be used in a nonlinear asynchronous learning format, followed by lists of advantages and disadvantages of asynchronous e-learning that can help you make that basic delivery decision of whether to use asynchronous e-learning at all.

SELF-DIRECTED LEARNING PLAN

Learning Objectives	*Learning Process*	*Possible Resources*	*Target Obstacles*	*Dates*	*Evaluation*
What do I need to know or be able to do?	What steps will I need to take?	What resources will I need?	And how to overcome them	When will I complete each step?	I will have succeeded in my learning when . . .

Advantages of Asynchronous e-Learning

- Once a program is completed, it can be used by thousands of learners simultaneously
- It enhances self-direction
- It can be used to create very effective blends
- It can be very effective for knowledge-based content
- It can save large amounts of learner personal time
- It can save large amounts of instructor face time
- It can save large amounts of travel time and expense for learners and instructors
- Asynchronous programs can meet the needs of small groups of your learning population for specialized classes, advanced classes, or simple enrichment
- It works well for learners who just don't like to sit in a classroom
- It is just-in-time training

- Learners can move at their own pace
- Learners can use it to learn just what they need or their situation demands
- It's available 24/7

Disadvantages of Asynchronous e-Learning

- Creating and implementing the system can often cost more than the courses
- The design costs can wipe out any travel cost savings you were expecting
- It is seldom effective as a training system. It's even questionable as to its use for an entire sub-system of training such as management skills or software training
- It requires a higher level of self-direction
- It is difficult to use for performance-based content
- It requires learner to have some degree of computer comfort and ability
- It requires specific hardware and software
- It requires you to work closely with the IT department
- It requires detailed implementation planning
- It does not work well for collaborative learning
- It is not simply putting classroom courses online

Audience Analysis for Asynchronous e-learning

As you might already expect, your audience analysis needs to be more thorough, as the instructor isn't there to gather more information at the start of the class and make on-the-fly changes. It also needs to ask more specific questions concerning the learners' computer skills and level of self-direction. We've already given you some tools for audience analysis during the discussion of learner preparation. You may want to modify them by adding questions from the earlier material on audience analysis and others that reflect your own environment to create an audience analysis instrument specific to your situation.

MATERIAL DEVELOPMENT

I'll spare you another diatribe about the importance of objectives for asynchronous e-learning design, as I hope that was made more than clear in our earlier objectives discussion. Suffice it to say that the quantity, quality, and use of objectives will be the primary make-or-break factor in your program as far as your learners are concerned. Their creation is exactly the same as it is for the classroom, so let's move on to where the real differences are, material development.

The workhorse of asynchronous e-learning material development is the storyboard with it's accompanying script. We discussed scripts and storyboards in Chapter 5 and gave you some examples as well as a lot of hints for their development, but here are a few more examples of storyboards created specifically for an asynchronous e-learning delivery process.

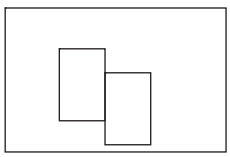
WEB-BASED TRAINING LAYOUT

Project Name: Learning@Acme

File Name: c:\20Acme Learning Presentation\WBT Scrip Rev 2.doc

Screen ID: 01 Last Save

Date: 7/31/12, 1:41 PM

Programmer Notes	*Text*
Acme Brand and Sam Smith picture 	You are part of one of the most successful financial institutions in the world. Our annual revenue is close to $20 billion, and our net profit is nearly $4 billion per year. How do we do it? What do we have that creates that kind of revenue and profit?
Audio voiceover with fading replacement of brand with generating station graphic, automobile assembly line graphic, then large crop. Replace Sam's picture with dissolved-in Flash "video" of Customer Service Rep on headset, "Welcome to Acme. How may I help you today?"	In other words, what are Acme's assets? It's easy to see the assets of, say, an automaker or the power company, or even a farm … … but what are our assets? "Welcome to Acme. How may I help you today?"
Action/Buttons	*Related File Names*
"Next" upon end of audio on all screens	Graphics, audio, script, and graphic list are located at: gfx01.jpg: Acme Signature gfx02.jpg Picture of Sam gfx03.jpg Assembly Line gfx04.jpg Generating Station gfx05.jpg Agribusiness aud01.wav: Sam's Intro aud02:wav: Welcome

As you can see, in this template there are windows for the script (text), notes for the programmer, audio pieces or functionality of specialized buttons, and the names of the files that contain the information to be added to

this screen. This tells the programmers just about all they need to know to make your screen concept come to life.

You should also be able to see why the designing of asynchronous e-learning can be so lengthy. This is the necessary information for just one screen of one module. Multiply this by fifty or so screens, and maybe three or more modules for just one program, and you have an idea of why designing asynchronous e-learning (when done right) is so time-consuming.

Here is an example of a column type asynchronous e-learning storyboard in case you prefer this template format.

Sample Introduction Module			
Screen #	*Topic*	*Content*	*Animation*
1_0_00	Course Introduction	Animated Flash Screen	
1_0_01	Welcome screen	Course objective	
1_0_02	Course Overview	Modules – interactive menu format	
1_0_03	Navigation	Instructions – optional link from 1_0_02	
1_0_04	Instructions	(scoring, contacts, etc.)	
Module 1: Introductory Period			
1_1_00	Module Introduction	Animated Flash Screen – similar to 1_0_00	
1_1_01	Module Objectives	**What You Will Learn** *Module 1 prepares you to complete your supervisory responsibilities during the introductory period for new employees. Specifically, it addresses*: Identifying the four possible outcomes of the introductory period.	

		Helping employees during the introductory period. Making decisions after the introductory period. Extending the introductory period if necessary. Transferring within BHCS. Fulfilling your supervisor responsibilities. Handing a separation from employment. *Click Next to continue*.	
1_1_02	Introducing Our Trial Basis Approach	Employees are hired on a trial basis for the first 90 calendar days of employment. During this introductory period, you will evaluate their: performance, behaviors, work habits, and interactions with co-workers. It's also a time for them to evaluate their satisfaction with the position and work unit. *Click Next to continue*.	Picture: Group of employees Interaction: *Family Feud*–style board with four bullet points as answers – hit the buzzer button to have the answers show up.

Take literacy out of the problem mix through the use of narration.

Learner Guides

Your learner guide for an asynchronous e-learning program may be little more than a couple of pages of directions sent down to the learners electronically, or it may be an entire document, including objectives, notes pages, activity pages,

and anything else you feel your learners should have in hard copy. However, during your materials design don't forget to consider it.

If nothing else, your learner guide should always include a piece at the start on how to learn on your own. It doesn't need to be a big deal, just a reminder that this is self-directed learning, what that means, and that good self-directed learners are resourceful, have initiative, and are persistent in their learning. It should also have information on how to access the course and where to go for help if the learner has problems.

Beyond this you might include course objectives, a content outline, prerequisites, a materials list, and possibly information on the interface (what the buttons and colors mean, etc.). What you include is part of your design decision, but use this resource to help your learners get started properly and learn effectively.

If your learners have tablets or smart phones, make your learner guides downloadable for them as well so they can use them to take notes.

Asynchronous e-Learning Program Activities and Interactions

We've said it before, but we'll say it again, and probably again, one of the most vital aspect in making asynchronous e-learning work is the creation of learner interactions and activities (*Michael Allen's Guide to e-Learning* by Michael Allen, 2003). This doesn't mean a pop-up that appears during a mouse-over, or having the learner click a button to move to the next screen. These are navigational processes, not interactions. It does mean any creative methods you can come up with to involve the learner.

Activities may be as simple as using a storytelling methodology to deliver the content, perhaps with the learner's name inserted in the story, and a group of questions to be answered at the end, or as complicated as a branched decision-making scenario in which each decision the learners make moves them along a different path and often to a different conclusion. By the way, you can insert the learners' names and even other facts about them into these interactions, too, which can be really cool, not to mention motivating.

Of course, the problem is that creating these interactions takes time, so just as in a classroom delivery, they are usually the first thing we skip, and the last thing we should have skipped.

When considering interactions, you need to keep in mind the amount of time you have to design them, the amount of time the learner will devote to doing them, and what your software capabilities are. I like to outline possible activities and interactions on my storyboard, and then when I present it to the programmer we talk about what is possible and not possible. The programmers usually have some great ideas, too, particularly if they have been

doing this type of programming for a while and have seen what other designers have used.

In a more or less random order, here are some thoughts on possible asynchronous e-learning activities and interactions:

- Present the learners with a piece of completed work and ask them to evaluate it according to the criteria they've just learned
- Have the learners label a graphic or complete a flow chart
- Exhibit a series of simulated scenarios and ask the learners to label which ones were right, wrong, require _____, etc.
- Get rid of any video talking heads. These are neither activities, nor good learning methodology
- Get rid of any book pages scanned onto a screen
- Tell stories that illuminate content using animations and narration
- Use video demonstrations
- Use games, but not too often
  - Jigsaws
  - Crosswords
  - Game shows
  - Web treasure hunts
  - Interactive calculators
  - Beat-the-clock games add excitement to your program
- If you have the capability, have them do web research or just search provided websites
- Create computer-based role plays in which they play a role by answering questions concerning what they'd say or do next
- Start each program with an activity the same way you would a class
- Use integrated timers to create timed activities that build suspense
- Create competitions by developing activities that are scored, and then posted like a video game
- Create on-screen avatars to take learners through the learning by talking to them or just being there throughout
- Send learners on "field trips" to websites to come back with information
- Use instruments like questionnaires, surveys, checklists, or other types of forms

- Create printable job aids that the employee can practice using in simulations
- Be careful not to use the same type of interaction too many times in a program, and three is probably too many.
- Click interactions where a learner is given a series of choices and clicks on the right one are OK, but note the comment above
- Cross-link material so learners need to go to other screens to find the whole story. This also keeps your screens from becoming too complicated
- Keep your sessions (including activities) to no more than forty-five minutes
- Drag-and-drop interactions work very well for sequencing processes
- Text entry interactions provide little in the way of feedback
- Don't overuse mouse-overs and pop-ups
- Use voting or polling activities where the learner compares his or her own reactions to those of a predetermined group
- Use click and drag to present a series of problems and solutions and ask learners to choose which works best for which. Make it more difficult by having solutions that don't work, multiple solutions, or even the need to take parts of different solutions to solve a single problem

You can make e-learning activities out of electronic policy and procedure manuals by having learners answer questions about what they find there, doing word searches, creating a series of scenarios that require use of the content, or requesting a search for the newest additions.

Graphics

We already talked a lot about graphics design in Chapter 5, and the basics of design are the same for screens as they were for print. I've found that you can't beat the art of a true graphics designer, so for my programs I try to save the money to hire one. It has always been well worth it (*Web-Based Training: Using Technology to Design Adult Learning Experiences* by Margaret Driscoll, 1998).

However, in case you don't have the money, or you think you are close to switching careers and becoming the next Picasso, here are some thoughts on graphic design for asynchronous e-learning screens:

- Keep your format consistent
- Know whether your company has a format and, if so, use it

- Incorporate your company logo where possible
- Graphical elements to consider:
  - Colors
  - Fonts
  - Navigation bars
  - Buttons
  - Backgrounds
  - Animations
- Use a web-safe color palette
- Times New Roman, Helvetica, and Arial make the best screen fonts
- Font size is always 10 point or greater
- Do not use bold, italic, caps, or small caps
- Try to place graphics with text, not on separate screens
- Use compressed file formats for pictures (GIF, JPEG)
- Watch for contrast between your chosen background and text
- Graphics help learning
- Too many graphics, particularly combined with other sensory inputs, can hinder learning
- Use colored backgrounds on your charts and graphs to add color to your programs at no additional bandwidth
- Use different color fonts for the main path, enrichment paths, or remedial paths
- Too many screens is better than too few
- Use general examples (farming, fishing, sports), rather than corporate specific where possible

In limited bandwidth situations where you want to use video, have the video set to download to the learner's machine ahead of time, and then played from the hard drive when a hot link is clicked.

LEARNER EVALUATION

In asynchronous e-learning learner evaluation takes on a number of forms. However, the one common aspect is that it must be criterion referenced. Since the learners are guided by the objectives, they must be evaluated by them as well if the evaluation is to be both valid and fair.

A good designer places evaluations throughout the program, at the end of sections, after modules or units, and, of course, at the end of the entire program. Many of these evaluations, particularly those found internally at the

end of sections, can be self-evaluations where the learner is provided with the correct answers after the evaluation is completed, and if possible, the area of the program where the answer came from. This enhances not only the evaluation process but the learning as well. However, be sure that your software allows you to branch back immediately to the correct answer in self-evaluation processes for maximum reinforcement. Waiting until the end of the test to provide the right answer and context is usually too long.

Of course, this multiple evaluation methodology means you'll need a lot of test questions, preferably written as a test bank, which was described in Chapter 4. Most good asynchronous e-learning software comes with a test bank facility, or it might be included in your LMS if you have one. If you don't have this capability, I suggest that you purchase one of the evaluation software packages that have it that can be integrated into your system. It will make your design life a whole lot easier. One of the other advantages of creating a test bank for asynchronous designs is that it can be used outside the actual program for re-tests, make-up exams, practice, or a number of other purposes.

A big problem with asynchronous designs is that it is difficult to evaluate performance. This should be a major consideration when you are doing your delivery analysis. Performance evaluation is not a strength of asynchronous designs, and content that requires it might be best delivered in another way or possibly blended with OJT to create the right setting for the evaluation.

If you do need to evaluate performances in an asynchronous environment, and you must do it through the computer, you can create a performance simulation type of process in which the learner evaluates the simulation to determine whether the performance has occurred. For self-tests you can use a three-strike technique with the computer asking when the first mistake is made to "try again," when the second mistake is made explaining what should have been accomplished, and if a third try comes up empty, actually taking the learner through the performance process again step by step. This system also works well as a practice process when the learner is first learning a performance, and isn't a bad way for a human to teach performance tasks either.

LEARNER INTERFACES

For being so important an item in the design of asynchronous e-learning, there are probably as many opinions concerning learner interfaces as there are designers out there worrying about them, and just as many controversies. Some of the controversy revolves around screen size, background colors, even color and size of buttons on the screen, but one of my favorites is the discussion concerning whether you should add a pacing function to each screen, that is, tell the learner how many screens have been completed and how many are left.

I usually try to stay away from including these on my screens as it is just another item to take up space or confuse learners, and it really doesn't tell them

much of anything. The fact that they have completed ten screens in twelve minutes has no bearing on the length of time it might take to complete the next two screens, or ten. Good design tells us that screens that are basically text are completed quickly, while activity screens may take much longer. It's your program, so you make the choice as to whether to include screen completion information or not.

Actually, most often this decision and most other interface decisions are made for you in advance by the software you are using or your IS department. However, here are some thoughts you might consider if you have a say in the process, or if you think you may need to make a change to your current learner interface:

- Create screens that do not require the learner to use the scroll bar, if at all possible
- Learning objectives should appear often, certainly on the first screen of each chunk (section, module, etc.)
- Titles, captions, and headlines on screens should be well thought out and not just continual repeats
- Have a main path and options off the main path
- Test your interface before you develop your learning modules
- Be sure each program begins with a title screen, a preface that describes the purpose, background, and scope of the program, and a menu
- Create an interactive glossary for each program and a glossary button
- Make sure the purpose of all buttons is absolutely clear to all learners
- Decide where your navigation bars are going to be and leave them there
- Every screen should have next, back, and end buttons, as well as a way to go to any other part of the program without clicking through every screen between here and there
- A course map that can be accessed on every screen is usually a good idea
- Don't over-tech your presentation with so many bells and whistles on the screen that it becomes confusing
- When you want the learner to take a break, program in a blank page with a note that reads "This page left intentionally quiet."

BETA TESTS AND PILOTS

We discussed beta tests and pilots at length earlier, and they are much the same for asynchronous e-learning as they were for classroom delivery. A particularly important aspect to remember though is that you use beta tests for content and pilots to determine flow. The flow of an asynchronous program is critical, as is

the timing, and these should be the two aspects that you are most concerned with in your pilot. Final decisions on content, activities, and particularly the learner interface should have been made before the pilot.

At the beginning of a beta test have the learners do only two or three screens before stopping them for feedback. This will help to get them comfortable with the feedback you are looking for. As their comfort level increases and their comments become more specific, you can make the chunks larger.

Another thing I've found useful is to condense all feedback from the beta test before working with it. Look it all over generally as a first step, discarding anything that is repetitious. Consider thoughts that are mutually exclusive (the course was too long, the course was too short) and make a decision on which you will accept. Whittle it down to the basic comments that appear to be common and then make changes based on them. This will save you a lot of headaches and making changes to your changes later.

Finally, be sure you have regularly scheduled review and revision meetings for your programs once they are out there. Nothing is more damaging to a program's credibility than having out-of-date information contained in it, and there is no instructor in asynchronous e-learning to bring the content up to date.

SOFTWARE

The basic software for asynchronous e-learning is the authoring system. There have been many different brands of authoring systems, and all of them have had advantages and disadvantages. For the most part, while the good ones are easy to learn as far as the basics go, even the best of them take a lot of time and practice to become really expert at.

Currently the most popular authoring systems are Lectora, ToolBook, and Authorware, but if you are reading this book a year or two from now it's a good bet that there will be another one or two to add to this list, and maybe one of these will no longer exist. I've learned to use four or five of them in my career, and I think only two are still around.

The problem with these systems is that they take you through a very specific approach to asynchronous design, which may or may not meet your needs. It's a pretty safe bet that if you are planning to use one of the nonlinear methods we discussed earlier, an authoring system won't be of much help at all.

Things to look for in a good authoring system include adherence to the ADDIE process as we've discussed it, ease of use, ability to get quick and many different kinds of help, ability to go outside the system's design box if needed, a good integrated graphics program, a good integrated test construction and test bank facility, and even a video editing capability.

Actually, you don't really need an authoring system at all if you use vendors to do your graphics and programming. You simply do your design work as usual up to and including the creation of a storyboard, then turn it over to the experts. They will do it faster, better, and if you consider the time it will take you just to learn the authoring system, cheaper than you can. Of course, it won't seem cheaper when you get the bill, but in the long run it really is, and your program and learners will benefit from their expertise. If vendors are not a possibility for you, there are plenty of good authoring tools available out there. Look at them all, try them out, and choose the one that fits your needs.

One class of tools you'll want to be careful of, however, are the ones that tell you they can help you create e-learning in thirty minutes or make a PowerPoint presentation into e-learning as fast as you can type, what some refer to as conversion software. Let's just say that these software applications tend to stretch the truth a bit. Sure you can create a program using them that runs on a computer, but beyond that it will seldom have the activities and evaluations necessary to be truly effective e-learning. There is no magic bullet here. Designing asynchronous e-learning that really works takes time, expertise, and imagination—all three of these in good measure.

One good piece of software to consider if you don't have it is a message board facility that allows learners to communicate asynchronously with the instructor and with each other by posting questions, thoughts, and ideas, and even engaging in threaded discussions. These discussions, which can be spread over time, create some of the best learning as, unlike in the classroom, the learners have time to assimilate and analyze their new knowledge. Your boards can be populated by learners, instructors, and SMEs for basic and extended content development. You can use message boards as help facilities as well.

REPURPOSING

One way to cut down on the amount of design time needed for asynchronous e-learning is to repurpose your current programs ("Repurposing Materials for e-Learning" by Carole Richardson in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning*, 2003). This has been the holy grail of vendors for about as long as there has been computer-based training. As we've already noted, the number of software programs that guarantee you e-learning from your classroom training in three easy steps, or that can change your PowerPoint to e-learning in fifteen minutes, are legend, and the interesting part is that they all work, just not very well.

Repurposing software usually starts with a rather large assumption, and that is that the programs you begin with have been well designed. Notice I didn't say that they were good, but that they were well designed. This means,

as you now know, that they began life with a strong analysis, have proper objectives, criterion-referenced learner evaluation, learner-centered activities, and all the other good design "stuff" we've discussed throughout this book. If they don't, you're repurposing software will only translate a poor classroom program into a poor e-learning program. Remember the old computer saying: garbage in . . . garbage out.

Even if your program is well designed, you still have work to do, work the repurposing software seldom considers. You have to make sure that the activities your facilitators use in their classes translate well to an asynchronous environment. Some do, some don't; some repurposing software forgets that activities are important and has no way to translate them at all.

Your objectives will need to be looked at and probably supplemented, as classroom objectives are seldom in the number or depth needed to take the place of the instructor as they do in asynchronous deliveries.

Next, you need to move your tests to an e-learning environment. You may need to buy another piece of software for this, as we've mentioned before, both for test distribution and record keeping as well as test banking. You'll probably need to augment your question bank, too, as asynchronous uses a lot more questions. Introductions will need to be changed, as the ones that work in classes seldom fit e-learning, and WIIFMs will have to be boosted to create the learning need in your e-learners.

You should be getting the picture by now: it ain't as easy as it seems. Even if you have well-designed courses, you'll still need to do much more than hit that one button to repurpose them for an asynchronous e-learning environment. That's not to say repurposing isn't a good idea. It can save you time, money, and a lot of work. Just go into it with your eyes wide open, and don't expect much in the way of magic. Most importantly, don't sell your asynchronous e-learning concept to your organization with the idea that you can quickly and easily repurpose all the courses you now have into e-learning courses. This will doom your intervention to failure about as quickly as anything you can think of.

If you are considering repurposing, here are some thoughts to consider:

- Start by redoing your curriculum plan. You may find out that the order of courses changes when you go asynchronous, and that there is a lot of overlapping content that you can delete.
- You'll need to rechunk your content, and when you do, think about possible resequencing here as well. Asynchronous often flows differently from the classroom, both on a macro and a micro scale.
- Look for missing content when you're chunking and put it in.

- Look for places to add more and different asynchronous-based interactions. You almost always need more of these than were designed into a classroom facilitator guide.
- Add those real-life examples that the facilitators talk about but that aren't in the facilitator guide.
- Try to find places to set up scenarios and problem-solving activities. These are the things that keep a learner interested and learning in an asynchronous environment.

EVALUATING ASYNCHRONOUS E-LEARNING PROGRAMS

We discussed the evaluation of your e-learning system back when we were looking at the planning process, but as part of your evaluation methodology, or to decide whether an off-the-shelf program is worth the price, you also have to consider how to evaluate singular programs (*Evaluating e-Learning* by Bill Horton, 2001).

Here are some things to look for when evaluating an asynchronous e-learning program, whether a vendor's or your own:

- Indication that a JTA, delivery analysis, and audience analysis were done
- Well-written objectives at various levels
- No need for an instructor
- Directions evident at the start of the program and the start of each chunk as needed
- Proper chunking of content
- Self-tests sprinkled throughout
- Good use but not abuse of media
- Plenty of activities and interactions
- Criterion-referenced learner evaluation where needed
- Inclusion of continuing post-course activities
- Whether the amount and quality of the content is adequate
- Whether the content meets the objectives
- Tone and examples match needs of intended audience

SUMMARY

To end our discussion of asynchronous e-learning design, I thought you might like to see what we've talked about from a number of different perspectives through the use of a few checklists and job aids.

This first one is a summary of the general characteristics your programs/system should exhibit.

Your programs and your system must:

- Be easy to access
- Be relevant to the learners' needs
- Have excellent help functions for both technical and content help
- Be easy to navigate and allow learners to determine their own course
- Give learners control of the learning (no lockstep)
- Provide immediate practice
- Have a solid program evaluation process
- Have simple, uncluttered screens
- Allow for learner evaluation and record keeping

The next one is a job aid that summarizes most of the things we've discussed concerning program development, and maybe a few we missed.

E-LEARNING DESIGN HINTS

- List all the materials, tools, equipment, and training aids your learner will need for the program
- Include a final summary activity
- Use test-outs where they make sense to decrease learning time
- Use branching processes for individualization
- Include a glossary and balloon definitions
- Include a frequently asked questions screen where possible
- Design in plenty of examples
- Use click-and-drag activities to teach sequencing and sorting
- Label all materials with version numbers
- Modules should be twelve to fifteen minutes in length maximum
- All self-tests and other evaluations have specific directions
- Note who your sources of authority for the content was
- Provide sources of further information on topics for clarification or enrichment
- Chunk, and then chunk again
- Provide a content help number
- Use chat and threaded discussion functions to increase interactivity

- Be sure your scripts are politically correct
- Be careful that your use of humor is not offensive
- Reduce scrolling as much as possible
- Provide information with the fewest possible clicks
- For lots of information, use hot links; for small bits, use pop-ups/mouse-overs
- Create pop-up and hot-link windows that do not require enlargement or scrolling
- Minimize graphics if necessary to prevent scrolling
- For e-learning using full motion video, create transitions by using an on-camera narrator with text, graphics, and animations behind through the use of blue screen techniques
- When using e-learning as pre-work in a blended design, create mandatory discussion boards with questions for each module and a due date for posting, so all the learners stay on schedule
- Millennials have been shown to be very self-directed, so design to their strength

To augment this program design job aid, here is a summary of thoughts on creating the overall e-learning system.

QUESTIONS FOR E-LEARNING SYSTEM DEVELOPMENT

- Have you performed an analysis of the content you plan to deliver?
  - Does it meet one or more organizational needs?
  - Does it meet individual employee development needs?
  - Is asynchronous e-learning the right delivery for the content?
- Have you created a proper design?
  - Are there enough objectives, are they learner based, are they useable?
  - Is there plenty of interactivity in your programs?
  - Are there both self and formal assessments of the learning?
- Do you have the right user interface/learning site?
  - Has it been tested by your users for ease of use and intuitiveness?
  - Will it meet all your e-learning needs?
  - Are you using it consistently?

- Have you scheduled beta tests and pilots for all your courses?
- Do you know what you need to evaluate and how you plan to do it?
- Do you have the right policies and procedures for your corporate environment?
- Do the following people know what their roles are and how they will fulfill them?
  - Learners, instructors/designers, administrators
- Are there job descriptions for individuals with special roles in your intervention?
- Have the necessary committees been created and populated?
- Is your technology adequate for your implementation?
- Have you chosen the place for the e-learning to occur, and will it be adequate?
- Have all time constraints been considered?
- Has the right help desk function for your intervention been created and staffed?

Next a series of questions in the form of a checklist that you can use to determine how ready your organization is for asynchronous e-learning.

YOUR TWENTY QUESTIONS FOR E-LEARNING CHECKLIST

Place a check in the first column if you and your organization have an answer for the question, or a check in the second column if you are going to need help finding the right answer.

☐	☐	How do I motivate my employees to be responsive to my e-learning?
☐	☐	Is e-learning effective for all my levels and types of learners, particularly those with low literacy levels?
☐	☐	How do I create time for e-learning?
☐	☐	What are the minimum technology requirements for effective e-learning?
☐	☐	How do I re-tool my stand-up trainers to become e-proficient? What is available to help me?
☐	☐	How do I work with corporate IT to communicate my e-learning needs?
☐	☐	Why does e-learning sometimes fail?
☐	☐	What criteria do I use to pick the best e-learning programs?
☐	☐	Is it more efficient to deal with e-learning internally or to use outside agents? Do I build it or buy it?

☐	☐	What strategies do I use to get executives involved in not only supporting e-learning but in helping to implement it and make time for it?
☐	☐	What technical or other problems can be anticipated and avoided when starting e-learning?
☐	☐	How do I determine the ROI of e-learning?
☐	☐	What is the right blend of e-learning and classroom instruction?
☐	☐	Is e-learning effective for soft skills?
☐	☐	How do we measure e-learning success rates?
☐	☐	Are there ways to reduce e-learning development time?
☐	☐	How do I pick the best e-learning tools, software, platforms, etc.?
☐	☐	What do I need to do to support and maintain my e-learning process?
☐	☐	How do we make e-learning interesting?
☐	☐	How do I transition my learners to e-learning?

And last, but certainly not least, some comments on program design and implementation from those who are closest to the process, the learners.

Twenty-Five Significant Comments On e-Learning Made by e-Learners

On Course Design

"Don't give me a failing mark simply because I never finished the course. Maybe I learned what I needed without finishing."

"More links to outside information please."

"Don't organize the course according to your plan. Let me organize it the way I need to."

"Don't overwhelm me with too much content. Give me activities to learn a little at a time."

"I hated writing on the bulletin board, but liked to read what others said. I think I learned a lot that way."

"I don't want to be forced to contribute to threaded discussions to 'learn' from my peers. I don't think they know any more than I do."

"The best part was talking to other employees in the chat sessions."

On Preparation

"It's hard at first, but stay with it."

"If you are used to having a teacher tell you everything, you need to break that mold first."

"Initially, finding the right resources is the hard part. Once you start e-learning, you develop a curiosity to find new resources."

"I can't learn what nobody teaches me."

"When I first started, I needed someone to show me how, and then leave me alone."

"The only way to become good at it is to practice using it."

"Being comfortable with learning on your own makes it easier to succeed at e-learning."

On Technology

"My computer wouldn't show the videos, so I missed a lot."

"Once you master the software, learning the content material comes easy."

"I was confused by the technical terminology from the start. Can't they use words to describe what the stuff is that isn't 'computerese'?"

"It takes too much time to get online and start, especially when you just want to look something up."

"Having experience with computers, any computers for any reason, is a major advantage."

On Support

"No one ever told me how to use the buttons."

"I learned by trail and error and word of mouth, which isn't the best way. Look for a coach or mentor who can help you become a more efficient e-learner."

"They never give me time to sit down and do it."

"I found no place where I wouldn't be interrupted."

"My boss doesn't believe I'm working."

"I don't know what to do when it freezes up."

In the next chapter we'll look at synchronous e-learning, its advantages and disadvantages as a delivery system, and how to create an effective design for it.

Chapter 10

Synchronous e-Learning Design

This chapter will help you to

- Discuss various advantages, disadvantages, and myths concerning synchronous e-learning, and their basis in reality
- Determine when synchronous e-learning is the best delivery system to use
- Design, redesign, and repurpose materials for synchronous e-learning
- Repurpose leader guides and learner guides for the synchronous environment
- Create effective media for synchronous classes
- Effectively implement a synchronous e-learning class
- Differentiate between synchronous e-learning and online learning

Synchronous e-learning, sometimes referred to as online learning, and more often currently as virtual classrooms, has been rapidly evolving into a delivery system of choice for many companies. This is partially due to its real advantages, and partially due to some perceived advantages that are not necessarily so, and that can cause a great deal of difficulty for you as an instructional designer.

ADVANTAGES

Its obvious major advantage is that neither learners nor the instructor needs to travel to a certain location to work together ("Getting Ready for Synchronous e-Learning" by Jennifer Hoffman in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning*). Instead they interact through the mediation of a computer and computer network, most often using a specially designed software package. With synchronous designs you still have the ability to create learner-facilitator

and learner-learner interactions, very much as in a classroom, but without the physical classroom itself, and all that that entails.

Another significant advantage, at least over asynchronous e-learning, is that synchronous is faster to design. Unlike asynchronous designs, there is an instructor/facilitator present. Therefore, the need to design the learning program as perfectly as possible is no longer quite as critical. As in a face-to-face classroom, the instructor provides a way for the learners to have their questions answered (it is hoped), and if your material is not quite as sharp as it might be, there is someone there to fill in the gaps and cover for the design flaws. This also means the program will be easier to revise as, in a pinch, all you need to do is talk to the instructor.

Here is a short list of advantage of synchronous e-learning:

- Efficient for geographically dispersed audience
- Easily revised if content is unstable
- Efficient when delivery of content is limited to once or a few times
- Allows real-time access to expert
- Effective when learner collaboration is important
- Useful when content requires classroom delivery
- Can develop quickly when design time is short

An exciting use of synchronous e-learning is to use it for communications, that is, simply to stay in touch. If you have a highly dispersed workforce, do ten-minute mini-learnings every week or two, with a discussion board added in for later feedback.

DISADVANTAGES AND MISCONCEPTIONS

Unfortunately, synchronous designs also suffer from the same disadvantages as classroom designs, the main one being, of course, the instructor we said was such an advantage in the last paragraph. Even more than in classrooms, many virtual classroom implementations seem to consist of a data dump from an SME. This may be because it's so efficient and simple for an SME to teach a synchronous class, they only need to find a computer, not go to a classroom. Another reason might be because the instructor can't see the learners becoming bored and tuning out his or her droning PowerPoint presentation, or because the SMEs, and in many cases even the professional trainers, not having been taught to use this delivery methodology properly. This brings up the first of those perceived advantages we mentioned that are not necessarily so.

It Ain't That Easy

Synchronous e-learning has been, and continues to be, sold to organizations as a process that requires their facilitators to do nothing more than put their presentations on a computer, then talk through a microphone to the learners who are at their own computers. This is true, if your goal in implementing a learning program is to have practically no learners paying attention to the presentation about fifteen minutes after the class begins. Since no one is "watching" them, if they are bored learners don't zone out as in a classroom, but "multi-task out," working on other assignments, surfing the web, answering e-mails, even talking with people who happen to drop by their cubes during the class.

In reality, an effective virtual class often requires not just repurposing of classroom material (which some define as switching media formats and adding an activity or two) but redesign of the program, including changes in activities, the inclusion of large numbers of small interactions, the design of polls and interactive media–based activities (often called *annotating*), and quite possibly resequencing of content and objectives. And we're talking here about beginning with a good design in the first place. If the classroom design and materials are slipshod, with poor objectives, less than adequate learner evaluation, and content that has not been validated, you literally need to start from scratch.

Beyond design considerations, there are also concerns about the facilitators that need to be considered. Saying a classroom facilitator can step right into a virtual environment is akin to saying a good single engine pilot can step right into the cockpit of a 767. Sure the basic concept is the same, but the differences can be rather daunting. These include simply using the software effectively, knowing when to answer questions and not, gathering feedback when no one is there, deciding when to relinquish control of the network and when to take it back, figuring out when and how to turn various software functions off and on, and facilitating small group interactions when you can't see the small groups, just to mention a few. We'll discuss these tasks in more detail later, but for now let's just say that no matter how good they are at classroom facilitation, if your facilitators have not taught in a virtual environment before they will be in for an eye-opening experience.

Another of those perceived advantages is that you can teach hundreds of learners simultaneously using synchronous e-learning. Actually, that is true as well, or at least as true as the misconception that you can teach hundreds of students in a college lecture hall simultaneously. As the old saying goes, you can teach 'em, but that doesn't mean they learn anything. The maximum effective learner number for virtual classes is about the same as for a stand-up classroom, and maybe just a bit smaller. To achieve good interactive learning, fifteen or so learners is optimum in a virtual environment.

Another disadvantage of this type of delivery is that it is a synchronous distance learning process. You may say "duh," but consider what that really means. All of the learners, and the facilitator as well, must be online at the same time. So if you have learners in Europe, Asia, and Australia, your class may start at four o'clock central time, but be at nine in France, tomorrow morning in Tokyo, and the middle of the night in Australia. Often synchronous e-learning is perceived, at least subconsciously, as e-learning, which to many means asynchronous with its wonderful ability to be around the world at any time the learner chooses. Virtual classrooms have many advantages, but this isn't one of them.

Designers try to overcome these time zone problems by saying, "Well, we'll record the class for those who are asleep when we give it." This has about the same amount of charm (and success) as recording a live stand-up classroom and making it available on a DVD. If you've been following along so far, you know that any relation between this and an effective self-instructional learning package is purely coincidental.

Let's look at a list of some of synchronous e-learning's other disadvantages and misconceptions:

Disadvantages

General

- Requires proper software or technology
- May be ineffective due to lack of trained facilitators
- Requires learners to be prepared for e-learning delivery
- Not effective when content requires face-to-face delivery
- Not efficient when class needs to be run many times

For the Facilitator

- No eye contact
- No idea of what the learners are doing
- Learners can't use facilitator's visual cues
  - Body lean
  - Movement
  - Smiles
- Facilitator can't use learners' visual cues to speed up, slow down, go over again
- Voice is everything

- Positive reinforcement is difficult
  - Not used to sending or receiving reinforcement via phone line
  - Emotions sound different on the phone

For the Learner

- No eye contact
- Multi-tasking allure
- No justification for participating
- No nonverbal instructor feedback
- Less verbal or nonverbal feedback from colleagues

Misconceptions Concerning Synchronous e-Learning

- Learners aren't comfortable with it
  - Sometimes they are more comfortable than in a classroom
- There is less demand for instructor's time
  - Depending on the design, it may take more instructor preparation and follow-up time, although they do not need to travel
- Interactions are limited
  - Only by the instructional designer/facilitator's knowledge and creativity
- There is less social interaction
  - Only if the instructional designer/facilitator allows this to happen through poor planning
- Hundreds of learners can learn at once
  - They can be taught, but that has nothing to do with learning

So now that we have all those misconceptions out of the way, we can consider what synchronous e-learning really is, simply another delivery system. As we've already said about all delivery systems, it works where it works and doesn't where it doesn't. It is your job as an instructional designer to decide whether it will work in your situation, and then to properly design it.

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR SYNCHRONOUS E-LEARNING

The key to designing effective synchronous e-learning is to remember that almost anything you can do in a face-to-face class you can do in a virtual class, it's just done a little differently (*Lessons from the Cyberspace Classroom* by Rena Palloff and Keith Pratt, 2001). As with asynchronous e-learning, the design process for synchronous is pretty much the same as a face-to-face class

until you reach the point of material development. Here it tends to continue to reflect classroom design, but with a few critical differences.

MINI-INTERACTIONS

The first of these differences is the need to develop more of what I term *mini-interactions*. These are simply small, one-minute activities that the learners can participate in to keep their interest high. They include single questions that require a response and tabulation, polls in which the learners express their feelings about issues or even content, statements where the learners respond with a yes, or no, and a why, and chances to annotate documents, graphics, even websites, online, using the synchronous software's drawing tools.

A great example of the use of mini-interactions is for icebreakers. A good virtual classroom designer might create a quick icebreaker that simply shows a map and asks everyone to note where they live on it. This is particularly good for national or international groups of learners. Another is for the instructor to ask each participant to input on the screen what he or she had for dinner the night before. This not only personalizes what is a somewhat impersonal delivery, but also gives the learners practice at using the annotation tools if you plan on doing more extensive activities with them later.

A somewhat longer icebreaker involves the learners answering four or five agree/disagree questions about the content, and having the facilitator (actually the software) tabulate the responses as a percentage of the class. This can lead to a lot of discussion. You can use this type of mini-interaction to help introduce class concepts as well as create interest. It works particularly well if some of the content might engender more than one answer or opinion.

Polls are also great mini-interactions. They are good for icebreakers and summaries, as well as a process for taking the class's temperature on things, both before and after discussion. You can use polls as pre- and post-debate or argument interactions to engender further discussion or choose a debate winner.

If you're really creative, you might create graphics that present question-type mini-interactions. One of my favorite examples of this is to call up a previously created document or graphic and have learners annotate by checks or circles what is new or unknown to them. This works well with objective lists, too. You might also create lists, then ask learners to vote for their top five on the list via number annotation, or check ones that they are unsure of.

The number of these mini-interactions you should create is somewhat up for debate. Some say they should happen at least every twelve minutes or so, as that is the average attention span of adult learners. Others say that because virtual classes feel so impersonal, and there are so many possibilities

for multi-tasking, you could lose your audience quickly. Therefore, a mini-interaction every ninety seconds or so is important.

My experience, as usual, falls somewhere in the middle of these extremes. I think that you need to change styles more often than the twelve minutes that we use as a rule of thumb for stand-up classrooms, but every ninety seconds is a bit extreme, particularly when some of the mini-interactions can take that long to do.

I try to design in a mini-interaction every five minutes or so, assuming that the learners are not engaged in some other activity. This takes the spotlight away from the facilitator and puts it on them, and can also help to bring back those who might have strayed into e-mails, office conversations, or simple daydreaming.

I'm also in favor of asking directed questions as mini-interactions, and I design them in as well, letting the facilitator know to watch out for learners who are slow or not complying with the other interactions, and then pointing a question right at them.

For even shorter mini-interactions, design in stop points where the facilitator simply asks the learners for an emoticon or to respond with the fast/slow buttons that are part of most software packages.

REPURPOSING AND REDESIGNING SYNCHRONOUS E-LEARNING PROGRAMS

Before we go any further, it's probably a good idea to define a few terms that we've already used, and that we'll be using again in this discussion. In the synchronous e-learning environment, we often speak of designing a program, redesigning a program, or repurposing one.

Design, of course, means starting from scratch and going through the entire ADDIE process, as we've discussed it in previous chapters of this book, although in this case our delivery is a virtual classroom, and so our materials will be developed for this approach. We'll focus most of our attention on this process, because if you can design effective synchronous e-learning, you will be able to redesign or repurpose it as well.

A *redesign* of materials for virtual delivery usually means that you have a learning program already, but it isn't very good, or at least it's not good enough for synchronous learning. In a redesign, you often have to rewrite objectives and learner evaluations, and possibly even do more analysis. You may need to redetermine the criticality of the current content and almost always add more activities.

Repurposing means taking a current course that's already well designed and simply making it ready to be delivered in a virtual environment. You may need to polish an objective or a test question here or there, perhaps even

design in a new activity or two, but the major task in repurposing is to add plenty of those mini-interactions that we discussed earlier.

For both redesign and repurposing, you should remember the following:

- Objectives are more critical in a virtual delivery, so review them and tighten them up as needed
- Planning is more vital, particularly pre-course communications
- Questioning techniques will be different
- Activities may need to be translated
- The facilitator guide needs to be more technology specific
- Watch for areas of the course that contain "talking heads," or "talking PowerPoints."
- Know the hardware and software needs of both the learners and the facilitator and make sure they are met
- Know the level of computer proficiency of each as well
- Know what the "need to know" content is
- Know the time expectations, both for design and in-class time
- Know the number of learners and where they are located (twelve to fifteen is optimal, twenty is the maximum)

Everyone talks about repurposing for e-learning (both synchronous and asynchronous), but most designers end up redesigning. This increases the project time significantly, as you can imagine now that you know about writing objectives, learner evaluations, activities, and so forth. Cast a wary eye on anyone who comes to you and says, "Oh, this will only need to be repurposed to be a good e-learning program." It's that term "good" that's usually the sticking point.

One final thought: not all classroom programs are repurposable into the virtual environment, so don't stress yourself out trying if it just won't work.

OTHER SYNCHRONOUS ACTIVITIES

Beyond the mini-interactions there are a number of other activities that are unique to virtual delivery, or that require you to do some special design work if the facilitator is to use them properly (*Live and Online!* by Jennifer Hofmann, 2004). One of the most obvious ones is the chat function, which allows learners to talk to other learners or to the facilitator without disturbing the rest of the class. There are some great activities you can create using private chat, particularly for paired collaborative learning.

Here are some of the various types of chats you might consider designing into your program:

- Learner to instructor
- Learner to learner
- All learners to all learners
- Learner to panel
- Learner group to panel
- Panel to learner
- Panel to learner group

You can expand on the "star your top five" or "checkmark the ones you don't know" list mini-interactions we mentioned earlier by using a private chat room function to allow learners who feel they have mastered various listed concepts to talk with those who have said they are not confident with the same ones. If a large percentage of your learners checkmark a concept, bring a panel member or SME into the chat mix to work with them while others work in different content areas in pairs or small groups. When your time is limited, rather than discussing concepts, simply ask the learners to share possible resources that they are aware of that can help their colleagues obtain further information on "don't know" concepts that they've checked.

Chat rooms and threaded discussion facilities are also useful for post-class activities and they are usually part of any good synchronous software package. As always, you need to design the topics or questions that will be discussed carefully, and keep in mind the amount of facilitator time that will be spent monitoring these processes. In other words, use them, but use them sparingly so you don't abuse your facilitator.

When doing asynchronous discussions, create two for each topic, one that is more the threaded/focused type, and the other a coffee shop variety where any thoughts concerning the topic can be posted. This works for chat rooms, too, but is more difficult to do, as it requires double the amount of facilitator time.

Synchronous e-learning also allows you to design in activities where the facilitator and learners can share documents, applications, websites, even entire desktops. Using annotation tools, the learners can work on these processes as a group, noting places in applications where they are having difficulties or changing documents on the fly. Once again, these activities require a very strong design with plenty of directions for the facilitator on how to get the most out of them.

Usually, in shared-type applications only one learner can annotate at a time. If you want multiple learners to annotate, create your document for the whiteboard, and then have the learners do activities such as circling or checking what is new to them or what they want to learn more about. Using the whiteboard function, you can involve them all at the same time.

Another technique is to do a brainstorming session using a shared document, but with a general chat window open to allow the learners to really "storm" their ideas as they read or think.

Synchronous activities can include many of your tried-and-true classroom interactions, such as role plays, simulations, games, and small group or breakout processes. The basics for these types of activities are about the same as what we've already discussed for stand-up classrooms. However, because you have technology mediating the facilitator-learner interface, the instructional designer must have a good grasp of how this interface changes the implementation of the activity and provide complete directions on these changes to the facilitator. Here are some of our usual classroom activities that translate well into a synchronous e-learning environment, and a few that are synchronous specific:

- Pre-tests
- Knowledge sharing
- Collaborative problem solving
- Team teaching
- Roundtable discussions (via open chat)
- Learner manipulation of facilitator software
- Collaborative writing and editing
- Individual coaching
- Private or group discussions during breaks
- Debates
- Critiquing of information
- Brainstorming
- Individual problem solving with written solutions
- Observation of demonstration
- Games
- Annotative activities like make list, create time line, draw map, draw flow charts, create spreadsheets
- Questioning

- Discussions
- Creating class glossaries
- Application sharing
- Guest experts or panels
- Learners' resource from web
- Learners take over and teach
- Team competitions
- Use breakout rooms and off-line messaging
- Short quizzes to check comprehension and for retention

These quizzes, and any Level 2 evaluation questions can be enhanced through the use of graphics and even videos in a virtual environment.

- Single and multi-user whiteboard activities
- Timed games that increase the excitement and competition such as *Beat the Clock* or *Ten Thousand Dollar Pyramid*

MORE DETAILED FACILITATOR GUIDES

Which brings up the next difference between a virtual classroom design and a face-to-face one, the depth of the facilitator guide. We've talked about facilitator guides, or whatever you've chosen to call them, so you know their basic purpose, but in virtual designs they become more critical and more detailed, even if you're designing the package for yourself to facilitate.

One of the reasons for this is the need for those mini-interactions. Your facilitator guide should have each of them spelled out in detail, with the purpose, directions, a general time frame for how long they should take, and approximately when each should start during the lesson.

Another specialized aspect of a virtual facilitator guide is to note places for icon-based feedback stops. One of the major disadvantages of virtual classes, particularly for experienced instructors, is that there is simply no nonverbal and very little verbal feedback from the learners. Therefore, you need to note in your guide where the facilitator should stop and ask for it, even if it is as simple as sending a smiley icon or hitting the too fast or too slow button.

One of the biggest differences, however, is the amount of technical direction you'll need to add to your facilitator guide. You simply can't go overboard on this aspect, particularly if you suspect that the facilitators will not be well trained in the use of the software.

Information on how to use the various functions of the software for polls, questions, annotation, breakouts, and so on, are all important if the facilitator is going to do the job properly. Hearing this, you might say, "Then I'll need to

be an expert on the software as well," and you'd be right. Actually, you don't need to be an expert if you have one available who can tell you how these things are done. However, my question for you is how will you know what is even possible in the virtual instruction world if you don't know the software? This aspect is so important that if you'll look at the facilitator guide template we've included at the end of this discussion you'll notice that an entire column is devoted only to technical instructions.

FACILITATOR GUIDE TEMPLATE

Time	*Content and Notes*	*Technology*	*Learner Activity*
	Add content outline and any notes to the facilitator here	Place names and numbers of slides of handouts, instructions for other forms of media, such as still camera, sound or video, special technology comments, and instructor notes on demonstrations or other technology aspects here	Describe learners' roles here, and each activity they will be involved in

Other Facilitator Guide Enhancements

Another aspect of the facilitator guide that you need to enhance is the information you give the facilitator on setting up and starting the class. In a face-to-face classroom delivery, the facilitator usually has a pretty good idea of what to do, but if he or she tries to translate this to a virtual class he or she is going to miss a few rather important things, such as how to access the software, where to go if there are technical problems, and most importantly, how to get the learners started.

Here are a few items you might want to include in your facilitator package to help the facilitator with class setup:

- Hardware and software requirements
- Network access information
- Setting up of delivery area and computer(s)
  - Check for background noise
  - Ensure freedom for distractions
  - Private
  - Use do not disturb signs
  - Space for all hardware and note taking
  - Power outlets and extension cords if needed
  - Connection to Internet
  - Comfort: chair, heat, etc.
  - Lighting
- Reminder to create class rosters
- Perform final program review

And here are some reminders for your guide of items the facilitator might want to send the learners before class:

- Study guides
- Objectives
- Class start time
  - Get online fifteen minutes early if possible
  - Be sure to label AM and PM, particularly in global programs
- Level 1 evaluation
- Access procedures
- Contact information

- Instructor and other participants
- Bios and pictures via bulletin board posting
- Technical problems job aid if available

And one more list on items you might remind the facilitator to do when he or she actually starts the class:

- Be online fifteen to thirty minutes early
- Hang out with learners (virtually) until start time
- Start promptly
- Welcome participants
- Ask for personal introductions
- Ask for confirmation that everyone can hear and is online
- Provide assistance phone number for emergencies
- State objectives and ask for feedback on them
- Tour virtual classroom highlights, particularly feedback mechanisms
- Explain how class will be conducted, particularly aspects such as random, non-volunteer questions, interactions with peers, amount of informality, and special types of activities
- Have a good introductory activity ready

LEARNER GUIDE

Along with the facilitator guide, you also need to think about the learner guide when designing for synchronous e-learning. You might say, "What learner guide? This isn't a classroom." But it is, and all the good reasons for having a learner guide in the face-to-face classroom are equally important in a virtual classroom. Just to review, some of those reasons include:

- Providing the learner with extra information on processes and procedures
- Increasing learners' comfort level by providing something they are used to and comfortable with
- Setting up activities
- Providing enriched information

What you put into your learner guide is up to you and your program's needs, but some common items you might consider are the pre-class communications that we discussed earlier, directions for accessing the course and utilizing the software effectively, directions for activities, objectives, reading material, bibliography, a glossary, and troubleshooting checklists.

One of the ways you don't want to use your learner guide is simply to send your learners a copy of the slides you plan on showing during the class. That doesn't mean you shouldn't send copies of your slides to the learners if you feel they might enhance their learning, or as a backup in case the technology fails, but your learner guide needs to be much more than just that. Of course, when we say "send," it doesn't mean mailing paper. Since you're in an e-environment, use its capabilities to send downloadable learner guides and slides.

Other People Involved

Yet another design consideration for synchronous e-learning is that there may be other individuals involved in the learning process, such as:

- Panelists
- SMEs, not only for content development but as online or off-line experts
- Technical experts who could be available to the learners and to the facilitator before and during the class
- A co-facilitator who takes on some of the actual teaching aspects
- An assistant, who doesn't share the teaching but handles any necessary support role such as technical help, off-line questions, and media staging
- A producer, usually used in a more complex program design to call up media, give cues, and stage panels, experts, or demonstrations

For any and all of these positions that need to be included in the design, the designer must create a document that clarifies roles and explains to the facilitator how to use and not use these added resources. This document should contain directions for both the facilitator and the people filling the roles. The designer should also note to the facilitator the importance of planning and practicing with co-facilitators and support personnel.

GENERAL TECHNOLOGY CONSIDERATIONS

Although most of the technology considerations for synchronous e-learning are directly related to the software being used, there are a few general aspects that are common to any virtual environment. First and most importantly, the facilitator must be comfortable with the technology and tools being employed. The only method for achieving this is practicing with them, both generally, and for each specific program. Your design should include information on training the trainers. We'll discuss this aspect in full a bit later.

Also, the facilitator needs to be properly equipped. This means the best, fastest, and most up-to-date PC you can buy, a high-quality microphone and

speakers, a high-quality headset (preferably wireless), and a second PC that emulates the learners' equipment, so he or she can see what the learner is seeing.

Next, the learners need to be provided with as much technical support as possible. The facilitator or a technical expert should be online at least half an hour before the class starts to help learners with technical problems. The learners themselves, particularly those new to virtual learning, should be required to log in at least fifteen minutes before the scheduled start time in case they have technical problems. Ideally, there should be a technical expert available online during the program to deal with issues that come up, but this is seldom the case. As an instructional designer, you have very limited to no control over technical support, but you need to make its importance clear in your documentation.

It's critical as well to remind the facilitator that the rest of the class shouldn't be held up waiting for one or two technical issues to be resolved. Help desk phone numbers and e-mail addresses should be given to the learners in their learner package, and their problems routed there.

The facilitator needs to have a contingency plan for technology breakdowns, either individual or group-wide. Your facilitator guide should note this fact and provide some ideas. One approach is to send out any graphics that will be used in the program as part of the learner guide. In that way, a learner can at least listen over a phone line and look at the graphics during the presentation. If a general technology crash includes the phones, too, as one experienced online facilitator noted, "There's always tomorrow."

Another use for the learner guide in handling technical problems is to include in it a job aid on common technical problems and how to deal with them. Often this entails simply logging off and then on again, but such directions, when written as a job aid, can keep distracting technical help calls to the facilitator to a minimum. The use of the telephone as a contingency plan can also be spelled out in the learner materials so the learners know what to do in case this becomes their only option.

Your documentation should make the facilitator aware of the need for a backup plan for times when files (either graphic or document) are lost. The best approach here is to have all the files that will be used in a presentation backed up on a mass storage device such as a flash card or USB drive—or on the "Cloud." Then it's only a matter of a few key strokes to call up the missing files or send them out to the learners. The instructional designer can make sure this is normal procedure, and note to the facilitator where and how to access the files.

Finally, the facilitator needs to be reminded that there may be some learners who can't do even the simplest of technological tasks. These learners need

to be found through audience analysis (a simple questionnaire sent out before the class will do it if you don't have the time for a full-scale analysis) and introduced to the technology well before the day of the class. You might also remind the facilitator to try to team novice learners with experienced ones, both before and during class, to give the novice someone other than the facilitator to ask questions of.

MEDIA

Media is a major issue in synchronous design. In many cases it is the media that carries the message to the learners, unlike in a face-to-face class where the media basically augments and emphasizes. Therefore, the instructional designer needs to consider the types of media in the design with even more than the usual care and provide plenty of direction for the facilitator on how to use it.

Most of the media considerations for synchronous e-learning are related to the capabilities of the software and the network being used, so once again the instructional designer needs to know the technical capabilities of the system the program will be delivered on. This also means that the media you used when designing a face-to-face classroom may not translate as well as you hoped (or as some people suggest) to the virtual environment. Often it needs to be reworked, if not completely redesigned.

Here, in descending order of use, is a list of the most common types of media found in synchronous e-learning:

- PowerPoint
- Whiteboards
- Graphics
- Web pages
- Hard copy or photographs
- Sound
- Video

One of the advantages of utilizing media in a virtual environment is that the media itself can become interactive through the use of annotation tools. The whiteboard is an obvious candidate for this, but so are your PowerPoints, other graphics, and even web pages. You might design an activity in which learners take a graphic of gauges on a control panel and draw in their probable readings based on a scenario, or move an icon across a world globe as you have them follow a weather satellite in orbit. The possibilities are unlimited.

Your learners can redraw your graphics, add or subtract from your PowerPoints, even redesign web pages that you capture, and of course do almost

anything that they can normally do with a whiteboard. Once again, the key is to make sure you know what the software will support, design it so that it will be easy for the facilitator and the learners to use, and provide the facilitator with good information on how to do it, and just as importantly, how to debrief it.

You can use different media formats for different purposes, but some are better for some things than others. The following chart gives you a quick look at what works best in a few general categories.

MEDIA FORMATS

Media Type	*Handouts*	*Whiteboard*	*Hard Copy/ Pictures*	*PPT*	*Sound*	*Video*
Uses						
Explain/ Clarify	1	1	2	1	3	1
Basis for Discussion	2	2	2	2	2	1
Organize Discussion	1	1	1	2	3	3
Summarize	1	1	3	1	2	2

Here are some thoughts on both the design and use of each of these common synchronous media formats:

PowerPoint

- Keep each slide to one key thought. Use builds to add new concepts.
- Use charts and graphs rather than tables, as they are easier to read at a distance.
- Use the same format for all slides. Don't switch from vertical to horizontal.
- Never add sound or visual effects without a good reason.
- Keep backgrounds consistent and subtle.
- Use only quality clipart, and use it sparingly.
- Use no more than four colors on one chart.
- Use one thought per line, five to six words per line, five to six lines per slide.
- Don't overuse bold face, italic, or all caps.
- Use motion elements such as animation and transitions to attract attention, but don't overuse them.

- Give learners enough quiet time to comprehend each visual.
- Be sure you have backup media just in case, both electronic and hard copy.
- PRACTICE.

If your system is slow or your graphics very memory intensive, you can save time by downloading your PowerPoint slides to the learners ahead of time. This can also act as a backup if your system goes down.

Whiteboards

- Use a whiteboard in activities the same way as you might a flip chart in a stand-up class.
- Capture new or interesting points brought up both by participants and facilitator.
- Capture discussion points or reports from small groups.
- Pre-label whiteboards to help guide discussions.
- Archive whiteboards and send copies to participants.
- Use pre-done whiteboards as an organizer, highlighting aspects as they are presented.
- Have participants be responsible for whiteboards.
- Use whiteboards for games such as tic-tac-toe or hangman.
- Use whiteboards for polling by having participants check which of a group of thoughts they are most in favor of.
- Use whiteboards for brainstorming by opening them up to all participants.
- Know the tools and limitations of your whiteboard software and practice with it.
- Save whiteboards if possible.
- Paste graphics or screen shots into whiteboards if possible.
- Provide instructions to learners and facilitators on how to use the whiteboard properly.

Hard Copy or Pictures

- Remind the facilitator to practice using the still camera.
- Follow the same rules as any other graphic piece.
- Be sure pictures have enough resolution to be seen properly by learners.

- Leave a note on both the graphic and the camera stage that says "This Side Up."
- Remember, digital pictures usually look better than projected ones.
- Only use still cameras when absolutely necessary, as they add another level of complexity to the facilitation.
- DON'T design in the projection of pages of books.

Graphics

- Light colors on dark backgrounds attract the eye.
- Use color cues to imply relationships.
- Limit the number of colors on a single screen image.
- Establish a color scheme at the beginning and stick with it.
- Bright colors make small objects and thin lines stand out.
- Pick a font that fits the message.
- Don't use more than three fonts in a presentation.
- Don't overuse bold face, italic, or all caps.
- In general, don't use a font size smaller than 18 points.
- Sans serif fonts, such as Helvetica, are easier to read when projected.
- Use the chart style that is appropriate for the data.

Sound

Audio is perhaps the most underrated and least understood aspect of virtual media, due in part to the fact that voice audio is almost always in use, and little attention is paid to any other aspect. It is extremely easy to import, record, and edit sound elements in the digital age. Today, there is no excuse not to take advantage of the persuasion power of music, sound effects, and pre-recorded narration. Sound has the power to heighten attention levels, improve retention rate, enhance emotional responses, add emphasis to the message, and provide, when necessary, some comic relief.

Follow these guidelines for effective sound presentation and design:

- Keep sound and music clips brief.
- Keep volume levels consistent.
- Suit the mood of the music to the mood of the message.

- Invest in quality music clips.
- Do not use copyrighted music without the proper license.

Video

The human eye loves movement. We can scarcely stop ourselves from following action within our view. Careful use of motion can add depth, clarity, and dynamism to a message.

Motion elements, including video, animation, and transitions can

- Attract attention
- Engage the audience on a deeper level
- Present testimonials
- Depict remote locations and activities
- Overcome barriers of language and culture
- Lend credibility to the presenter
- Tell a story without words
- Create subconscious associations

The element of motion puts extra demands on the presentation design and the presentation system.

- Be certain your software can play back the digital video.
- Start with a high-quality video source, if possible.
- Frame the subject tightly to compensate for small on-screen images.
- Experiment with different frame sizes and frame rates (the number of frames per second) to get the best image playback.
- Set objects in motion that you wish to dominate the screen.
- Combine scene cutting and on-screen action to create the desired pacing and rhythm.

A newer use of video technology is "high definition distance learning," which uses a combination of video-linked classrooms and synchronous e-learning software to involve the learners to a much greater degree than the older satellite-based systems were able to do. To take advantage of this video technology, you need to have rooms wired for high definition, but there are a number of advantages to this approach over a straight virtual classroom if you do have the capability.

One problem I've seen with this technology though is that everyone wants to use it for meetings, so it is hard to schedule class time.

Web Pages

- Use web sources instead of re-creating content.
- Have participants find web sources to share.

- Use web searches as an activity such as a web scavenger hunt.
- Go to competitor websites for comparisons.
- Know the functionality of the web browser in your software system.
- Use hyperlinks to allow independent searching.
- Use bookmarks if possible to make browsing faster

DESIGNING CONTINUING INTERACTIONS

A design advantage of synchronous e-learning is the ability to add post-class interactions, often called continuing interactions, to the program ("Synchronous Collaboration" by Harvey Singh in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning,* 2003). Almost all synchronous software has the capability to support both asynchronous message boards and synchronous chat rooms. These facilities allow you to design in learning that occurs well after the actual class ends, give and receive feedback from the learners, enhance learning transfer, and perform Level 3 evaluation.

Message Boards

Message boards, sometime referred to as electronic bulletin boards or e-boards, provide for asynchronous post-class activities. These might include almost any of the post-class assignments you use in a face-to-face class. The postings can be one-way, that is, strictly from the instructor, and therefore be basically informational in nature, or two-way, where you ask the learners to respond with their own postings, and possibly even comment on each other's postings. You can use message board postings for FAQs, parking lot issues that the facilitator didn't get to during the virtual class, enrichment commentary from SMEs, and for pre-class assignments as well.

In some designs, the post-class activity is to write a short paper concerning one or another aspect of the course, and then post it for commentary by the other learners. If your virtual class runs for more than one session, you might use this function for between-class assignments and communications.

The key to effective use of message boards is to design your interactions with solid goals, good objectives, and obvious intent, and then make sure the learners know what they are. If you are following good instructional design methodology, this should not be a problem.

You also need to be aware of the amount of time your bulletin board activities will require of your learners and your instructor. Keep them short and easy for both their sakes.

Use your message board facility to keep learners up-to-date on content changes as they occur. Send an e-mail to tell them that there is a new posting.

If you need to do recertification training, you can use this method to show that the learners are up-to-date on the issues, possibly even foregoing a class.

Chat Rooms

Chat rooms are simply live meetings held by computer. Everything just said for message boards goes for chat rooms, too, particularly the part about considering the amount of time they require for both learners and instructors. Chat rooms also have the added problem of being synchronous, so everyone will need to attend at the same time. On the other hand, they can produce wonderful interactions if designed and handled properly.

Chat rooms are excellent for post-class brainstorming on unresolved or even new issues. You might want to design them in for pre-class brainstorming as well, where applicable and possible. They provide a good way to reduce the class time spent on introductory activities by having the learners introduce themselves and even form learning teams before class begins.

To make your chat rooms most effective, use pre-written questions or exercises to define the limits of the chat and help keep the learners on track. Give these to the learners ahead of time. You also need to remind the facilitator that the chat room should be monitored closely, otherwise it often becomes an electronic gripe session, or worse, leads to negative interactions called *flaming* by those in the e-know.

For both chat rooms and bulletin boards, you'll need to create solid instructions for the facilitator as part of the lesson plan, and even a one pager for the learners in their material that discusses how they should best take advantage of these learning opportunities ("Discussion Groups and Chats" by Saundra Wall Williams in *The AMA Handbook of e-Learning*, 2003).

Here is an example of a continuing interaction activity that involves small groups using chat rooms, reports posted on a discussion board, a presentation given during a virtual class, and even peer-to-peer evaluation.

CONTINUING INTERACTION ACTIVITY

This post-virtual classroom activity will help you to bring your learnings into a job-related experience.

Objectives

Explain the structure and intent of procedure A-15

Discuss the use of rapid recovery vehicles, their advantages and disadvantages

Demonstrate team work, communications, and influencing skills

Apply information gained in current and future roles

Part 1

Using the virtual chat facility on the program website, your team will prepare a report of six pages with a 500-word executive summary on the following:

1. The company is about to roll out procedure A-15, which will change the way we utilize the rapid response vehicles. For each team member's area of responsibility, assess that area's conformance and handover to safety operations in relation to the procedure.
2. While the new RRVs are safer and more cost-effective than what we have been using, there is a reluctance in the field to use them up to the full extent of their capability. Why is this, and how can we maximize the use of the new RRVs?

Part 2

When your report is completed, you will download it to the program website for all participants to read and react to.

Part 3

At a special virtual class your team will give a thirty-minute presentation that summarizes your report.

Evaluation

Sixty percent of the evaluation for this exercise will be based on how well your report spoke to the two items above.

Forty percent will be an effort weighting by your fellow team participants (individual and anonymous) using the team feedback form found on the website.

AUDIENCE ANALYSIS

Whether designing or redesigning for synchronous e-learning, you should take another look at your audience analysis data. The successful virtual learner isn't a lot different from the successful classroom learner, but some learner characteristics are unique to the virtual environment, and some others are needed in greater measure. Following is a list of the more important of these.

Synchronous learners need:

- More self-direction, even though the process is instructor-led
- Better listening skills
- The ability to read between the lines
- To be proactive with their learning experience

- To find ways to deal with the isolation
- To be comfortable learning with partners or teams
- To overcome the fear of new technology
- Adequate technology support
- A basic level of technology skills
- A pre-determined literacy level
- Physical work space in which to do the learning
- Time to do the assignments
- A common language
- To overcome time zone barriers
- More structure
  - Comprehensive schedules
  - Deadlines
  - E-mail progress checks
- The ability to ask questions off-line
- More reinforcement, particularly if they are high achievers, as they will not get it from group
- Individualized contact with the facilitator from time to time in long classes

You may have noticed that not all of these items are strictly internal to the learner. Some require the presence of external tools or functions as well. However, they are all necessary for the learner to succeed at synchronous e-learning.

The chances are pretty good that your current audience analysis won't provide you with enough information on these issues. You will need to do a supplementary one before completing your design, particularly before writing your instructions for the facilitators, as they will need to know in detail what to expect from their learners.

The best way to do this is to send a survey to the learners asking them questions based on the desired characteristics. You might want to break the survey into two parts, one for technical issues such as their familiarity with both the hardware and software, and the other for non-technical issues such as their time zone, language skills, and so forth.

As with all surveys, keep your questions short and to the point with as little jargon, particularly technical jargon, as possible, and don't forget to include the results of the survey and your entire analysis in the facilitator package.

Just as in a regular classroom, and possibly even more so in the virtual environment, you need to know who your learners are and what they can and cannot do, particularly in relation to the technology, early on in the design.

IMPLEMENTATION

Implementation of a virtual delivery, like most training implementations, is not the purview of the designer, but rather belongs to the facilitator (*Sustaining Distance Training* by Zane Berge, 2001). However, you still have some responsibilities, the most critical of which are facilitator training and helping ensure that the program gets off to a good start.

Facilitator Training

The amount of misinformation concerning a competent classroom instructor's ability to easily step into a synchronous e-learning environment has become legend, as we have already noted. Basically, if your facilitators attempt to teach a virtual class without adequate training, they will fail; your design, no matter how well done, will fail; and worst of all, your learners will fail to learn.

The virtual environment is different from the face-to-face environment, nonverbal cues are almost nonexistent, feedback is more difficult, and even the facilitator guide is more complicated due to the presence of both computer hardware and software. Your facilitators will need to understand these differences and work with them every time they go online.

To help them accomplish this, create a solid facilitator training program that illuminates the differences they will experience, helps them see what facilitation skills are more critical in a virtual environment, teaches them the software, and then gives them a systematic way to practice until they become comfortable with the process. Here is a four-part approach that I've found works well in most situations.

1. Basic Facilitation Skill

The discussion concerns what it is like to be a virtual facilitator, what is the same as in a face-to-face classroom, and what is different. You may want to discuss the advantages and disadvantages lists that we looked at earlier, particularly the ones specific to the facilitator and the learner.

Once you have convinced your facilitators that this isn't going to be quite as simple a task as they might have heard, you don't want to spend a lot more time on this aspect. Summarizing with a couple of job aids such as the ones below can give competent facilitators what they need and allow your training to move on to other issues.

JOB AID: GENERAL VIRTUAL FACILITATION SKILLS

- Be a good motivator
- Use all possible communications methods well
- Lead learner-centered discussions
- Listen well
- Use your voice with a full range of inflections to express emotion
- Direct less, suggest more
- Use your facilitator guide
- Practice prompt starts and ends
- Create a safe environment
- Use humor wisely
- Learn to multitask well as you'll be managing multiple activities at the same time
- Don't lecture
- Maintain a non-authoritarian style
- Read between the lines
- Stand up and roam as you facilitate, just as you do in any class
- Know your software well and plan out how to use it effectively
- Practice 20 to 30 percent more
- Record your sessions for later use and critiquing
- Use more directed questions
- Plan to take more time for everything in the lesson
- Summarize or have learners summarize often
- Use "fun" activities to build community
- Reserve comments until after all learner replies
- Model proper online behavior
- Be positive
- Encourage lurkers to interact with random non-volunteer questions
- Don't read off the screen; say it in your own words
- Change your inflections; allow your voice to express

- Call on people using their names
- Use multiple voices where possible
- Minimize any references to the technology ("Please wait while I launch this application")

JOB AID: FACILITATING VIRTUAL INTERACTIONS

- Ask provocative questions
- Work to pull a variety of ideas, answers, and stories from the learners
- Use open-ended questions to elicit more thoughtful responses
- Listen to or read the learner comments carefully (don't think ahead)
- Be concise and clear in what you write on the screen or say
- Validate all replies with positive feedback
- Debrief
- Allow the group to exhaust all possibilities before going on
- Mini-interactions like a simple hello are important
- Take breaks
- Look for unifying threads during discussions (use them for summaries)
- Encourage learners to assess each other's work
- Allow learners to help form behavior standards and program goals.
- Encourage, never judge or allow others to judge
- Be provocative but not argumentative
- Take time to allow the participants to form answers (dead time is OK)
- Bring in lurkers with non-volunteer yes-and-no questions, or by assigning a presentation or question to them in advance
- Clear response screens periodically
- Observe breakout rooms and review chat logs
- Erase whiteboards when needed
- Talk off-line to overly aggressive participants
- Create special interest groups to work on extraneous issues off line

2. How to Use the Technology

The second aspect of the facilitator training deals with the specific in's and out's of the software program that will be utilized, including how to use text chat, web boards, breakout sessions, hardware, graphic projection, and how to create accounts, enroll learners, download, start the program, and handle technical problems.

For this last item, here is a small job aid that works well to minimize class disruptions and get learners back up as quickly as possible.

When you encounter a technical problem with the system, follow these steps:

1. Have the learner call back in first.
2. Ask the learner to try to reconnect.
3. Send the learner to your technical expert or the help desk.
4. Try reloading the presentation (if it is a group problem).
5. Try restarting the presentation (if it is a group problem).
6. E-mail the media if that is the problem, or reschedule the class if the problem is more serious.

3. Observation

In this aspect of the training, the facilitators attend a couple of synchronous programs as learners (if they haven't done so already) to get a feel for what it will be like for their learners. Then they observe a seasoned facilitator or two facilitating a program from the facilitator station to see how they do it right. Finally, the facilitators team teach with a seasoned facilitator to try their wings in a safe environment.

4. Practice

Now, as with any other facilitation, the facilitators need to practice. Have them practice first off-line, just to become comfortable with the technology and the feel. Then have them practice online with some friends or colleagues acting as participants. The participants should make it easy for them at first, then give them some problems, so they can determine how to deal with them. Finally, have them do their programs live and record them for self-critiquing and to look for areas that need improvement.

You might even want the would-be facilitators to self-assess their ability to be good virtual classroom facilitators, as we did for a large multi-national program that required dozens of facilitators from different countries and cultures. Following is the instrument we used, or actually had the candidates use, as one aspect of our decision-making process.

VIRTUAL FACILITATOR SELF-ASSESSMENT

Facilitating learning in an online environment is much different from facilitating in a traditional classroom setting. This assessment will help you determine whether you are "right for the job." Circle the number that indicates your level of competency using the following scale:

1 = poor 2 = low 3 = average 4 = good 5 = high

Skill, Characteristic, or Competency					
Knowledge of the technical subject matter	1	2	3	4	5
Ability to use the software tool	1	2	3	4	5
Describe your operations experience in the space provide to the right	1	2	3	4	5
Using technology similar to NetMeeting or WebEx to teach/facilitate	1	2	3	4	5
Adjusting to the challenges inherent in the use of technology to teach/facilitate	1	2	3	4	5
Communicating with various technology such as chat, discussion boards, e-mail	1	2	3	4	5
Comfort in troubleshooting and problem solving when encountering a problem with the online learning technology	1	2	3	4	5
Demonstrating an outgoing personality	1	2	3	4	5
Promoting a student-centered rather than instructor-centered learning environment	1	2	3	4	5
Communicating with multiple individuals simultaneously in an online environment	1	2	3	4	5
Embracing and promoting a collaborative style of interaction	1	2	3	4	5
Promoting a sense of community online with learners	1	2	3	4	5
Demonstrating enthusiasm for the use of the online learning environment	1	2	3	4	5
Demonstrating enthusiasm for the technical subject matter	1	2	3	4	5

	1 = poor	2 = low	3 = average	4 = good	5 = high
Showing empathy for those who have difficulty with the technology associated with the online learning environment	1	2	3	4	5
Communicating in a relaxed, personal, and friendly manner rather than a highly academic style with online learners	1	2	3	4	5
Using appropriate humor when interacting online	1	2	3	4	5
Can establish online behavior standards, to include acceptable levels of informality	1	2	3	4	5
Can hold learners accountable for complying with online behavior standards	1	2	3	4	5
Can provide acknowledgment of all online contributions (e-mail, chat, assignments, etc.)	1	2	3	4	5
Can provide substantive feedback to online contributions that warrant comment	1	2	3	4	5
Model online collaboration best practices	1	2	3	4	5
Respecting diverse learning styles	1	2	3	4	5
Accept and support all learner contributions	1	2	3	4	5
Motivate learners to participate in the online community	1	2	3	4	5
Create a safe sanctuary for open interaction	1	2	3	4	5
Willingness to deal effectively with disruptive learners	1	2	3	4	5
Able to demonstrate patience with those who find it challenging to communicate online	1	2	3	4	5
Ability to ask provocative questions	1	2	3	4	5
Comfort with "dead space" or a lull in the conversation in order to allow learners to think and process	1	2	3	4	5

(*continued overleaf*)

	1 = poor	2 = low	3 = average	4 = good	5 = high
Skill, Characteristic, or Competency					
Can keep learners on track and redirect conversations that get off topic	1	2	3	4	5
Can draw out quiet or non-contributive learners	1	2	3	4	5
Can direct questions to individuals to encourage participation	1	2	3	4	5
Adjusting to a different way of organizing and presenting information and material when facilitating online rather than in a traditional classroom setting	1	2	3	4	5
Devoting extra time to rehearse and prepare to facilitate online rather than teach in a traditional classroom setting	1	2	3	4	5
Being very organized	1	2	3	4	5
Providing very clear, concise written instructions	1	2	3	4	5
Keyboarding skills	1	2	3	4	5
Written communication skills	1	2	3	4	5

Learner Training

You will need to do a bit of training for your learners as well if they are to become effective synchronous e-learners (*Getting the Most from Online Learning*, George Piskurich, 2004). Once again this is not really the designer's responsibility, but a good designer will prepare material for this purpose anyway and counsel managers on how to use it.

In this training, remind the learners that they need to set up an environment that is conducive to virtual learning. This includes finding a quiet, private space or creating one. They can accomplish this through the use of signs and verbal reminders, forwarding calls, turning off cell phones or pagers, and notifying people that they will be in training during certain hours.

Provide them with a list of things they need to concern themselves with such as the one below.

Preparing to Be a Synchronous e-Learner

Prepare Yourself

- ☐ Think about how you feel about the virtual classroom
- ☐ Consider your responsibility to participate and your need to feel connected
- ☐ Be ready to answer questions and participate in discussions
- ☐ Create a list of questions to ask the facilitator
- ☐ Practice how to speak into the microphone
- ☐ Practice sending questions to the instructor
- ☐ Identify and complete pre-assignments
- ☐ Review the content outline and session objectives
- ☐ Create your personal objectives

Prepare the Technology

- ☐ Check for proper hardware
  - ☐ Sound card
  - ☐ Microphone
  - ☐ Headset
- ☐ Install all software ahead of time
- ☐ Test everything
  - ☐ Audio and microphone tuning
  - ☐ Software functionality
  - ☐ Connection

Prepare Your Environment

- ☐ Locate a space:
  - ☐ Where there is room for your computer, documentation, and notes
  - ☐ Where you can talk online
  - ☐ That has power for the computer and an Internet connection
  - ☐ That has good lighting for working with a computer
- ☐ Reduce as much background noise as possible
- ☐ Eliminate all distractions (phones, colleagues, other work)

Just Before Class Time (1/2 hour)

- ☐ Gather all course materials and paper to write on
- ☐ Check for last-minute class communications
- ☐ Review your list of questions
- ☐ Close all other applications running on your computer
- ☐ Place "Do Not Disturb" notices
- ☐ Log on to course to check connectivity

You might also give them a quick overview of proper online behavior such as these.

TIPS FOR INTERACTING SUCCESSFULLY ONLINE

Remember, you are dealing with a person.	E-mail, chat rooms, and speaker phones can hide this important fact.
Behave in the virtual world as you would in the real world.	In a class strictly for personal development, you may develop informal friendships complete with gossip and note-passing. If you are in the course for your job, or others are, expect to develop more professional, business-like relationships.
Share	Give back to the class. Give *your* experiences, *your* learning, and *your* opinions (when relevant). You do have value to add.
Forgive	Assume others in your class mean the best and that slip-ups and misinterpretations of your brilliance are accidental.
Communicate	Write and speak clearly and concisely. Say what you mean and then stop. Those who are not primary speakers of the language in which the class is held will appreciate it.
Pause before hitting the send button	Make sure you review your posting once, maybe twice before sending.
Don't be too casual	Stay away from slang, and spell check.
Keep your comments short and on topic	If it has to be long, note "long" in the subject line.

Be sure to add your name to a thread message	Always sign your name at the bottom of a message.
Reset the subject line when you change topics	This keep everyone from becoming confused about what you're talking about.

You might even provide them with an assessment like the one below to get them thinking about becoming synchronous e-learners.

A SELF-ASSESSMENT OF PERSONAL SYNCHRONOUS E-LEARNING CHARACTERISTICS

- Can you accept the responsibility for your own learning?
- Are you comfortable using a computer?
- Are you self-motivated when learning new skills?
- Are you self-disciplined?
- Do you have the desire to learn?
- Are you good at setting goals for yourself and then meeting them?
- Are you able to complete assignments or study for tests without undue procrastination?
- Do you work well in groups?
- Are you comfortable interacting in a chat room or posting to a threaded discussion?
- Do you use e-mail effectively?
- Do you tend to participate in class discussions?
- Are you comfortable working with others when you never see them?
- Can you learn from your fellow students sharing their experiences?
- Are you comfortable sharing your experiences and expertise with others to enhance their learning?

All of these tools, and any others your own creativity can aid you in developing, will help your learners, and therefore your instructional design, to succeed.

Getting Started

The instructional designer's other critical responsibility in the implementation of a synchronous e-learning program is to make sure it gets off to a good start. Of course, you can't do this yourself unless you are also the facilitator, but what a designer can do is provide the facilitators with a good program initiation checklist. These checklists are somewhat dependant upon the software you are using and your own organization's procedures, but here is an example of one you might use to help you design your own.

SYNCHRONOUS CLASS INITIATION CHECKLIST

Before Day of Class

- Send pre-class communications
  - Learner guide and slides (download)
  - Objectives
  - Time and date of class
  - Label time AM or PM if program is global
  - Evaluation procedures
  - Procedures for logging on
  - Password
  - Dial-in number
  - Contact information
  - Instructor and participant
  - Posting of bios and pictures
  - Technical problems job aid if available
- Complete software requirements
  - Schedule session
  - Create password
  - Invite attendees
  - Invite yourself as an attendee
  - Set up conference call (if needed)
  - Plan for necessary reports
- Locate proper facilitation environment
  - No background noise
  - Distraction-free
  - Private

    - Use "Do Not Disturb" signs
    - Space for all hardware and note-taking
    - Power connection
    - Comfort: chair, heat, etc.
    - Lighting
  - Other
    - Create session folder for storing materials
    - Prepare class roster
    - Perform final review of program
    - Coordinate with other resources if they are part of program

On Class Day

- Set up delivery area
  - Post "Do Not Disturb" sign
  - Turn off phone ring and forward calls
  - Notify colleagues and other key people that you'll be facilitating
  - Get water
  - Put clock in view
  - Set up notes and guides for easy reading
  - Check in with other resources
- Set up computer(s)
  - Set up participant machine so you can see what participants are seeing
  - Close all non-essential applications
  - Clear browser cache and reboot machine
  - Set monitor for proper resolution
  - Check network connections
  - Check audio and/or phone

When Class Starts

- Start session fifteen to thirty minutes early to deal with problems and chat with learners
- Check for screen resolution problems
- Begin program promptly
- Welcome participants
- Ask for personal introductions

- State objectives and ask for feedback
- Ask for confirmation that everyone can hear and is online
- Provide assistance phone number again for emergencies
- Tour virtual classroom highlights, particularly feedback mechanisms
- Explain how class will be conducted, particularly aspects such as random, non-volunteer questions, interactions with peers, amount of informality, and special types of activities
- Be ready with your introductory activity (icebreaker)

ONLINE LEARNING: A SPECIAL TYPE OF E-LEARNING

There is a variation of e-learning mostly used in academic settings and often referred to as *online learning*. In organizational learning we tend to use this term interchangeably with synchronous e-learning, but there are some major differences between these two delivery methodologies, and those differences may help you to create a more time- and cost-effective design where the process' advantages can work for you (*147 Practical Tips for Teaching Online Groups* by Don Hanna, 2003).

Basically, online learning is both synchronous and asynchronous because its major delivery processes are chat rooms and threaded discussions via electronic bulletin boards. In the academic model, the delivery usually begins with a face-to-face class, after which there are no more class meetings except through computer mediation. This first class is an effective but not critical aspect of the process, and it can be replaced by a synchronous e-learning class, a web meeting, a chat room, or even a simple conference call.

After the first meeting the class is facilitated through a series of assignments that are completed by the learners individually, in pairs, in groups, or in learning teams. Learning resource lists for each assignment are provided and learners are encouraged to post other resources they come across. The products of these assignments are posted to the bulletin board for commentary and discussion or presented in a synchronous chat room that has been scheduled for that purpose.

As a competent instructional designer, you might have realized that this delivery system is most effective for programs that stretch over a number of weeks such as a college class, but it can also be effective in lieu of a multi-day class such as what we often do for leadership or management training. In fact, because you can stretch the learning out over a longer period of time using an online delivery, reinforcement is enhanced, and the complaints of learners

that they can't afford to be out of the office for two, three, or more full days are negated.

With this major advantage in mind, here is a list of possible uses for an online delivery.

An online delivery is effective for:

- Long-term development activities
- Blending with OJT for skill building, cross-training, or remedial training
- Recertification
- Orientation
- Multiple-day classes of any kind
- Management development
- Almost any soft skills
- Team building
- Learning new computer software

Advantages of Online Learning

The cost and time savings inherent in an online delivery are sometimes obvious, and sometimes not so. One of the most obvious is the savings in both travel time and costs. This is true of synchronous e-learning deliveries as well, but an online delivery has the further advantage of being an easier process for both facilitators and learners to use. The facilitators do not need extensive training in how to utilize the software, and most learners these days are quite comfortable with posting to bulletin boards or interacting in a chat room.

There is a tremendous advantage over traditional asynchronous e-learning as well. Even though much of the work done by the learners is asynchronous, online there is still a facilitator available to interact with, making the self-directed aspects of the learning less daunting to learners who have lower levels of self-directedness. Other advantages of an online delivery include:

- Efficient for geographically dispersed audiences
- Suitable for unstable content
- Efficient when the content is being delivered once or just a few times
- Allows real-time access to SMEs with minimal loss of their productivity
- Effective when content requires classroom delivery
- Provides continuous learning
- Multiple reinforcements for greater retention

- Design time less than asynchronous, but can be mostly asynchronous
- Time to learner comfort level less than asynchronous
- Facilitator learning curve less than synchronous
- Learner learning curve minimal
- Cheaper software
- Provides interactive and/or collaborative learning
- Allows for as much or as little self-direction as you feel the learners can handle
- Allows for many learners learning at the same time, al though in different groups
- Research indicates team building enhanced by collaborative learning projects online

Disadvantages of Online Learning

Of course, there are disadvantages to an online delivery as well, not the least of which is that it often takes more time to design than a virtual program. This is due to the nature of the assignments. They need to be well thought out, leaving plenty of room for individual exploration, yet focusing on a result that can be posted or discussed in the chat room. Your objectives also have to be sharper than ever. They guide the learners to the focus of the assignments and, as always, to the required learnings.

On the other hand, the design time is much less than for asynchronous e-learning. The nature of the delivery, and the fact that a facilitator is available, makes a perfect design less critical. Yet the majority of the learning that takes place is asynchronous with all the advantages that are implied.

Another disadvantage is that an online delivery can actually take up more facilitator time in the monitoring of bulletin boards, threaded discussions, and chat rooms. However, instead of being in large blocks of time, such as a day or a week, online time is measured in hours here and there, often over many weeks. As a designer, you must consider carefully how much facilitator time your activities will demand and design appropriately. Here is a look at some of the other disadvantages of an online delivery.

Weaknesses of Online Deliveries

- The same as for any delivery process, it is not good for everything
- The learners may not come back for session two
- Instructor “face time” is often greater

- Design time usually greater than face-to-face classrooms, but less than asynchronous e-learning
- Learners can easily lose interest or begin to multi-task during chat discussions
- It requires learner personal discipline and corporate learning discipline

Designing Online Learning for Organizations

By merging our good instructional design principles with this methodology, we can create a delivery process that takes advantage of the aforementioned strengths while reducing or eliminating the weaknesses. Such a delivery has these characteristics:

- It is analysis based, relying on good needs and job/task analysis to isolate the right content to base the activities on
- It is objective centered, with plenty of good, well-written objectives that help the learners determine the proper end products of the learning
- It is learner centered. The learners know the objectives, goals, where they are going, and why they want to get there. Much of online learning is often self-directed and contract based—both learner-centered methodologies
- It is activity based. The entire program revolves around the activities and assignments you design into it
- It is criterion evaluation based

Here are some hints for designing a good online delivery, followed by a job aid to help you determine whether an online delivery will work for your training need:

- Be sure to create a strong learner guide with activities, pre-class communications, objectives, reading material, learning resources, and a glossary
- Always begin assignments or activities by stating the objectives they will cover
- Use readings and websites in lieu of creating new content as you normally do in an asynchronous design
- Build in progress checks that are completed and sent to the facilitator during long individual activities
- Build in plenty of reviews and summaries, especially at the start of each segment
- Place objectives everywhere; even allow learners to create their own objectives

- Utilize learning contracts as much as possible
- Utilize collaborative or group learning contracts, particularly in team environments or for team-building processes
- Create a help board for posts to the group or instructor, for both technical and content problems
- Make sure your learning resource lists are as complete and rich as possible
- Structure large resource lists by objective
- Allow for learner evaluation of their own learning. In group learning scenarios, provide group evaluation activities of the group's learning
- Use negotiated, mastery evaluation-based contracts when possible
- Add more structure in the form of:
  - Comprehensive schedules
  - Deadlines
  - E-mail progress checks
- Create open-ended questions as part of your activities to elicit more thoughtful responses
- Be sure your audience analysis is accurate and complete
- Create a strong facilitator guide, even if you are the facilitator, with room for completion dates, notes, and other records
- Create an FAQ posting
- Develop evaluation instruments for both course and learners

ONLINE DECISION JOB AID

Yes	No	Is the content mostly knowledge based?
Yes	No	Can any skill-based content be handled in the online environment or by blending?
Yes	No	Can effective activities and exercises be developed?
Yes	No	Are applicable paper-based graphics available, or can they be developed?
Yes	No	Is the need for human interaction during the learning important to its success?
Yes	No	Is there a need for collaborative learning?
Yes	No	Are team-based problem-solving and decision-making activities and practice important?
Yes	No	Is the background knowledge of the learners known?
Yes	No	Is corporate learning discipline strong enough to expect the learners to attend scheduled chat rooms and make posting deadlines?

Yes	No	Are critical content SMEs available often enough to share their expertise during chat room functions or on the discussion boards?
Yes	No	Are the employees who need the content in different locations?
Yes	No	Are competent designers available to create the online program?
Yes	No	Must the content be taught on a periodic basis no matter what the audience size?
Yes	No	Is the technology available for online learning?
Yes	No	Are trained online facilitators available?
Yes	No	Can the content be taught in an environment that is not face-to-face?
Yes	No	Is there a relatively short design window?
Yes	No	Is the content unstable?

WHAT THE LEARNERS SAY

Let's wrap up this look at synchronous e-learning with some thoughts from the people who matter most in the process, the learners. When asked what the most important characteristics of e-learning facilitators were, the learners said:

- How well they use humor
- Their interpersonal skills
- How fast their response time is
- Having a positive attitude
- Their ability to create a stimulating learning environment
- How well they adapt to their learners' needs
- Their ability to establish clear guidelines
- Their ability to motivate and engage
- Their content knowledge
- Their ability to make the learners feel that they are part of a team
- Their listening skills
- How well they can manage online discussions
- Their ability to provide feedback
- How well they use e-mail
- Their questioning ability

When asked what they felt their e-learning facilitators could have done but did not do online, the learners said:

- Directed my learning
- Relinquished control
- Provided a clear overview
- Made me feel more a part of a team
- Provided a telephone contact
- Established clear guidelines
- Shown empathy
- Had a positive attitude
- Provided better feedback
- Allowed for group collaboration activities
- Communicated more often

When asked what their top three barriers to being successful e-learners, were the learners said:

- Technological problems
- Minimal and not timely feedback from the facilitator
- Ambiguous instructions on the website as well as via e-mail

Other Online (and Virtual) Thoughts and Hints

A web meeting is not a virtual classroom, and software designed for this purpose should not be confused with software designed to be used for a virtual class. Of course, that doesn't mean you can't do training as part of a web meeting.

In a multi-country, multi-cultural environment, follow up a company-wide virtual class with a local facilitator who can speak to the local aspects and idiosyncrasies of the content being addressed.

Use virtual reflection meetings after a virtual class to solidify learning and do evaluation.

In a large conference-type meeting, use a virtual classroom chat feature to allow for Twitter-like interactions between the participants while the speakers are speaking. During planned times between speakers, show the chat strings and discuss them with the entire group.

Chapter 11

New Design Applications

As we already noted, the field of instructional design never stops moving or growing. The " old" standards such as e-learning and virtual classrooms, the older standards like linear video and multimedia, even the oldest ones such as face-to-face classrooms and OJT, are still in use and have their place in a designer's toolkit. However, new deliveries, new technologies, and new conceptualizations of what learning is and does are expanding the possibilities of instructional design every year.

This chapter will provide a brief look at some of those newer aspects, and what an " up-to-date" designer needs to know about them.

FLIPPED CLASSROOMS

We'll start our consideration of the new with a look at an old design, the classroom, with a twist … or perhaps a flip is the better term. In its most basic form, a flipped classroom is a blended approach, and a simple one at that. The learners are given pre-class assignments dealing with the cognitive content of the course that require completion before the class itself. Most of this content is in the form of video-based, PowerPoint–augmented lectures that would normally be given live. During scheduled class time, instead of the lecture, the facilitator leads a discussion on the topics that were presented in the video and engages the learner in various interactions.

As you might guess, the concept of the flipped classroom comes from academia, where lectures are the most prevalent delivery system. However, it has a lot of possibilities for the organizational instructional designer (ID) as well. I'm not much in favor of videoing lectures, but if that's the only method available to you due to your SME's availability, it is at least worth a shot, and it's a rapid design process. Remember to use good e-design rules by making sure the objectives are strong enough to guide the learning and that you break the video into digestible chunks with self-quizzes or other activities in between.

A better approach would be to take the content and make it into a true e-learning program. You can still use video, including slugs of the SME talking, shots of equipment or people working with things. It doesn't need to be broadcast quality. I know one facilitator (who happens to be married to me) who uses pieces from YouTube interspersed in her pre-class content package. You can also use readings from books, magazine articles, websites, almost any source you can think of to make the pre-class package more interesting and the design time shorter.

The other aspect of a flipped classroom a designer needs to be concerned with is the classroom portion itself. The purpose of this approach is to open up classroom time for other activities and interactions, so those activities have to be designed into the facilitator guide. They might include hands-on time, discussion, question-and answer sessions, simulations, networking events, small group interactions, even guided discovery processes. In fact, a flipped classroom gives you the ability to design in any of those various classroom activities we discussed earlier, and the time to actually do them, instead of having the facilitator spouting content.

As always in smart ID, let your objectives be your guide. Lower level and cognitive objectives should be covered in the pre-class processes, while high-level cognitive, performance, and even affective objectives belong in the classroom.

A particularly effective activity that I've seen in flipped classrooms, especially large ones, is the use of audience response systems. These have been around for a while now and have evolved to the point at which you don't even need special equipment for them, just the software, a computer with a projector, and a room full of learners who have laptops … or tablet computers, or even smart phones.

Designing in polling-type questions (the same kind as you'd design into a virtual class) can lead to really strong "Why did you vote like….?" or "minority speaks," or "What if it came up the other way around?" questions that, in turn, can lead to excellent discussions, although you need to work with your facilitators to keep these issues from turning into arguments, which brings up the whole concept of facilitator training for a flipped classroom.

There is another flipped classroom activity involving collaborative learning that I've found to be quite effective. Its design consists of a pre-assignment cognitive activity (readings, videos, etc.) followed with a graded test based on what should have been learned in the pre-assignment as the introductory class interaction. This is termed a *readiness assurance test*, or RAT, as many of the learners prefer calling it. The class is then divided into teams, and the same RAT is given to the teams to discuss and agree on team answers to the

questions. This is also collected and graded, and problems the teams had in agreeing to answers on the RAT are discussed.

The next activity is a series of focused application exercises based on the cognitive content, in which each scenario, simulation, or case study comes with four or five answer choices, only one of which is totally correct, but with two or three others that are close (this is the hardest part of the design to create). The teams discuss each exercise, and the possible answers, and when time is up (not before), hold up a card that has the number of the team answer (good time for looking over your neighboring team's shoulder here, so the facilitator needs to do some closer monitoring).

Each team explains the reasoning for their answer, the facilitator calling first on teams that had the "almost right" answers, and ending with a team that had the "totally correct" one, thus allowing the teams to see where their logic might have been faulty.

A peer evaluation of how each member of the team contributed to the work can be added for Level 2 evaluation purposes, and I've talked to some designers who add a practice RAT at the beginning to give the learners a bit of self-evaluation on how well they've mastered the content in the pre-assignment before they take the RAT that counts.

One of the disadvantages of a flipped classroom for this type of activity, and most others, is that the facilitator must, of necessity, be an SME. The idea of the flipped classroom is to create classroom time for activities and interactions. No matter how well designed your activities are, that type of classroom can lead down paths you simply can't anticipate, but an SME can deal with.

This brings up two other issues related to SME facilitators, both requiring a serious facilitator training program. Actually, they are two parts of the same issue. Unless you're more fortunate than most of us and your organization has a strong SME facilitator training program, your SMEs will not be trained in facilitation techniques, particularly as they relate to a highly interactive classroom. You'll need to give then instruction on how to facilitate a discussion properly, how to run a Q&A session, how to wait for answers and give the learners space to think, and how to do whatever you've designed into your classroom. If you don't, a second issue will quickly appear, in that the SMEs will fall back on an approach they are comfortable with and begin to lecture again.

In fact, part of your facilitator training should be to keep reminding the SMEs that this isn't a lecture, and that they are wasting valuable time, both theirs and the learners', by rehashing materials the learners have already covered during their before-class work.

One of the most egregious examples of this that I've encountered is when I worked hard with my SMEs to make sure they understood the importance

of debriefing activities, only to watch as they used the debriefing as a chance to lecture the learners on things they felt had been missed or not covered in enough detail in the course outline and before-class work. We fixed that with some one-on-one coaching and fixed some areas of the program as well, as the SMEs were right … we did miss some important things.

A good design for a flipped classroom also includes a bit of training for the learners as to what is expected of them in the class (participation and more participation), and what is expected of them in the pre-class work (do it!)

This is one of the real weaknesses of the flipped classroom: What do you do when a learner, or a bunch of learners, have not done the pre-class assignment. The SME facilitator knows what to do: pull out the lecture notes and review everything, which pretty much turns off the learners who did the assignment. So making sure your SMEs don't do this becomes another piece of your facilitator training.

I'll be honest, I don't have a real answer for this weakness. It's the same problem you have when you design a pre-reading or a pre-activity like a questionnaire into your regular classroom. I favor having a quiz, or some type of an assignment like a "what I learned" writing that is sent to the facilitator before class begins, or better yet, to the boss. But that begs the question to an extent, as what do you do if the learner doesn't do that either? How much do you hound them, and how much time does the facilitator or boss have to do the hounding?

I also favor the opposite approach of simply saying, "These are adult learners. If they are not motivated enough to do their part in the learning, then chances are they are not going to learn anyway." This approach means more intensive facilitator training about not going back to the lecture or some other content delivery process to help the non-compliant learners "catch up," and I don't use it for mandated or safety-critical training, but it is a practical approach. An announced certification assessment at the end of the class tends to make this a more viable option.

I had a client once who used a somewhat more draconian method for a five-day, offsite, management development class, in which those who had not completed the assigned pre-class work were allowed to travel to the class and were then sent back home, with a note to their boss that training was not picking up the travel expenses. This was announced in advance, but I still had two people who came to the class and I had to ask to leave … which wasn't fun. I have to admit though, it never happened again in the dozen or so classes I facilitated on that project.

I suppose the answer lies somewhere in between the draconian solution and the "it's their responsibility" approach, but like most of instructional design, it is more a situational decision than a procedure that works every time.

Flipped classrooms are a great delivery system for software training. The learners learn the basics by using the software and its documentation, augmented with some good objectives and job aids, and class time is spent discussing their problems and questions, and allowing them to practice scenarios with an expert there to help them on a one-to-one basis.

One final thought on flipped classrooms. Because of their very nature, they require a more intensive than usual Level 2 evaluation, particularly if there is a series of skills that the learners practice in the classroom as part of the design or you are dealing with compliance training. Follow the rules of good criterion-based testing that we have already discussed, and your final assessments will be both effective and valid. In fact, follow the rules of good instructional design period, and your flip won't be a flop.

MOBILE LEARNING

A second newer, if not new, delivery process has actually been around for some time now, mobile learning. Mobile learning started with the Army's use of hand-held devices that contained content, job aids, and entire electronic performance support systems for use in the field, or at least away from the classroom, to troubleshoot and repair various machines and their electronic components.

The concept moved into the business world with salespeople carrying laptop computers that had explanations of products and sales processes that they could access when preparing for a client meeting.

The proliferation of tablet PCs and smart phones enhanced the mobility of m-learning considerably, and it's now possible to create learning programs that are accessible any time, anywhere. The process has become accepted to the point where ASTD now has a mobile learning certificate program that one can take.

Before the end of this chapter, you are going to get tired of me saying this, but m-learning is simply another delivery system, and one that for the most part has the same design and development advantages and disadvantages as asynchronous e-learning, as that's what it mostly is. Notice I said "for the most part," because mobile learning has a distinct advantage in that you can deliver your training almost anywhere, and a distinct disadvantage in that there are major bandwidth and even connectivity problems depending on where "anywhere" is.

For example, there are still places in the United States (not to mention the rest of the world) where there is no cell phone signal for your smart phone–based mobile learning. There are also a number of signal compatibility issues in other countries as well that make certain smart phones kind of useless, which means your m-learning is as well. Added to these disadvantages is

the fact that even the best tablets are still slow compared to powerful laptops and have much less memory for your heavily video-based training, or if your learners need to download a larger program to the device before accessing it. Oh, and everyone doesn't have exactly the same mobile device that works the same way or with the same operating system.

There are certainly ways to design around these disadvantages, but the wise instructional designer needs to know what they are and what such workarounds will mean, before choosing m-learning as the delivery system for a program.

Start by asking the most basic of questions: "Do we really need m-learning?" and follow that up with an estimate of how many projects it is really needed for. There is a lot to do and sometimes a lot of expense in developing an m-learning system for a company, and even to sell the concept you need to have a good reason as to why the organization needs it; in fact, a lot of good reasons will work even better if you are trying to gain management approval and support.

Probably the most critical reason for creating an m-learning capability is training availability. This is also m-learning's great advantage: training is there when the learner needs it. Sales forces, technicians in the field, even surgeons in the operating room, require the type of availability that m-learning provides. Employees who spend their day at a desk looking into a computer screen do not, no matter how cool it might be to give them the ability to access the learning on their way home or while they are on vacation. They might not think this is all that cool at all. You need to determine whether your mobile target audiences are truly mobile, with mobile needs, or whether they spend most of their learning time in a hotel room where they can easily plug in their laptops.

Another reason for using mobile learning might be that your learners have a vast quantity of information that they need to learn and relatively little time to learn it. M-learning, if designed properly, allows them the ability to access small pieces of learning whenever they have time, even while they are waiting for their laptop computers to warm up in that hotel room.

Once you've decided you have a need, you will want to determine whether you are going to create the m-learning in-house or use a vendor—or my favorite technique, a little of each. If you go with the in-house approach, you'll need to decide what m-learning tools you'll have to purchase and how you'll learn to use them effectively. If you go with a vendor or consultant, you have a whole set of issues, the same ones we discussed earlier when talking about e-learning consultants.

However, doing some of each means you hire consultants to do some m-learning for you and teach you how to do it for yourself at the same time.

That way, you have a ready-made resource if you need it for crash projects (which never seem to end) and an in-house capability for smaller pieces or to quickly revise a program.

Next, hardware comes into play. Will you buy the mobile devices for your learners or have them use their own personal devices? If it's the latter, how will you account for changing file formats to match the learners' equipment, and for possible multiple operating systems? If it's the former, will it be smart phones or tablets? Tablets have greater capability, but smart phones are more mobile. And most importantly, how will you pay for them and deal with security issues.

Security issues are a big concern, and not just lost or stolen devices. Will your mobile learning be able to go back and forth across the corporate firewalls? Will you be comfortable with the ability of just about anyone being able to see your training if they have the device? What will be the ramifications if a device is lost or stolen? And biggest of concerns: Will IT allow you to do it at all?

I hope you see by now that m-learning is not quite as simple as uploading a training program to the corporate intranet and providing your learners with access. But if you've made it over all these hurdles and have a real need for an m-learning delivery, then let's look at some of the design and development implications.

First, you need to know your learners and their comfort and ability with mobile devices. If they use them mainly to text and play an occasional round of Candy Crush, then you will need to do some orientation for them as to how they can best utilize your m-learning process. This type of orientation is also a great idea for new employees coming on board.

M-learning requires a much stronger analysis to, among other things, determine what the learners need to know. Adding too much in the way of nice-to-know information makes your m-learning less efficient, as the learners will have to search harder for what they need when they are out in the field. This means it will be less effective as well, as learning efficiency is one of m-learning's main advantages. As with any well-designed program, particularly with m-learning, you need to analyze and consider the training need itself, your audience (as we've already mentioned), the environment in which your learners might access the m-learning, and of course, the nature of content.

Your chunks of information need to be much smaller and tighter in m-learning. Courses, modules, and sections need to be broken up, and broken up again, into bite-sized pieces of learning. A good rule to go by is that if a piece of content contains more than one objective, it needs to be split again. You might want to call these new "mini-chunks" learning objects if

you will, since they basically reflect a single objective, but that term has been pretty much discarded by most of the profession.

The reason for all this "chunking" is that good mobile learning needs to be nonlinear to be accessed and utilized properly. The learners should be able to move anywhere in the program to find the piece of learning they need. Programs with one hundred sequential, roll-over-enhanced, video-augmented screens are just not effective in an m-learning environment.

Creating strong, searchable, "clickable" content outlines and tables of contents can help the learners to achieve this nonlinear personal access, as can pre-assessments that help a learner determine whether they can skip one or more learning objects.

Using your learner objectives for these outlines and tables of contents, and naturally for the pre-assessments, is a quick and easy way to create them.

You can add messaging, e-mail, chat, even streamed video to your m-learning, but you need software that supports them in a mobile environment, so be sure that if these augmentations are in your plans you pick the right m-learning software at the start. The same holds true for e-books , e-arts, and interactive PDFs, which have become staples of m-learning programs. These "quick" learning pieces work well in an m-learning environment, but the software needs to support them too.

Here are some other thoughts on making your m-learning work:

- Start small. Do one or two example programs and see how well they work and, more importantly, how often they are used by your target learners before going in the whole way
- Keep bells and whistles to the "needed" minimum to reduce lag time. This doesn't mean don't use the various interactive activities mentioned above, but only to use them judiciously and where they really enhance the learning
- Use short, simple "YouTube" type video pieces for your video requirements. Stay away from video segments longer than a minute or two
- Plan plenty of time for pilots and user testing, particularly for your first few programs
- Consider screen size, key size, and battery life when choosing devices or making a decision on using learner personal devices
- Decide whether you are expecting to have most of your programs net accessible or downloaded and stored on the users' devices
- Be aware that m-learning is a good delivery option for all domains and levels of objectives. Don't get caught in the trap of thinking it's only useful for low-level cognitive content

- Keep track of usage for evaluation and continuing analysis of needs
- Find out whether your m-learning will be compatible with your LMS and your corporate firewalls, particularly if you want to do evaluation and statistical use analysis
- Straight conversions from e-learning to m-learning seldom work well, and anyone who says they can do repurposing with "just the touch of a button" will be selling you snake oil next. The two delivery systems have much in common, but reread this section if you need to be reminded of the many ways they are not the same
- A really interesting new use of mobile learning is as a "guide source" that can lead your learners to where the best content for a particular bit of learning is located, either on the corporate net or the web, and provide a way to access that content

In the final analysis, m-learning's greatest advantage for IDs, except in very mobile environments, is its usefulness in performance support, such as the system the armed services uses for its technicians, and in much simpler ones such as straightforward job aids as well. These tools can be imbedded into the actual workflows to make them more relevant and available whenever and wherever a learner needs them.

One word of caution. As m-learning is the new "greatest thing," there is a lot of questionable information being written about it. I read the other day that objectives are neither needed nor wanted in m-learning, and my comment on using it for all levels and domains of objectives comes from reaction to another article that said it was only useful for low-level content. Read it all, including this piece I guess, with a healthy dose of skepticism, and make an informed decision for yourself and your company based on good research and a bit of common sense.

VIRTUAL LEARNING ENVIRONMENTS

A virtual learning environment or VLE is often defined as a tool set for the management of online learning, including delivery, tracking, and assessment. However, I prefer the somewhat narrower definition of a VLE being a place that allows facilitators and learners to communicate, basically a home page for a specific course. Two good examples of this type of VLE are Blackboard and Moodle in their Web 2.0 personas. Using this home page communications approach gives the ID the ability to design in any or all of the following functionalities:

- Assignments
- Assignment submissions

- Commenting on assignments
- Downloads of reading materials
- Discussion forums
- Gateway to synchronous e-learning modules
- Gateway to virtual classroom
- File downloading
- Exam distribution
- Grading
- Instant messaging to one or all participants
- Online course calendar
- Course news and announcement
- Q&As
- Online self-quizzes
- Course FAQs
- Course Wiki
- Activities
- Word or math games
- Database activities
- Graphics, animations, and videos
- Course enrollment
- Monitored web access to external sites for enrichment or higher-level performances
- Portal to other courses or learning resources

Now you might say this all sounds like things a good LMS can do, and you'd be right. If you think about the first definition we mentioned, it does sound like an LMS. The advantage of a VLE though is that it isn't a corporate-wide institution that requires IS to program everything you want it to do. With the best of the VLEs, after installation and a quick tutorial, designers can set up the functionalities on their own or change them as course and learner needs dictate, even on the fly.

VLEs are great for collaborative learning, as the facilitator can make an assignment and even choose groups or monitor how the groups are self-assigning, directly from the VLE. During the collaborations, postings and chat rooms on the VLE keep the facilitator aware of how the team processes are going. As you might expect from what you learned of online instruction in the previous chapters, a VLE is an excellent method for holding an online series of development processes.

VLEs are not an LMS, however, and some of their functionality is very limited. This is particularly true for developing test questions and test question banks, although only the best (and most complicated) LMSs are very good at this to begin with.

VLEs are great though for monitoring learner progress, creating shared learner profiles, and assigning learning activities. You can even grant permission for supervisors to monitor their specific learners in some VLEs, so they become a larger part of the learning process.

When choosing a VLE, make a list of the functionalities you must have and those you'd like to have. Then go to the vendors and say, "Show me." Chances are no single software tool will have everything you want, but pick the closest one, and ask whether the vendor can do some modifications. Some can—and will.

VLEs can be personalized for your specific course with a course map, and even a course logo, and a few of them can be personalized down to the learner level, which can make your course really stand out. For the designer, the most important aspect of a VLE is that your design is only constrained by your imagination and, of course, your time.

SOCIAL NETWORK–BASED LEARNING

The concept of social network–based learning has everyone confused, particularly instructional designers, as it is difficult to design for a process when at its foundation (the Internet), all ideas are equal in value, and it is more important that you say something, than that you know what you are talking about. Of course, these two comments are a bit facetious, but only a bit. Social networkers do tend to consider the idea as more important than the source, and thinking for yourself, then using what you find useful while discarding the rest is the order of the day in social networks.

For the ID this means that training delivered in a social network or social media environment needs to rely less on the authority involved (the SME), and more on the breadth of ideas presented, allowing for discussion and individual decision making.

In its most basic state, social network–based learning is simply a continuation and augmentation of what designers have already been doing when using e-learning and virtual classroom deliveries. Threaded discussions and chat rooms, which are mainstays of both these technologies, are just as big a part of social network–based learning. In fact, you can become even further foundational and consider the tenants of self-direction and self-directed learning as the cornerstones to successful social network–based learning.

Learner readiness, learner choice, self-instruction, self-evaluation, and the psychology behind these concepts are some of the main characteristics

of social network–based learning. Podcasts, blogs, and wikis all require, and are fueled by, the learners' ability and need to be responsible for their own learning.

So what does all this mean for the designer? First, you need to be aware that while everyone is on the social network–based learning bandwagon today, that doesn't mean you have to be, too. It is simply another delivery system, useful where it's useful, and possibly less than useless where it's not, as it takes resources and time away from learning deliveries that could work.

If your analysis determines that a social network–based learning delivery will be efficient and effective for a particular learning situation and you have that capability in your organization, then in should be considered and implemented if agreed on by the business. However, if you don't have an internal social networking system, and either don't want, or are not permitted to use a public system such as Google or Facebook, spending your time trying to sell the concept to your organization may not be worth the effort. There are likely other alternative deliveries that will work almost as well.

On the other hand, if you and your company feel that social network–based learning should be an important aspect of your overall training system, here are some hints that might help you design for it:

- Be sure before you embark on the process that there are advantages for both your learners and your company
- Align your social network–based learning with company performance objectives
- Seed your social network–based learning with both voluntary and involuntary aspects. The latter will allow you to focus the learning; the former will give the learners a feeling of control
- Remember that this is a form of self-instruction, so prepare your learners for it as you would any self-directed process in the ways we discussed earlier
- Start small, perhaps with a single community of practice, or a facility that allows anyone in the organization to post a micro-blog
- Use social network–based learning to provide wider and deeper content before, during, and after a formal training program
- Utilize questions and answers discussed in your social network–based learning system to determine knowledge and skills gaps in the organization that need to be addressed
- Sell your managers on the concept, as they must be the advocates who will make it function

- Create open-ended activities to allow for maximum interactions among your learners
- Use polls to begin discussions, and then allow them to flourish on their own or, better yet, turn into online multi-participant debates
- Don't stop at chat rooms once you find it is working; initiate blogs, podcasts, wikis, and video sharing
- Introduce your learning networks during new employee orientation
- If permitted by your organization, use networking engines your learners are familiar with such as Facebook, Google Groups, Skype, Twitter, and others
- Utilize games extensively for their interactions and familiarity in online environments
- Use peer reviews as a significant aspect of your evaluation process
- Take advantage of the web to allow for free-form learning from multiple resources
- Create situations that require collaborative learning
- Seed your communities of practice with questions and answers to interest learners in coming back
- Learning communities are seldom self-sustaining. If you are planning to use one or more as part of a program, be sure they are active and growing
- If you want to create a COP or other type of learning community for your social network learning, develop a manager position in the network responsible for monitoring the information flow, orienting new members, and anything else needed to keep the process going
- Involve the lurkers. A significant portion of a learning community are "lurkers" who never become involved. Create ways to pull them out of the shadows and keep them active; collaborative activities where everyone has a role work well for this
- Create an electronic learning diary facility (such as a Twitter hash tag or YouTube space) for your learners, where they can record their learnings and that you can use for Level 1 and 2 evaluation
- Integrate your social network–based learning with your company's LMS to find out what your learners are learning and what they feel is necessary or not necessary for them to learn
- Social network–based learning includes many aspects of knowledge management, or perhaps knowledge non-management is a better term, so integrate it with your company's knowledge management system as well,

if you have one. If you don't have a knowledge management system, start one by developing something like a push bulletin board facility where questions from learners are "pushed" out to volunteer company experts for answers

Social network–based learning in its purest form is peer-to-peer learning, an aspect of informal learning, a concept we will discuss later. It meets the needs of the Millennial generation for self-direction in their learning and for a networking environment like the ones that they have become accustomed to in their everyday lives. It is a pull process coming from their needs, and not the usual push process that has always been used in training. If conceived and implemented well, it can become a strong delivery system for both formal and informal learning in the organization.

MASSIVE OPEN ONLINE COURSES (MOOCS)

A MOOC is an online course in which anyone can participate through open web access. The concept was begun by various universities as a system of free, non-degree courses available to anyone who has a computer or other electronic device capable of assessing a MOOC. The idea was a really good one—to make learning available to everyone rather than only to those who can pay for a degree program. However, more and more of the newer MOOCs are coming with a closed license for their course material, which abrogates part of the concept of being able to use MOOC content to create more MOOCs.

A lot of the current MOOCs use video lectures, or what we used to call the "talking head" approach (of course, now it's a talking head with PowerPoint), as they've been uploaded from universities that seem to feel that listening to an expert pontificate, particularly if he or she shows lots of confusing and often unreadable graphics, is better than learning something. However, there are some that have incorporated collaborative learning, peer review, original videos, e-books, online assessments, and even criterion-based evaluation, in other words, true online learning as we discussed earlier.

Government agencies, and even private enterprise, has begun to see the value of using the MOOC format, although the latter mostly employ it to create marketing pieces, thinly veiled as learning programs.

The concept of MOOCs for the instructional designer is akin to the old learning portals, where the company bought a series of programs from a vendor and created a portal where the employees could access the programs from the vendor's server. The only real difference is that MOOCs are free and the portal is the web.

The learning portal was an excellent development opportunity for the employee and a great course enrichment tool for the designer. I used such

a system in the past as part of a blended learning system. The problem was that the purchased content was never exactly what we wanted for the design, and the vendor would not allow us to customize it. With the original MOOC concept, there was no problem as long as you had the time to customize. Unfortunately, as noted earlier, this is changing.

A number of companies have started using the MOOC concept, most simply by accessing the higher-education courses that are available as MOOCs. This allows the organization to bring experts directly into their learning systems, basically without paying for them. The problem of the "talking head" still remains in a lot of these courses though, and IDs are being assigned the task of creating "some kind of activity-based processes" to bring the concepts up to a higher standard in the workplace environment, often a daunting task indeed.

MOOCs are being used to aid in recruiting qualified candidates for various jobs, by giving them a chance to "pre-learn" content before they are interviewed and for customer education/training, which may prove to be its most valuable use for organizations, as the customer can access free training programs on the businesses' products any time and place they choose.

IDs have various tasks when it comes to MOOCs in their organization, the most important being to ensure the quality of the programs coming from higher education or other sources. Then there is adding interactivity and business validity to the MOOC material, customizing the MOOCs to meet business needs, blending the MOOCs into other delivery systems such as flipped classrooms, and evaluating their effectiveness in social network–based learning situations, where MOOCs can be of great value.

A MOOC delivery system requires a strong technology base and a fairly heavy support system for answering learner questions, dealing with comments, fixing breakdowns, monitoring and administering chats and discussion boards, if that is part of your interactive aspect, and any number of other typical support services for an e-learning environment. You need to be sure the content you require is out there in MOOC land and that you divide the learning into the usual small chunks necessary for any asynchronous process. Academia often doesn't worry about such niceties; lectures are whatever length the professor makes them. You'll even need to reconsider how you recognize learner achievement, as most MOOC practitioners have reported that achievement recognition, and lots of it, is a key factor in the success of a MOOC process.

However, if you have determined that you have a strong organizational need that a MOOC delivery can fulfill (always the most important first step), and you have the support to create such a delivery system, MOOCs can enhance your learning process considerably.

COMMUNITIES OF PRACTICE

It's likely you are already in one or more communities of practice, so you know what they are and the advantages of belonging to them. We've mentioned how to use a VLE to create them specifically for a course, and how they are useful in social network–based learning processes. They are also one of the most widely used and successful examples of informal learning.

In its most basic form, a community of practice is a group of people who are practitioners in a profession or an area within a profession who communicate to share information, experiences, and techniques among the members for the purpose of learning and development. Today, most COPs communicate through electronic media such as e-mails, discussion boards, and chat rooms. COPs should not be confused with communities of interest that tend to share information on topics that are of common interest as well, but are not necessarily all practitioners in the field they are interested in. An example might be a group who are all interested in playing guitar, but none are professional musicians.

COPs are the pinnacle of self-direction in learning. Members use them as a resource to find information on a topic of interest to them or to find other resources on the topic through talking to fellow members. They ask questions that experts might read and answer or post their own thoughts on a concept, theory, or comment in a threaded discussion. Members explore what they are interested in exploring for their own reasons and ignore those aspects of the COP that are not of interest to them, truly a process of self-efficacy.

COPs come in all sizes and exist for a variety of reasons. They appear and disappear, or at least are vibrant or not, depending on the needs of the members and the energy of a leader, who is almost always needed to keep the COP vital and growing.

As an instructional designer, I like the idea of having a community of practice tied directly to a course, particularly if it is a longer course or a multi-year development program. Such a COP may be short-lived, disappearing with the end of the program, but its ability to augment and enrich the learning experience of my learners is unmatched and worth the effort. I've even created ones that far outlived the actual course itself and are still going strong.

Seeding your COP with questions and answers is often a good way to start. I like to do this and then invite a few of the company experts in whatever discipline the course is about to join in. The Q&As often begin a lively discussion among the experts that the course participants can watch and join in on, particularly if you throw in a few ringer questions whose answers are controversial to begin with.

Of course, experts' time is valuable, so I try to sell them on the idea with an introductory e-mail that explains what the course is about, how the COP fits in, and notes that if they have an objective in their performance plan to develop younger practitioners in the discipline (most of them do), then contributing to the COP would be a great way to meet that objective.

One word of warning: if you are thinking of designing a COP into your program, don't use it as if it were a VLE. Your COP is not the place to post homework assignments, make announcements, or talk about schedule changes. Doing this usually turns off the experts you tried to bring in, as they aren't interested in these course mechanics processes. It also changes the learners' perception of the COP from a place to learn to a place to be informed, certainly not what it should be for.

Another way to utilize a community of practice in your design is to hook into one that already exists. Most big companies, and a number of smaller ones as well, have a facility for creating company-wide COPs and often have a number of viable ones running. If there is one that is in line with the discipline your course is attached to, don't simply tell your learners to go there and read—or even to interact. First, they may not be welcome, and second, you're missing a great opportunity to enhance their learning with this laissez-faire approach.

Contact the leader of the COP, and once again explain your course and why you would like to have your learners as participating members. Ask how they might participate without overwhelming the COP and whether the leader would be willing to send a message to the members explaining what is happening and asking for their support. I've had leaders and members of COPs who have actually helped me create activities for my learners that they could complete by using the COP as their resource central. Most experts love to share their knowledge if you ask, particularly if you are not beating them up by continually referring back to the objectives as you have to do when they are functioning as a course SME. COPs aren't for objectives; they are for questioning, answering, problem solving, and far and wide discussions and the learning that goes along with such self-directed processes.

INFORMAL LEARNING

Informal learning creates a real challenge for the instructional designer. It is certainly a delivery system, and most say one that accounts for a significant percentage of the learning that occurs in an organization, although I'm a bit of a doubter concerning the percentages that have been bandied around in recent years.

The main reason for my doubts is that trying to define informal learning is a lot like trying to define cognition. Everyone can see it happening, but no one is quite sure what it is. Some definitions say it is unconstrained and not officially recognized learning, others that it is accidental or unplanned learning. Still others define it as learning that happens any time, anywhere or learning that occurs without a structured curriculum. This all makes it hard to pin down informal learning, let alone figure what the percentage is.

We've already discussed the ID's role in social network–based learning and communities of practice, which are often considered mainstay aspects of informal learning, yet how do you design for a delivery that, by its definition and very nature, is not designed for?

My thought is that you don't. Whatever informal learning is, it is not something a designer can create or, for that matter, control. It just happens everywhere and all the time in an organization, and always has. A phone call from one expert to another to ask an opinion, a question from a novice to a veteran sitting in the next cube, a discussion in the break room about a thorny issue, a manager who mentors an up-and-coming employee because he enjoys it, even the old standard, unstructured OJT, are all informal learning and untouchable by IDs.

We can structure the informal learning a little by creating informal learning opportunities, such as COPs and discussion boards, in our formal learning processes and give it a helping hand by recognizing the process itself and the people who are using it effectively. One approach to this is the relatively new concept of "open badges," electronic awards that recognize self-directed learning successes on the part of employees. The open badges usually reside on a company website or social media site; clicking on a badge tells other employees what the recipient did to earn it.

Another approach is instituting an "informal learning records bank," where participants send short notes that indicate informal and even experiential learning that they have achieved. Systems such as this reflect what I think is the real corporate purpose of informal learning, not to design it or control it, both of which are highly unlikely, but to capture it and evaluate its effect on the organization.

If this sounds like a daunting task, I agree. There have already been a number of methods proposed in the literature to capture informal learning and even models created based on theoretical constructs. One such method divides informal learning into the classifications of: Was it a good solution to a training need? Were there strong community and involvement aspects? and Did it meet the organization's performance goals?

I think most of these methods and models have missed the point. Informal learning may or may not meet organizational performance goals, but it's kind of

likely that it met an individual's goals or the learner would not have embarked on it. This in itself affects the organization positively by affecting the employee positively. The informal learning may not even answer a training need, other than a personal one, and there is no use asking whether it is a good delivery system. It is the one used by the learners for this learning need, so it's the only delivery system.

However, organizations are organizations and will always want to track and evaluate what's happening inside them. Evaluation usually falls under the job description of the ID. So you can use methods such as the informal learning record bank or individual learning portfolios that learners keep as part of their performance and development process to track informal learning. The self-assessments done during performance reviews are also a good source of information on what informal learning is occurring around the company. There are even a few organizations that have created a specific informal learning self-assessment that their employees fill out once a year.

As far as a quantitative evaluation methodology for informal learning, such as Kirkpatrick's, I've not seen one yet that makes a lot of sense. Most of them tend to stray away from informal learning and back to formal programs to obtain data. If pressed, I'd try to do some form of polling (electronic, naturally) to determine which employees were engaged in informal learning (depending on your definition, it's likely to be all of them), what they are learning informally (give them some examples of informal learning and how they might be going about it), and whether they feel the informal learning has been of benefit to the organization (examples would help here). Three questions is probably more than enough to expect the employees to complete for this type of survey. Crunch your numbers, and you'll probably have as good an evaluation of the organization's informal learning as you can get.

Informal learning is self-directed; in fact, a better term for organizations might be employee-directed, as the employees are the ones who feel the need to learn and find resources to meet that need. As an ID, you can't design it, but you can nurture it and, if necessary, evaluate it, by asking the only people who will know … the employees.

THE CLOUD

There is a commercial out in which one person says to another: "Maybe we can put it on the cloud," The second person responds: "I don't know what that is," to which the first person replies: "Nobody does."

Count me in as one of those nobodies. I'm not sure how it works or why it works, or whether someday it might simply evaporate, as clouds tend to do, but it sure sounds interesting. The ability to use any electronic device anywhere, any time, to bring training into the hands of your learners creates incredible

possibilities for the instructional designer. It sounds a lot like m-learning from that viewpoint, but according to its press agents, the cloud will eliminate many of the bandwidth, download, and access problems associated with training that uses a tablet or smart phone as the delivery technology.

There are plenty of definitions for "cloud computing" and, for the most part, they point to the same thing: taking applications and running them on infrastructure other than your own. Companies or individuals can use cloud computing to offload or effectively "outsource" their hardware and/or software applications that are running their training programs "in the cloud."

Like most of the newer delivery systems we've been discussing in this chapter, "cloud learning" can be extremely effective as a pull process, with the learners "pulling" the learning they need or want, when they want it, from the cloud on their own personal pad, phone, laptop, or desktop. It seems that the cloud will somehow also deal with the compatibility issues when using different types of technology and operating systems that we discussed earlier. I'm not sure how it does this, but I sure am in favor of it if it does.

Basically, a facilitator or designer can upload assigned lessons directly into the cloud, and the learners will be able to readily access their assignments and instructions from it. Activities, exercises, and simulations can also be uploaded, either as part of the program or on an individual basis, which is a great advantage for prescriptive learning.

Learners can take uploaded assessments and download their scores, remedial tests can be individualized for downloading by small groups or single learners, and the current version of the cloud has both audio and full motion video capabilities for augmenting your lessons.

A newer use of the cloud is for video-based web conferencing. Through the cloud you can have relatively cheap, multi-site videoconferencing or, more importantly for us designers, video classes. Being able to see all your classrooms, or even all your individual learners, simultaneously in real time beats the heck out of virtual classroom technologies. You can even blend virtual classroom functionalities and collaboration tools inside the video-based cloud platform to create a distance learning process that is as close to a face-to-face classroom as you can get … and perhaps even a bit better. Best of all … facilitators and SMEs can stay home and not have to travel to deliver your programs.

Good designers already know all the basics for creating a strong synchronous multimedia virtual classroom using these technologies; it's only a question of blending the good stuff you use all the time into a new kind of delivery package.

The biggest advantage of cloud learning for a company, other than having excellent training naturally, is cost savings. Travel costs are reduced and

data storage costs are reduced, as on the cloud you pay only for what you use, instead of paying for a big server that is half empty. Hardware costs are reduced as much smaller and cheaper technology such as tablets and smart phones can take the place of big desktop machines for doing technology-based training.

Here are some other advantages of using the cloud for your training processes:

- Cloud-based applications mean no downloading, version control issues, or reduced machinery function due to use for training
- Updates of software and programs are simpler and faster
- Document format compatibility problems are reduced or eliminated
- Increased demand due to corporate upsizing or simply new hiring is no problem
- Using varying types of tagging and tracking technologies, records of all learning accessed, formal and informal, can be recorded for analysis of program usage and individual development

So far, cloud learning usage seems to be relatively small, but growing. A great deal of both the research and practical application is happening in the public education sector, with much help from cloud computing companies like IBM and Microsoft. I've not talked with any IDs whose companies are into it in a big way, but if there is someone out there who is considering it, particularly if he or she is thinking of designing synchronous video classrooms such as we discussed earlier, I'm available to help!

Glossary

Action Verb: A word that conveys action/behaviors and reflects the type of performance that is to occur. Action verbs reflect behaviors that are measurable and observable.

Active Performance Support System: An electronic performance support system that actually monitors the employees' work and stops them to lend advice and support when necessary. There are few of these in existence.

Advance Organizer: A brief introduction to a training aspect that outlines its structure and defines how the content builds on existing knowledge.

Alpha Test: The first evaluation of a technology-based program, used to test the user interface and to determine overall usability.

Analog Audio and Video: Audio or video information normally stored in a tape format; it is differentiated from digital audio and video, which usually use some type of computer format as the storage medium. Digital video and audio are needed for e-learning and CD-ROM training deliveries.

Animation: A sequence of graphics presented in succession, animation is widely used to simulate motion in computer-based or e-learning deliveries.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of height to width of an image size (i.e., 4:3 is a standard aspect ratio for NTSC television).

ASTD: Training professionals organization encompassing all aspects of the profession.

Asynchronous: Usually in reference to e-learning, asynchronous refers to non-instructor-led training using a computer-network-based delivery system in which the trainees are not online at the same time nor in direct, immediate contact. The technique sometimes includes the use of electronic bulletin boards and chat rooms. It is often a mixed-media format combining a self-instructional aspect with one or more instructor-facilitated process.

Audience Analysis: An evaluation of a training audience to determine the background, needs, interests, preferences, and demographics of the group.

Authoring System: A software application used to create courseware by combining text, graphics, video, audio, and animations.

Bandwidth: Technically a concept that has to do with the size of the wire computers in a network are connected by, and how much information can flow over it. However, what it means is that e-learning using high-level video, graphics, and even audio is very difficult to do smoothly, at least today. It's the same reason surfing the net can be so slow at times. Usually the more bandwidth the better, as more information can be sent.

Barriers: Organizational factors that get in the way of performance.

Beta Test: An evaluation for a course or product, done by actual users and others, not necessarily in a real-life environment, to determine instructional flow and answer questions that surfaced during development of materials. It is also referred to as a "formative evaluation," although this term is being used less frequently.

Blog: A website where an individual author can post entries about a subject or topic of interest, comment on or add to other people's postings such as online course assignments.

Brainstorming: A technique for idea generation in which each person suggests as many ideas as possible, with no discussion of viability until after the session is complete. A recorder usually writes the ideas on some medium for this later discussion.

Branch Back: A technique where a wrong answer causes the program to replay the area of instruction where the correct answer resides.

Branching: An instructional technique in which the learner's next step is determined by his or her response to a previous step. Branching makes a course more interactive by allowing learners to take different paths through a course based on their needs and interests.

Browser: A software program that allows trainees to navigate through a web-based training program.

Bug: A programming error that causes a course to run improperly or stop running unexpectedly. Alpha tests are used to find bugs. Bugs are also known by the term "undocumented features," although usually only by programmers.

Bulletin Board/Discussion Boards: Software that allows trainees to post class information, activities, or questions electronically for reading and responding to by other participants and/or the instructor.

Button: An object on the computer screen that initiates an action when clicked.

CAI (see Computer-Assisted Instruction).

CBT (see Computer-Based Training).

CD-I (see Compact Disc–Interactive).

CD-ROM: CD-ROM is an older delivery media for multimedia-based programs. It has been mostly replaced by DVDs. It is used mostly for self-instructional training designs. It has a number of compatibility and storage size problems.

Chat Room: An electronic "place" where individuals can connect by sending typed text to one another in real time.

Checklist: A tool used to ensure that the important actions or steps in the performance of a task have been taken.

Chunking: The process of dividing a portion of training material into smaller pieces that are easier to deal with.

CMI (see Computer-Managed Instruction).

CMI (see Computer-Mediated Instruction).

Color Scheme: A group of complementary colors used in computer-based training to give a course a consistent look.

Compact Disc–Interactive: Another delivery technology that is much less widely accepted than CD-ROM. It uses its own machines rather than a regular computer for playback, which usually means less flexibility. Design and development are about the same as for CD-ROM, although it has better video capability. Compact disk–interactive machines are also more portable and more reliable in harsher environments. At the moment at least, they are cheaper than the average computer as well.

Compact Disc–Read-Only Memory (see CD-ROM).

Competency: The specific knowledge and skills and the application of that knowledge and those skills to the standard of performance required for a particular job.

Competency Analysis: An analysis process in which the competencies necessary to superior performance of a job are determined. In a second stage of the analysis, competencies of individual performers are determined based on the new competency model to develop individual or group training needs.

Completion Item: A test item requiring the completion of a statement, phrase, or concept.

Compressed File: Files that are reduced in size to allow for quicker transfer and more efficient storage. Particularly used by audio and video files across computer networks.

Computer-Assisted Instruction: Another term for computer-based training or computer-managed instruction. The term is mostly archaic, but appears from time to time in older literature.

Computer-Based Training: Arguably any training delivered by a computer. Can be a general term for any training done through the use of computers rather than through instructor facilitation, but is also often used to signify only

text-based computer-facilitated instruction. This is usually referred to derogatorily as an "electronic page turner" and is not considered good instruction.

Computer-Managed Instruction: Computer-based training that tracks and stores student performance data and maybe the delivery system as well. In computer-managed instruction, the computer or network (or both) is used basically for record keeping and administrative purposes. This concept is also archaic, and it has been replaced by learning management systems.

Condition: The part of an objective that describes the situation, environment, or limitations under which the learner must exhibit the behavior.

Content: The concepts, ideas, policies, and information that comprise a training program.

Content Outline: An outline that organizes course content into topics and subtopics.

Cost/Benefit Analysis: A method of assigning dollar values to the cost of training development and implementation and to the benefits derived from the training to determine whether it is worth the effort.

Course: A complete, usually integrated series of lessons identified by a common title. Courses usually make up a training curriculum, and in turn are made up of modules, units, sections, and so forth.

Course Map: The major concepts from a course in a visual arrangement, usually with lines drawn between associated concepts and relationships shown between the connected concepts. Maps usually break the course into units, lessons, frames, or segments and detail objectives, treatment, teaching strategies, and a skeleton storyboard if needed.

Courseware: The media (text, computer program, CD-ROM, etc.) that contains the content of the course.

Criterion: The standard by which learning is measured.

Criterion-Referenced Testing: Testing of the objectives as a learner progresses through the course of instruction. Success depends on the trainees' attainment of the objectives and *not* on how well they do in relation to others.

Critical Incident Method: A method of analysis through which experts identify the critical job incidents and their products. Incidents are classified as positive or negative, summarized, and then validated by the experts for completeness.

Criticality Analysis: A model for selecting tasks for training in which tasks are identified as critical based on their difficulty, importance, and frequency of performance.

Cross-Training: Providing training in several different areas or functions. This provides backup workers when the primary worker is unavailable.

Data Analysis: Analysis of records and files collected by an organization reflecting actual employee performance and results, such as sales figures, attendance figures, call-backs for repair, employee evaluations, etc.

Delphi Studies: A data-collection technique in which groups of SMEs respond to repeated cycles of prepared questions, each cycle of questions becoming more and more specific, based on answers to the previous cycle's questions.

Design Document: A conceptual report that gives all those involved in the development of a training program a picture of the overall course design. Items might include a mission statement, an audience profile, course objectives, content outline, a course map, an evaluation plan, and a visual motif.

Designer: An individual who attempts to make it easier for learners to learn by systematically discovering what a learner needs to know and then determining the best way to make that information available.

Desktop Training: Any training delivered by computer to a trainee's desk.

Dial-Up Connection: Using a modem and telephone line to connect to a computer network.

Digital Audio: Audio information stored as discrete numeric values. Computer disks, digital audiotape (DAT), and CD-ROMs are typical storage media for both digital audio and video.

Digital Video: Video that is digitized on a computer instead of residing on a magnetic tape. Digital video is easier to store, edit, and play on a computer.

This also makes it more expensive, and it takes up large amounts of storage capacity. Digital video, particularly for e-learning, is often shown on only a partial screen or in the less smooth fifteen frames/second (quick-time) format, if at all.

Digital Video-Disc: Digital video-discs are another advancement in delivery technology. They allow full motion video and all the other goodies of multimedia on a small-sized disc with plenty of storage capacity.

Digitize: To store media (graphic, audio, or video) in digital form. Often used to note the conversion from an analog to a digital format.

Distance Learning: Probably one of the most overused and much abused terms in technology-based training. At the basic level it simply means that the instructor and the learner are either not in the same physical location or not there at the same time, or both. However, it is often used to refer to satellite-mediated learning, even though computers, video players, and even telephones can be used as distance-learning delivery systems.

Distributed Implementation: A self-instructional delivery process in which there is no designated learning center. The packages are sent to the trainees' job locations and usually facilitated by a supervisor or other line individual.

Distributed Learning: A newer and also older term that means roughly the same thing as distance learning, but is coming into use due to distance learning's perceived relationship with satellites.

Downlink Site: The earth station in a satellite-based system that receives programming beamed from the satellite.

Download: To receive and store information from another computer or system.

Drill-and-Practice Exercises: Instructional activities designed to allow a learner to review previously learned information through repetition and rehearsal. Often a major activity set for computer-based training.

DVD (see Digital Video-Disc).

e-Learning: Technology-based training using the Internet as the delivery system. Advantages of this delivery system include reduced hardware

compatibility issues, easier and quicker revisions, and the possible maximum size of the distribution network. The disadvantages include security problems, speed, and bandwidth limitations, which reduce multimedia capability. e-Learning can be instructor-led or self-directed.

Electronic Performance Support System: Computerized applications that provide support for the user in accomplishing specific tasks, particularly those that are difficult to memorize or are done infrequently. An electronic performance support system may provide needed information, present job aids, and deliver just-in-time training on demand. Electronic performance support systems will often take the place of some training, although the employees need to be trained on how to use the system effectively.

Emoticon: A feature used in online classrooms where human expressions are represented by typing a sequence of characters or selecting from a list of icons.

Entry Skills (Entry Behavior): Skills or knowledge that the trainee must master before he or she can begin a training program.

EPSS (see Electronic Performance Support System).

Ergonomics: An approach to job design that focuses on the interactions between the person and his or her environmental elements.

Evaluation: Reviewing a course to determine its impact and improve its effectiveness.

Expert System: A type of electronic performance support system, normally a decision-making tool, that has been developed in conjunction with an expert on a job or process. It is designed to help the employee make correct decisions concerning particular tasks related to the job. It is the precursor to an active performance support system.

Facilitator: An individual who is responsible for helping trainees to learn, not by presenting information, but by listening, asking questions, providing ideas, suggesting alternatives, and identifying possible resources. Facilitators are found in the classroom and for self-instructional delivery as well, although their responsibilities are usually very different for these delivery systems.

Facilitator Guide: A companion piece in an ILT or virtual classroom design that provides the facilitator with specific and augmented information on how the class can be facilitated.

FAQ (see Frequently Asked Questions).

Feedback: Providing learners with information about an action and its result in relation to some criterion of acceptability. Feedback can be positive, negative, or neutral.

Field Production: A media production shot "on location" rather than in the studio.

Focus Group: A method of data collection using facilitated group discussions with SMEs. The facilitator leads the process, tries to make sure everyone is involved, and collects data for analysis.

Frequently Asked Questions: A file with commonly asked questions and their answers created to help trainees in self-instructional or asynchronous deliveries.

Graphical User Interface: A process for allowing the user to communicate with computer software through the use of graphic icons instead of words. Graphical user interface has become the preferred method for communication with computers, but can be tricky if the user does not understand what the icons represent. This is a particular problem in a multicultural environment. (Think Apple versus DOS.)

GUI (see Graphical User Interface).

Guided Simulation: A simulation in which learners receive coaching or feedback during the activity.

Handout: Supporting information used by the learner as reference or activity material in a training program. Handouts are often contained in the participant's package.

Hands-On: An activity in which the trainees practice on actual equipment, simulators, or special training aids.

Hot Spots: Places on a computer screen where hyperlinks occur and that a trainee can select. Sometimes they are obviously marked and sometimes not, depending on the type of interaction you are trying to accomplish.

HTML (see Hypertext Markup Language).

Human Performance Technologist: An individual responsible for utilizing various technologies designed to enhance human performance and capabilities in the workplace. These technologies include methods and procedures from many fields, such as instructional technology, organization development, career development, motivation and feedback, human factors, and employee selection.

Hyperlinks: A process in computer-based training that allows you to program places on a screen that, if selected, will "jump" the trainee to a further explanation of a concept, an example of it, or some other information concerning it or a related topic. This allows for the important process of learner control and for enrichment or remedial activities.

Hypermedia: Interactive computer-based instruction technique in which video, slides, graphics, or other media can have or even be "hot spots" that, when selected, send trainees down a new learning path.

Hypertext: More or less the same as hyperlink, except it is an older term that was used when only words were hyperlinks.

Hypertext Markup Language: The code used to create web pages.

ID (see Instructional Design).

ID Software (see Instructional Design Software).

IDL (see Interactive Distance Learning).

Immediate Feedback: Feedback given to learners at the moment they complete an action or provide some form of input, such as answering a question.

Individualized Instruction: A learning design in which each trainee works on materials without regard to what other trainees in the same class or facility are doing. Sometimes the learning is prescriptive, and it is often self-paced.

Instructional Activity: An activity designed to promote learning and transfer of knowledge. A course is typically a series of lessons made up of instructional activities.

Instructional Design: A systematic approach to creating training that meets the needs of the trainees and the organization while being as effective and efficient as possible.

Instructional Design Software: Similar to authoring systems but used before them to guide trainers in making important instructional design decisions for any type of training, but particularly for technology-based training. Instructional design software is usually easier to use than authoring systems, but it is the rare individual who can employ one without some instructional design knowledge. It is sometimes referred to as pre-authoring software.

Instructional Game: A game designed to teach concepts, behaviors, attitudes, or procedures. Can be part of an instructional activity.

Instructional Plan: An intermediate step in program design in which the topic outline is expanded to include sequenced content notations and possible activities.

Instructional Setting: The location and physical characteristics of the place in which a form of instruction takes place. The setting can be in a classroom, a laboratory, workplace location, learning center, or any other place in which people receive training.

Instructional Systems Design: A systematic process of designing learning activities. By following ISD, designers increase the likelihood that their course designs will be appropriate and effective. The most basic form of the ISD model is a five-step process of analysis, design, development, implementation, and evaluation.

Instructional Technologist: One who is an expert with instructional technologies. This is a dying breed, as no one person can be expert in all the varying technologies available today. Most practitioners consider themselves expert in one or two aspects of technology and work with teams of other experts to create great technology-based training. If you run into someone who claims to be a truly general instructional technologist, watch out for the snake oil.

Instructional Technology: The use of technology (video, computers, CD-ROM, modems, satellites, etc.) to deliver and/or support training.

Instructor: An individual who provides knowledge or information to learners by directly presenting content and directing structured learning experiences.

Instructor-Led Training: Training that relies on the instructor to present content and create an effective environment for learning.

Interactive Distance Learning: An interesting term that should simply be redundant, but often is not. It is used mainly to differentiate the old "talking head" tele-courses from more modern techniques in which trainee involvement in the distance-learning process is designed in. It is also used less frequently for the same purpose when differentiating the old "electronic page turners" from newer, more interactive computer-based training approaches. Good instructional design for technology-based training (or any instruction, for that matter) demands plenty of student interaction, so methods in which there is none should not be considered valid training techniques, which is why the term is redundant.

Interactive Video-Disc: This is an old technology that is almost obsolete. My advice is to ignore it and it will go away, mostly due to the emergence of digital video-discs.

Internet: A global network of networks connecting millions of computer users worldwide.

Internet Service Provider: A company or group that connects users to the Internet.

Interviews: A data-collection technique in which the collector meets with individuals, such as SMEs or managers, usually to ask them a series of prepared questions.

Intranet: A private network based on the Internet standards, but servicing a known organization from behind a secure access point.

Introduction: A major section of a lesson plan designed to establish common ground, capture and hold trainee attention, outline the lesson, point out benefits of the learning, and to lead the trainee into the body of the lesson.

ISD (see Instructional Systems Design).

ISP (see Internet Service Provider).

Item Analysis: The process of evaluating test items by determining how well an individual item is answered by examinees, its relative difficulty value, and its correlation with objectives.

IVD (see Interactive Video-Disc).

JIT (see Just-in-Time).

Job Aid: An easy-to-carry summary of a procedure that the learner can use on the job to aid transfer of learning. It provides guidance on the performance of a specific task or skill. Job aids are used in situations in which it is not feasible or worthwhile to commit the procedure to memory before on-the-job activity.

Job Analysis: A technique for breaking a job into component parts such as duties and tasks.

Job Duty: A combination of related tasks equals a duty, and duties combine to form a job.

Just-in-Time: A method of providing training when it is needed by the trainee rather than when a class is held or a trainer is available.

Learner Characteristics: The traits, such as reading level, education, position, interests, and so on, possessed by learners that could affect their ability to learn.

Learning Center: A designated facility, usually staffed by one or more facilitators, where trainees go to view self-instructional programs.

Learning Portal: A website that offers access to learning and training resources from many different sources.

Learning Technology: (see Instructional Technology and substitute "learning" for instruction).

Lesson: A portion of a course. Courses may be organized by topics, modules, lessons, or units.

Lesson Plan: A written guide for trainers that provides specific definitions and directions on learning objectives, equipment, instructional media, material requirements, and conduct of the training. This is more an education-based term, with trainers usually referring to it as a facilitator guide.

Linear: A programming method characterized by short steps of ordered instruction followed by constructed responses. Also known as "lock step."

List-Servs: Subscription mailing lists on a computer network that automatically send the user information on a particular topic.

Location: The place a video or still shoot will take place.

Lunch and Learn: A meeting held at lunchtime featuring a presentation, workshop, or other learning process.

Mastery: Meeting all of the specified minimum requirements for a specific performance.

Mastery Learning: A design characteristic in which the trainee is expected to achieve a pre-set level of mastery for the material to be learned. This mastery level is usually measured through a criterion-referenced evaluation.

Media List: A master list of all media elements included in a program (overheads, print, video, audio, graphics, and animations).

Model: A representation of a process or system that shows the most important aspects of the system in such a way that analysis of the model leads to insights into the system.

Module: A unit of instruction. This term is often used to delineate a self-contained instructional unit that includes one or more learning objectives, appropriate learning materials and methods, and associated criterion-reference measures.

Multimedia: Most commonly refers to the use of text, graphics, sound, video, and computer-generated animation, or any combination of the above, usually in a self-directed, computer-based format, often employing a DVD or other large-capacity storage device such as a server, as part of the delivery system. Multimedia is usually designed and developed by a team of experts. Currently, it has some usage problems in e-learning due to bandwidth limitations.

Mobile Learning (m-Learning): Use of smart phones, tablets, and other mobile communications devices to deliver training, assessments, job aids, electronic performance support tools, and any other form of knowledge sharing that lends itself to self-directed processes on small screens and with limited capability.

Multimedia Training: A delivery system that incorporates various technology-based instructional methods, such as graphics, text, animation, audio, and video. It is most often delivered on a DVD or via a server.

Narration: The spoken portion of a video or audio production, especially anything spoken directly to the audience instead of dialogue between the actors.

Navigation: How a user moves through a technology-based training program. Navigation controls are typically a series of buttons or icons.

Need: The difference between the way things are and the way they ought to be.

Needs Assessment: A process used to determine the difference between current and desired states, often related to the development of a training program. A needs assessment may use many data-gathering techniques to discover needs expressed by management, the target audience, and/or subject-matter experts.

Nominal Group Technique: A data-collection technique related to brainstorming but more structured, with participants recording their own ideas, then bringing them before the group and discussing them one by one. In the end, the group ranks the ideas.

Object-Oriented Design: Creating training as single concepts or small "packets" of information that can be used and reused for many different training needs or programs.

Object-Oriented Learning: A training design in which reusable pieces of content learning, termed "objects," are created for both a specific training need and for use in other programs.

Objective: A specific statement of what learners will be able to do when they complete a training program or a piece of a program.

Observation: A data-collection technique in which the collector physically observes the subjects' job performance.

Off-the-Shelf: Training produced by an outside agency for use by other organizations. Normally used by organizations when in-house-produced training programs would be more costly or take too much time to develop.

OJT (see On-the-Job Training).

On-the-Job Training: Training in the skills and knowledge needed to perform a job, taking place in the actual work environment.

Online Learning: Often used to mean synchronous e-learning, it is also a delivery method in which the learners communicate with the instructor through discussion boards and chat rooms as they complete pre-planned activities and exercises on their own. It can be an excellent methodology for the practice of collaborative learning.

Open-Ended Test Item: A question that can be answered in a variety of ways, such as an essay question.

Organizational Need: The reason for doing training. A difference between where the organization is and where it should be, determined through various analysis methods.

Organizational Needs Analysis: A needs-analysis technique that identifies a gap between what the organization expects and its current performance.

Participant's Package: A set of materials that presents information for use in a learning experience, usually in a classroom setting. This might include general information, procedural and technical use data, or design information, activities, and references.

Passive Performance Support System: The majority of electronic performance support systems, they require the user to recognize the need to stop a task and refer to the system when information is required or a problem that cannot be solved with current knowledge is encountered.

Pass-Out: Trainee material, usually in a classroom setting, that is passed out at a specific time in the learning process rather than at the beginning of the program as part of the participant's package.

Performance Analysis (Performance Assessment): Process through which opportunities and problems of an organization are determined by using systematic analysis methods that look at the performance of the individual and the organization as a whole.

Performance Checklist: A list of elements that must be correctly performed to determine whether each learner satisfactorily meets the performance standards described in the learning objective.

Performance Criteria (Performance Standard): Part of a learning objective that describes the observable learner behavior that is acceptable as proof that learning has occurred.

Performance Evaluation: Evaluations related to the mastery of specific skills rather than knowledge.

Performance Gap: The difference between optimal and actual performance of a person, group, or organization.

Performance Intervention: Any one of a number of interactions that are developed and implemented to close a performance gap or help an organization achieve a performance opportunity.

Performance Objective: A measurable statement of the behavior that students will be able to demonstrate at the end of the course, the conditions under which they will be demonstrated, and the criteria for acceptable performance.

Podcast: Audio and video files downloaded from the Internet for playback using a computer or a mobile device such as an iPod.

Poll: A feature in online classrooms where a question with one or more response options is presented and the results from the participants' responses is displayed.

Post-Production: The processing of video or audio after it has been recorded into a completed piece of instructional media. This might include video editing, sound editing, synchronization, mixing, and special effects.

Post-Test: A test administered after a program or part of a program to assess the level of a learner's knowledge or skill.

Pre-Instructional Activity: Introductory course activities that are done before the actual program is received. Often called pre-work.

Pre-Production: Everything done to prepare for a video shoot, including location scouting, casting, planning, testing, and so forth.

Prescriptive Learning: A learning design in which each learner is measured against a set group of skills or competencies and then assigned work based on this measurement. The learning may be individualized and/or self-paced.

Pre-Test: A test administered prior to a program to assess the level of a learner's knowledge or skill. The results may be used to determine prior learning and readiness or as a baseline to compare with the results of a post-test to determine learning or behavioral change.

Programmed Instruction: A learning design in which trainees are provided information in small steps, with immediate feedback concerning whether or not the material was learned properly. This allows the trainee to choose the pace with which he or she goes through the material. This concept is often termed self-instruction, self-directed learning, and self-paced learning, although each of these concepts has other definitions as well.

Props: Items used in a production by the actors (such as hats, canes, books, etc.).

Prototype: An early version of a course developed to test and gain approval of the "look" and "feel" and the functionality of the course.

Questionnaire: A data-collection technique, usually a form comprised of a list of questions. Questionnaires are often used during analysis when the potential audience is widely distributed.

Quick-Time: A digital video process in which the speed of the image is slowed to fifteen frames per second from the normal thirty frames per second.

This allows for more video to be stored in a smaller amount of space on the computer, but also creates the slightly jerky motion that is often found on multimedia programs (and MTV). Quick-time is usually not full-screen video, which bothers many trainees.

Quiz: A short test to measure achievement on material recently taught or on any small, newly completed unit of work.

Reading Level: A number representing a person's ability to read and comprehend what he or she is reading based on academic grade levels.

Refresher Training: Training that reinforces previous training and/or helps trainees regain previously acquired skills and knowledge.

Remedial Branch: A technique wherein a wrong answer causes the program to present a new piece of instruction designed to help the trainee master the material, usually from a different point of view.

Satellite-Mediated Distance Learning: A general term given to the use of satellites as a training delivery system. This can include two-way audio and/or two-way video communications. If well-designed, satellite-mediated distance learning can be an effective distributed training method. If designed badly, it becomes a technology-based and very expensive talking head or group of talking heads, often termed an "expert panel."

Script: A list of all spoken lines in a self-instructional course or media production.

SDL (see Self-Directed Learning).

Self-Directed Learning: Often referred to as individualized instruction or self-managed instruction, in its basic form it is simply training for which there is no instructor present to guide the trainees, who therefore learn on their own. This concept is open to a number of interpretations and more than a little controversy.

Self-Paced: A design characteristic whereby the learner works at his or her own speed to complete the learning assignment.

Self-Quiz: A short assessment, usually self-scored, that allows learners to determine their own understanding or abilities.

Self-Study Guide: A trainee document containing a series of lessons arranged in discrete steps, each of which ends with a self-quiz. It usually includes objectives, subject-matter content, references, review exercises with feedback, and directions to interact with training media, if any.

Sequencing: Arranging the content and/or objectives into the most appropriate order for effective learning.

Server: A computer that acts as a link to other computers in a network.

Setting: The physical surroundings in which a scene takes place, including the time, period, and ambiance.

Shot List: A list of still, film, or video images to be captured, organized by location.

Simulation: An instructional technique in which the trainee is presented situations resembling real life that usually involve choices and risks. The players are reinforced for making the right decisions.

Skill: The ability to perform a specific task.

Small-Group Instruction: A training method that places the responsibility for learning on the student through participation in small groups divided out of a larger class.

SMDL (see Satellite-Mediated Distance Learning).

SME (see Subject-Matter Expert).

SME Review: A review of instruction material done by a subject-matter expert to correct technical errors.

SME-Based Training: Training that is facilitated by an SME who may have, but often does not have, any training experience or formal instruction. The SME is chosen as the facilitator based mainly on his or her being an "expert" on the subject.

Soft Skills: Skills needed to perform on jobs for which outcomes may vary depending on interactions with individuals, such as counseling, supervising, and managing.

Stakeholder: The individual in an organization who requests training and/or who is responsible for the individuals whom the training will affect.

Stem: The part of a test item that is common to all possible answers, as in multiple-choice questions or fill in the blanks.

Storyboard: A document containing sketches of interactions specifying the placement of screen elements (text, graphics, buttons, video windows, etc.) and branching information for CBT, or the scene layout, actions performed, camera angles, etc., and accompanying audio elements for video training.

Streaming: A method for moving digital audio and video over networks such as the Internet. It solves a problem with waiting for large audio and video files to download, but creates security issues, and is still a non-perfected technology. Allows an audio/video (A/V) file to start playing before it is finished downloading. This is accomplished by buffering (temporarily storing) a small portion of the video during the first few seconds after the A/V file is launched and then play begins. While the file is playing the buffered segment, more A/V content from the file is loaded into the buffer for the file to continue playing.

Subject-Matter Expert: A content expert who works with the instructional designer to ensure the accuracy of information in a course.

Subtask: Component performances, behaviors, or procedures that make up a task.

Supporting Objective: Objectives that describe something trainees must be able to do prior to accomplishing the terminal or program objective. Also termed "enabling" objectives.

Survey (see Questionnaire).

Synchronous: Most often combined with e-learning, synchronous refers to instruction using a web-based delivery system in which the instructor and trainees are online at the same time. It is often called online learning as well.

Talent: The actors or narrators used in a media production.

Target Audience: The specific audience for whom the program is designed.

Task: A performance, procedure, or behavior. The smallest essential part of a job.

Task Analysis: The process of analyzing a task and breaking it down into its subtasks, skills, and necessary knowledge.

TBI (see Technology-Based Instruction).

TBL (see Technology-Based Learning).

TBT (see Technology-Based Training).

Technology-Based Instruction (see Technology-Based Training).

Technology-Based Learning: (see Technology-Based Training and substitute "learning" for training).

Technology-Based Training: An overall term for training done with the help of what can be defined as technology. This might include anything from a pencil to a Cray computer, but usually means a device that plugs in, often but not always a computer. While technology-based training is sometimes used synonymously with computer-based training, this is often not accurate. Technology-based training is also often considered to be a self-instructional process. This is not always true either.

Teleconferencing: Meetings held through the use of telephones or satellites. Often considered a form of training, teleconferencing normally lacks any objectives or learning focus. Basically, the term is invalid for technology-based training.

Tele-Learning: Simply using the telephone as a training delivery system. It can be an effective and very inexpensive form of distributed training if used for the right reasons and well designed.

Template: A pre-built element that can be used and reused in different programs to speed up the design and development process.

Test: A device or technique used to measure the performance, skill level, or knowledge of a learner on a specific subject matter.

Test Items: Specific items that test trainees' mastery of objectives.

Threaded discussion: An online dialogue or multi-person conversation using linked messages that users read and reply to, normally on a common subject.

Topical Outline: An outline of the topics to be included in a training program. It may provide course learning objectives; a listing of part, section, and topic titles; and statements of rationale to explain or justify the training.

Trainee Guide: Often used interchangeably with participant's package or workbook, this term is used at times to indicate a more complex document that guides the trainee through a self-instructional activity.

Training Curriculum: A number of programs or classes that make up all of the training requirements for a job position, department, or entire organization.

Training Needs Analysis: Process of determining what needs may require training to be met. Usually done by reviewing work tasks, identifying performance factors and objectives, and defining a training plan.

Transfer of Training: The ability of trainees to apply to the job the knowledge and skills they gain in training.

Treatment: A written description of a technology-based project, including the story line, the look and feel, how it will work (course flow), and how the course goals will be achieved.

VHS: A standard consumer video format that uses half-inch tape. VHS is the lowest quality video format in common use.

Video Conferencing: Conferencing in which participants both hear and see one another. Usually done over telephone lines.

Video Editing: The process of selecting sections of raw footage and placing them in proper order to create a completed video piece.

Video Still: A single video frame digitized and used as a still image.

Virtual Reality: Not necessarily the goggles and gloves of science fiction (although this is already a possibility), virtual reality is an entire series of photo-realistic and three-dimensional modeling technologies that lend a new level of realism to technology-based training. Virtual reality machines allow trainees to practice complex tasks before they ever see the factory floor, and virtual reality environments permit employees to learn critical skills without going in harm's way.

Virtual Reality Markup Language: he computer language used to develop virtual reality training. (See also Hypertext Markup Language.)

Voice-Over: A type of narration in which the speaker's voice is heard without his or her image being displayed on the screen.

VoIP: Short for Voice over Internet Protocol, a category of hardware and software that enables the use of the internet for transmission of telephone calls.

VR (see Virtual Reality).

VRML (see Virtual Reality Markup Language).

WBT (see Web-Based Training).

Web-Based Training: Instruction delivered over public or private computer networks and displayed by a web browser. Web-based training is usually not downloaded computer-based training, but rather on-demand training stored in a server and accessed across a network. Web-based training can be updated very rapidly. Usually uses a web browser as the basis for navigation.

Webcast: Broadcast of an event over the web, often with a telephone call-in number in support and possible use of media including desktop sharing

Webinars: A type of online classroom event, for dissemination of information to a large online audience.

Whiteboard: A feature used in online classroom environments that enables users to draw on whatever is displayed on a screen.

Wiki: A website or software used to create a website that enables the posting of content from the collective work of many authors.

White Space: The amount of blank space between areas of print on a piece of printed material.

Workbook (see Self-Study Guide).

Suggested Readings

Instructional Design

Basics of instructional design. *Info-Line,* 803. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Building for adult learning. Cincinnati, OH: LDA Publishing. J. Leed. (1987).

Easy-to-use instructional systems design methodology. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 10–16. K. Overfield. (1996, April).

How does instructional systems design differ from traditional instruction? *Educational Technology,* pp. 9–14. W. Hannum. (1982, January).

Mastering the instructional design process: A systematic approach. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. W. J. Rothwell & H. C. Kazanas. (1992).

Producing workshops, seminars, and short courses. New York: Follett. J. Loughary. (1979).

SMEs from the ground up. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Chuck Hodell. (2013)

Survey of instructional development models. Syracuse, NY: Information Resources Publications. K. Gustafson. (1993).

The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery. New York: McGraw-Hill. G. M. Piskurich (Ed.). (1999).

The ASTD training and development handbook. New York: McGraw-Hill. R. Craig, (Ed.). (1996).

The systematic design of instruction (3rd ed.). New York: HarperCollins. W. Dick & L. Carey. (1990).

Trainer basics. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. George M. Piskurich. (2003).

Assessment

An analysis of front-end analysis. J. Harless, in *The Best of Performance & Instruction, 26*(2), 7–9. (1987).

Be a better needs analyst. *Info-Line,* 8502. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Benefit-cost analysis for program evaluation. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage. M. Thompson. (1980).

Building a management competency system that yields results, not scorn. *Training Director's Forum Newsletter, 11*(12), pp. 1–2.
Needs assessment for organizational success. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. R. Kaufman and I. Guerra-Lopez. (2013).
Needs assessment by focus group. *Info-Line,* 9401. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Return on investment for technology-based training: Building the business case. J. J. Phillips, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).
Strategic needs analysis. *Info-Line,* 9408. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
The three R's of ROI. *Technical Training.* K. Ruyle. (1998, May/June).
Training needs assessment. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications. A. Rossett. (1988).
Where have all the dollars gone? *Technical Training,* pp. 22–25. (1998, July/August).

Performance Assessment

An ounce of analysis is worth a pound of objectives. Harless Performance Guild. J. Harless. (1970).
Analysis for improving performance. San Francisco: Berrett-Koehler. R. Swanson. (1994).
ASTD models for human performance improvement. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. W. Rothwell. (1997).
First things fast: A handbook for performance analysis. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. A. Rossett. (1997).
HPI essentials. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. George M. Piskurich. (2002).
Handbook of human performance technology. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. H. Stolovitch, (Ed.). (1992).
Human competence. Amherst, MA: HRD Press. T. Gilbert. (1996).
Improving performance. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. G. Rummler. (1990).
Introduction to performance technology. Washington, DC: ISPI. M. Smith (Ed.). (1986).
Leading organizational change. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. E. Holton. (1997).
Performance basics. Alexandria, VA: ASTD Joe Willmore. (2004).
Performance consulting: Applying performance improvement in human resource development San Francisco: Pfeiffer. William Rothwell. (2013).
Performance Improvement, 36(10), pp. 27–33. [Special issue]. (1997, November/December).
Rapid analysis: Matching solutions to changing situations. *Performance Improvement,* 36(10), pp. 16–21. D. Brethower. (1997, November/December).
Transforming organizations through human performance technology. G. Rummler, in H. Stolovitch (Ed.), *Handbook of human performance technology.* San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. (1992).
What is your problem? Seven steps to analyze and define performance problems. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 15–18. A. Marrelli. (1993, August).

Analysis

An introduction to competency analysis and modeling. *Performance Improvement,* pp. 8–17. A. Marrelli. (1998, May/June).

Analyzing jobs and tasks. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications. K. Carlisle. (1986).

Be a better job analyst. *Info-Line,* 903. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Be a better task analyst. *Info-Line,* 503. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Brainstorming updated. *Training & Development,* 38(2), pp. 84–87. S. Grossman. (1984).

Costs, benefits, and productivity in training systems. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley. G. Kearsley. (1981).

Figuring things out. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley. R. Zemke. (1982).

Job analysis. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. S. Gael. (1977).

Managing the job analysis process. *Training & Development,* pp. 64–66. J. Markowitz. (1987, August).

Surveys from start to finish. *Info-Line,* 612. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Training needs assessment: Methods, tools, and techniques. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Jean Barbazette. (2006).

Training Settings

Designing laboratory and simulation instruction. B. Lierman, in *The ASTD handbook of instructional technology.* New York: McGraw-Hill. (1993).

Effective training delivery. [Best of Series, Number 4]. Minneapolis, MN: Lakewood. (1989).

Individualizing instruction. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. R. Hiemstra. (1990).

Instructing for results. Minneapolis, MN: Lakewood. F. Margolis & C. Bell. (1986).

Self-directed learning. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. G. M. Piskurich. (1993).

Which technology to use? How to select the right media to deliver training. B. Bailey, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

On-the-Job Training

Designing on-the-job training. L. Tyson, in *The ASTD handbook of instructional technology.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1993).

Improving on-the-job training and coaching. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Karen Lawson. (2006).

On-the-job training. D. A. Gallup, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

On-the-job training prescriptions and practice. *Performance Improvement Quarterly,* 8, pp. 19–37. G. Semb. (1995).

Structured on-the-job training. San Francisco: Berrett-Koehler. R. Jacobs. (1990).

The instructor coach. *Performance Improvement,* pp. 26–31. E. Mager (1999, February).
Training on the job. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Diane Walter. (2006).

Job Aids and Performance Support Systems

A handbook of job aids. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass/Pfeiffer. A. Rossett. (1994).
Basics of electronic performance support systems. *Info-Line,* 9412. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Creating motivating job aids. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 13–20. A. Tilaro. (1998, October).
Developing intelligent job aids intelligently. *Technical and Skills Training,* pp. 25–28. K. Ruyle. (1991, February/March).
Designing electronic performance support tools. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications. E. Stevens. (1995).
Electronic performance support systems. New York: Ziff Instate Publishers. G. Gery. (1991).
Expert systems in education and training. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications. T. McFarland and .R. Parker. (1990).
Innovative performance support: Strategies and practices for learning in the workflow. New York: McGraw-Hill. Con Gottfredson and Bob Mosher. (2010).
Job aid basics. (ASTD Training Basics Series). Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Joe Willmore. (2006).
Making EPSS work for your organization. *Info-Line,* 9501. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
On using job aids in lieu of or as an adjunct to training. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 32–33. D. Mitchell. (1993, May/June).
On-line help supports performance. *Performance Improvement,* pp. 32–35. B. Miller. (1999, April).
Performance support systems and job aids. S. W. Williams, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).
Quick and dirty job aids. *Performance & Instruction,* 28, pp. 35–36. J. Nelson. (1989).

Objectives

Guide learning with objectives that take a student perspective. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 46–48. R. Dodge. (1987, November/December).
Organizing a lesson plan by objectives. *Technical Training,* pp. 8–10. S. Parry. (1998, July/August).
Preparing instructional objectives. Belmont, CA: Pitman Learning. R. F. Mager. (1975).
Training by objectives. London: McBer. F. Margolis. (1970, June).
Write better behavioral objectives. *Info-Line,* 505. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Writing objectives with style. *Training.* J. Heines. (1990, July).

Design Documents, Instructional Plans, and Lesson Plans

Analyzing and selecting instructional strategies and tactics. *Performance Improvement Quarterly,* 3(2), 29–47. D. Jonassen. (1990).
Breaking the ice. *Training & Development,* pp. 26–27. R. Herman. (1989, January).
Course design and development. *Info-Line,* 905. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Getting inside an expert's brain. *Training & Development,* pp. 55–62. D. Gayeski. (1992, August).
Icebreakers: Warm up your audience. *Info-Line,* 8911. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Instructional design strategies and tactics. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publishers. C. Leshin. (1992).
Lesson plans: Strategies for learning. *Training & Development,* pp. 15–18. M. Toney. (1991, June).
Organizing a lesson plan by objectives. *Technical Training,* pp. 8–9. S. Parry. (1998, July/August).
Planning effective instruction. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall. W. Dick.
Real-world training design. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Jenn Labin. (2012).
Thirty-five lesson formats. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications. P. Lyons. (1992).
Using mapping for course development. *Info-Line,* 104. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Activities

10 great games and how to use them. *Info-Line,* 411. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
All together now. San Francisco, CA. Pfeiffer. Lorraine Ukens. (2003).
Active training: A handbook of techniques, designs, case examples, and tips. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. M. Silberman. (1996).
Games that teach. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass/Pfeiffer. S. Sugar. (1999).
Games trainers play. New York: McGraw-Hill. J. Newstrom. (1980).
Great session openers, closers, and icebreakers. New York: McGraw Hill. Marlene Caroselli. (1998).
Energize your training. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Bob Lucas. (2012).
How to use (not abuse) role plays. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 16–22. V. O. Wright. (1989, May/June).
Making training active. K. Lawson, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).
More games trainers play. New York: McGraw-Hill. J. Newstrom. (1989).
The book of road-tested activities. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Elaine Biech (Ed.). (2011).
The gamification of learning and instruction. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Karl M. Kapp. (2012).
Wuzzle book. Minneapolis, MN: Resources for Organizations. T. Underwood. (1996).

Classroom Instruction

Basic training: Getting ready to present. B. Withers, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

Classroom facilitation: The art and the science. Bellevue, KY. Micro Press George M. Piskurich. (2005).
Creative training techniques handbook (2nd ed.) Minneapolis, MN: Lakewood. B. Pike. (1994).
Effective training delivery. [Best of Series.] Minneapolis, MN: Lakewood. (1990).
Instructing for results. Minneapolis, MN: Lakewood. F. Margolis & C. Bell. (1986).
*Point*click*wow: A guide to laptop presentations.* San Francisco, CA: Pfeiffer. C. Wilder. (1996).
Teach with style. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Jim Teeters and Lynn Hodges. (2013).
Technology in the classroom: Velcro for the mind. W. W. Turmel, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

Print Materials and Graphics

Applying graphic design principles. B. King, in *The ASTD handbook of instructional technology.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1993).
Designing instructional text. London, England, United Kingdom: Kogan Page. J. Hartley. (1978).
Designing multimedia: A visual guide to multimedia and online graphic design. Berkeley, CA: Peachpit Press. L. Lopuck. (1993).
Graphics for learning: Proven guidelines for planning, designing, and evaluating visuals in training materials (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Ruth C Clark. (2010).
Handbook of human performance technology (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Pfeiffer. H. O. Stolovich and E. J. Keeps. (1999).
How to write training materials. San Francisco, CA: Pfeiffer. L. S. Stoneall. (1991).
How to write terrific training materials: Methods, tools, and techniques. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Jean Barbazette. (2013).
Making instructional design readable. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 26–27. E. Parker. (1999, April).
Nondesigners design book. Berkeley, CA: Peachtree. R. Williams. (1996).
Playing the stock market. *Inside Technology Training,* p. 34. J. Hartnett. (1999, April).
Preparing the learner for self-directed learning. G. M. Piskurich, in H. Long (Ed.), *Self-directed learning application and research.* Tulsa, OK: University of Oklahoma Press. (1992).
The technology of text. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Educational Technology Publications. D. Jonassen. (1992).
Write, design, and produce effective training materials. *Info-Line,* 508. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Media (Nontechnical)

Audio, film, and video. *Info-Line,* 8509. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Corporate instructional video design and production. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall. D. Gayeski. (1983).
Create quality videos. *Info-Line,* 8607. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Designing audio for effective listening. *Training & Development,* pp. 71–76. J. Bunch. (1982, December).
Don't sing the first time video blues. *Training & Development,* pp. 59–61. P. Schleger. (1983, December).
Flip charts: How to draw them and use them. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. R. Brandt. (1986).
How to write training materials. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. L. Stoneall. (1991).
Instructional video. New York: Focal Press. S. Deluca. (1985).
Planning and producing audio-visual materials. New York: Harper & Row. J. Kemp. (1989).
Selecting and developing media for instruction (3rd ed.). New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold. R. Anderson & A. Reynolds. (1992).
Storyboarding tales. *Inside Technology Training,* pp. 26–28. C. Frye. (1998, September).
The ASTD media selection tool for workplace learning. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. R. Marx. (1995).
The corporate scriptwriting book. Communicom Poatchind. D. Matrazzo. (1985).
What instructional media producers should know about using music. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 21–23. S. Deidman. (1981, March).
What's the story? Creating and using story boards. *CBT Solutions,* pp. 36–40. D. Adams. (1997, May/June).
Write successful video scripts. *Info-Line,* 8707. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

CBT and Multimedia

About face: The essentials of user interface designs. Boston: IDG Books. A. Cooper. (2001).
Design standards for visual elements and interactivity for courseware. *T.H.E. Journal,* p. 84–85. P. Thibodeau. (1997, February).
Engaged! The nature of computer interactivity. *Training,* pp. 53–58. B. Filipczak. (1996, November).
e-Learning and the science of instruction: Proven guidelines for consumers and designers of multimedia learning (3rd ed.) San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Ruth C. Clark and Richard E. Mayer. (2011).
Getting friendly with authoring tools. *Training & Development,* 50(5), pp. 36–46. T. Barron. (1997).
How to build an interface. *Info-Line,* 9303. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Mapping hypertext. Lexington, MA: The Lexington Institute. R. Horn. (1989).
Selecting off-the-shelf courseware and suppliers (CD-ROM, LAN and web). D. Woodall, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).
Text, context, and hypertext: Writing with and for the computer. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press. E. Barrett. (1988).

Asynchronous e-Learning

A tough audience: Getting employees revved up about e-Learning can be difficult. *Online Learning.* David Raths. (2001, June).

A trainer's guide to web-based development. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. J. Alden. (1998).
Blending e-learning. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Karen Mantyla. (2001).
Defining Internet-based and web-based training. *Performance Improvement,* pp. 5–7. M. Driscoll. (1997, April).
Designing and managing computer mediated learning. OmniCom Associates. D. Gayeski. (1998).
Designing Internet-based and intranet-based training. *Multimedia Training Newsletter.* G. Tansy. (1996, December).
Designing world-class e-learning. New York: McGraw-Hill. Roger Schank. (2002).
e-Learning. New York: McGraw-Hill. Marc Rosenberg. (2001).
e-Learning: If we build it ,will they come? e-Learning motivators and acceptance levels. Alexandria, VA: ASTD/Masie Center. (2001, June).
Enhancing your readiness for self-directed learning: A workbook for the Learning Preference Assessment. King of Prussia, PA: HRDQ. L. M. Guglielmino and P. J. Guglielmino. (1991).
Evaluating e-learning. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Bill Horton. (2001).
Guidelines for designing web-based courses. *Solutions,* pp. 25–28. A. Barron. (2002, March/April).
Interacting with interactions. *Inside Technology Training,* pp. 40–41. J. Hartnett. (1999, July).
Making e-learning stick. Alexandria, VA: ASTD Barbara Carnes ASTD 2012
Michael Allen's guide to e-learning. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons. Michael Allen. (2003).
Outside services for converting audio and video to the web. *Multimedia and Internet Training Newsletter,* p. 6. M. Palazzolo. (1997, February).
Preparing learners for e-learning. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. George M. Piskurich (Ed.). (2003).
Scenario-based e-learning: Evidence-based guidelines for online workforce learning. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Ruth C. Clark and Richard E. Mayer. (2013).
Selling e-learning. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Darin Hartley. (2001).
The accidental instructional designer. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Cammy Bean. (2014).
The AMA handbook of e-learning. New York: AMACOM. George M. Piskurich (Ed.). (2003).
The e-learning question and answer book. New York: AMACOM. Allan Henderson. (2003).
Using audio and video over the web. D. S. Metcalf, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).
Web-based training cookbook. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons. B. Hall. (1998).
Web-based training: Using technology to design adult learning experiences. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. M. Driscoll. (1998).

Synchronous e-Learning

147 practical tips for teaching online groups. New York: Atwood. Don Hanna. (2003).
Distance learning. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. K. Mantyla & J. Gividen. (1997).

Getting the most from online learning. San Francisco, CA: Pfeiffer George M. Piskurich. (2004).
How to be a successful online student. New York: McGraw-Hill. Sara Gilbert. (2001).
How to build an e-learning community. *E-learning,* 2, 18–23. R. Blout. (2002).
Interactive distance learning activities that really work. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. K. Mantyla. (1998).
Lessons from the cyberspace classroom. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass, Rena Palloff and Keith Pratt. (2001).
Live and online: Tips, techniques, and ready-to-use activities for the virtual classroom. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Jennifer Hofmann. (2004).
Preparing students for the task of online learning. *Syllabus,* pp. 38–42. J. E. Reid, Jr. (1997, March).
Sustaining distance training. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. Zane Berge (2001).
Synchronous distance learning: The interactive Internet classroom. *CBT Solutions,* pp. 25–28. J. Stewart. (1999, May).
The new virtual classroom: Evidence-based guidelines for synchronous e-learning. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Ruth C. Clark and Ann Kwinn. (2007).
The synchronous trainer's survival guide, InSync Training Synergy, LLC, Jennifer Hofmann. (2001).
The virtual training guidebook Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Cindy Huggett. (2013, December).

Other TBT

A new dimension in CBT. *Inside Technology Training, 2*(9), pp. 14–16. J. Bell. (1998, October).
ASTD models for learning technologies. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. G. M. Piskurich and E. Sanders. (1998).
Lessons from the virtual world. *Training,* 32(6), 45–48. N. Adams. (1999).
Rapid video development for trainers. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Jonathan Halls. (2012).
Training via videoconferencing. *Training & Development,* pp. 15–17. T. Poppell (1998, July).
Video conferencing: "You ought to be in pictures." *Inside Technology Training.* G. Keizer. (1999, July/August).
Virtual reality: Is it for you? C. G. Mohr, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

Betas and Pilots

How to pilot web-based training. *Training & Development,* pp. 44–49. M. Driscoll. (1998, November).
Keeping your pilots on course. *Training & Development,* pp. 69–73. J. Chernick. (1992, April).
Reviewing to ensure quality and build skills. *Performance Improvement,* pp. 17–20. K. Lutchner. (1997, October).

Usability testing. *Multimedia and Internet Training Newsletter,* pp. 8–9. A. Hanssen. (1998, July).

Test Questions

A guide to criterion referenced test construction. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press. R. Berk. (1980).
Criterion-referenced test development. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley. S. Shrock & W. Coscarelli. (1989).
Preparing criterion referenced tests for classroom instruction. New York: Macmillan. N. Gronlund. (1973).
Test construction for training evaluation. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold. C. Denova. (1979).
Test development. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Melissa Fein. (2012).
Tests that work. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. O. Westgaard. (1999).
Using evaluations. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. L. Rae. (1986).

Evaluation of Trainee Learning

Comprehensive open skill test design. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 16–28. J. Desmedt. (1991, November/December).
Evaluating job related training. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall. B. Deming. (1982).
How to measure performance. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage. L. L. Morris. (1978).
Measuring attitudinal and behavioral change. *Info-Line,* 9110. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.
Measuring instructional intent. Belmont, CA: Ler Siegler. R. Mager. (1973).
Testing for learning outcomes. *Info-Line,* 907. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

Transfer to the Job

Assuring that learning occurs and transfers to the job. *Performance & Instruction,* pp. 38–43. D. Brethower. (1992, July).
Evaluation techniques that work. *Training & Development,* pp. 52–55. H. Birnbrauer. (1987, July).
The basics: Training transfer. *Technical and Skills Training,* pp. 8–9. A. Reynolds. (1993, February/March).
Transfer of training. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley. M. Broad. (1992).
Transfer of training: Making training stick. *Info-Line,* 9512. Alexandria, VA: ASTD.

CBA and ROI

Cost-benefit analysis techniques for training investments. *Technical and Skills Training,* pp. 18–21. W. Schmidt. (1997, April).
How to measure training results. New York: McGraw Hill. Jack Phillips. (2002).

In action: Implementing training scorecards. Alexandria, VA. ASTD. Jack Phillips. (2003).

Measuring return on investment (Vol. 1–3). Alexandria, VA: ASTD. J. Phillips (Ed.). (1993).

Measuring training's ROI: A case in point. S. B. Parry, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

Return on investment in training and performance improvement programs. Houston, TX: Gulf. J. Phillips. (1993).

Evaluation (General)

Achieving results from training. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass. Robert O. Brinkerhoff. (1999).

Achieving results from training: How to evaluate human resource development to strengthen programs and increase impact. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Robert O. Brinkerhoff. (2009).

ASTD handbook of measuring and evaluating. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Patricia Pulliam Phillips (Ed.). (2010).

ASTD trainer's tool kit: Evaluation instruments. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1991).

Beyond learning objectives. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Jack Phillips and Patricia Pulliam Phillips. (2008).

Evaluating training effectiveness. *Training,* pp. 61–62. C. Eckenboy. (1983, July).

Evaluating training programs: The four levels (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Berrett-Koehler. D. Kirkpatrick. (1994).

Handbook of training evaluation and measurement methods. Houston, TX: Gulf. J. Phillips. (1983).

In your next class, try this alternative to happiness sheets. *Training,* pp. 77–78. J. B. Cornwell. (1978, May).

Why trainees should not evaluate trainers. *Training,* pp. 79–82. M. Broadwell. (1973, October).

Shortcuts

Can and should instructional design be automated. *Performance & Instruction, 27*(10), pp. 1–5. D. Gayeski. (1988).

Development teams for creating technology-based training. J. J. Goldsmith, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

Knowledge objects. *CBT Solutions,* pp. 1–11. D. Merrill. (1998, March/April).

Rapid instructional design. S. Thiagarajan, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), *The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery.* Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (1999).

Rapid prototyping. *Educational Technology Research and Development, 38*(1), pp. 31–44. S. D. Tripp. (1990).

Reusable content objectives. *CBT Solutions,* pp. 26–39. A. Hathway. (1998, January/February).

The ASTD handbook of training design and delivery. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. G. M. Piskurich (Ed.). (1999).
Training management systems: How to choose a system your company can live with. B. Hall. [*brandon-hall.com*]
Training management systems: The most important development in training since the internet. B. Hall, in G. M. Piskurich (Ed.), Unidentified training objects. *Inside Technology Training,* p. 42. B. Hall. (1999, January).
Using development "shells" for fast and creative multimedia development at American Airlines. *Journal of Instruction Delivery Systems,* 9(3), pp. 3–9. R. Blalock. (1995, February).

Mobile Learning

Learning everywhere. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Chad Udell. (2012).
Mastering mobile learning. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Chad Udell. (2014).
The mobile learning edge: Tools and technologies for developing your teams. New York: McGraw-Hill. Gary Woodill. (2010).

Social Network–Based Learning

Show your work. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Jane Bozarth. (2014).
Social media for trainers: Techniques for enhancing and extending learning. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Jane Bozarth. (2010).
Social media 101: Tactics and tips to develop your business online. San Francisco: Pfeiffer. Chris Brogan. (2010).
The new social learning. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. Tony Bingham and Marcia Conner. (2010).

Informal Learning

Informal learning. *Info-line*. Bob Hoffman. Alexandria, VA: ASTD. (2005).
Informal learning. London, England: Gower. Lloyd Davies. (2008).
Make space for informal learning. Learning Circuits. Dori Digenti. (2000, August).
The power of informal learning. *Chief Learning Officer*. Bob Mosher. (2004, July).

Other Resources

Activities

Caroselli, Marlene: MCCPD@aol.com
Energizers by Training Oasis: www3.sympatico.ca/thetrainingoasis/mayspice.htm
http://the-trainers-lounge.co.uk/free_training_activities.html
Thiagi Games Letter: www.thiagi.com
Thiagi's Home Page: www.thiagi.com/index.html
www.firststepstraining.com/resources/activities/archive/
www.games2train.com
www.presentersuniversity.com

Analysis

http://alumnus.caltech.edu/~rouda/T2_NA.html
Inquisite: www.inquisite.com
Learning Styles Inventory: www.howtolearn.com/
Survey Software: www.surveyconnect.com
www.assessmentworks.com
www.bnhexpertsoft.com
www.dirjournal.com/guides/how-to-conduct-a-training-needs-analysis/
www.hr-guide.com/data/G510.htm
www.learningcurve.org.uk/courses/ladder4learning/resources/training_needs_analysis

Assessment

Advisor 3.0 Computer-Based Assessment and ROI Tool by BNH Software: www.bnhexpertsoft.com
American Productivity & Quality Center: www.apqc.org/
ASTD "Trainer's Toolkit" Needs Assessment Instruments. ASTD, Alexandria, Virginia
http://managementhelp.org/training/systematic/needs-assessment.htm

www.jica.go.jp/project/cambodia/0601331/pdf/english/3_TNA_01.pdf
www.hr-survey.com/TrainingNeeds.htm
www.e4learningsolutions.co.uk/software/trainingneedsanalysis.aspx
www.theinteractgroup.com/needs-assessment-software/

Asynchronous e-Learning

David Strom's Web Informant: www.strom.com/pubwork/intra2.html
The Masie Center: www.masie.com
The Web-Based Training Center: www.webbasedtraining.com/
www.vnulearning.com/

Classroom

http://elearningbrothers.com/is-classroom-training-more-credible-than-online-training/
www.mindtools.com/pages/article/instructor-led-training.htm

Design Documents

http://courses.christopherylam.com/5180/wp-content/uploads/2013/08/DesignDoc-WhatWhy-042306.pdf
www.learningsolutionsmag.com/articles/242/the-design-document-your-blueprint-for-e-learning-standards-and-consistency
www.slideshare.net/dnerland/isd-addie

Developing Content

www.allencomm.com/custom-training/training-design/?gclid=CKyAgubt3r8CFeRj7AodaiUAlw
www.go2itech.org/HTML/TT06/toolkit/development/materials.html
www.infomap.com

Evaluation (General)

American Evaluation Association: www.eval.org
Federal government: www.gao.gov/policy/10 1 4.htm
knowledgeadvisors.com/metrics-that-matter/
List serv: http://bama.ua.edu/archives/evaltalk.html
List serv: http://evaluation.wmich.edu/archives
www.ispi.org/pdf/suggestedReading/Carr.pdf
www.karinrex.com/tc_evals.html
www.mindtools.com/pages/article/kirkpatrick.htm
www.opm.gov/wiki/training/Training-Evaluation.ashx

Flipped Classroom

http://cft.vanderbilt.edu/guides-sub-pages/flipping-the-classroom/
http://flippedlearning.org/site/default.aspx?PageID=1
www.knewton.com/flipped-classroom/

Informal Learning

http://marciaconner.com/resources/informal-learning/
Infed.org

Instructional Design (General)

ASTD: www.astd.org/
Don Clark (alias Big Dog): www.nwlink.com/~donclark/hrd.html
http://carbon.ucdenver.edu/~mryder/itc/idmodels.html
ISPI: www.ispi.org/
Lakewood's Training: www.trainingmag.com
Research Papers: www.gsu.edu/~wwwitr/research.html
Self-Directed Learning: www.SDLGLOBAL.com
The International Board of Standards for Training, Performance, and Instruction: www.ibstpi.org/
The Training Registry: www.tregistry.com/
www.instructionaldesign.org/

Job Aids and Performance Support Systems

http://hr.toolbox.com/wiki/index.php/Job_Aids_and_Training
San Diego State University Job Aids: http://go.sdsu.edu/education/Default.aspx
www.astd.org/Events/International-Conference-and-Exposition/ICE-Speaker-Kit/~/media/Files/Speaker%20Information/DesigningaJobAid.ashx
www.atsc.army.mil/tadlp/trainingdevs/guides/guides_job_aids.asp
www.learningsolutionsmag.com/pss/content/3290/performance-support-symposium-2014--home/?gclid=COzAkNfl3r8CFeRj7AodaiUAlw
www.msu.edu/~sleightd/epss_copy.html
www.webpages.uidaho.edu/~bdyre/psyc512/Design%20EPSS%20to%20Facilitate%20Learning.pdf
www2.gsu.edu/~wwwitr/docs/nextgen

Media (Non-Technical)

Pictures and PowerPoint Presentations: www.kodak.com/US/en/digital/dlc/book1/chapter7/index.shtml
Presentation software: Prezi.com
www.canstockphoto.com/illustration/training.html
www.fonts.com/ PhotoDisc: www.photodisc.com

www.fotosearch.com/illustration/training.html
www.presentersuniversity.com

Mobile Learning

http://mitmobilelearning.org/
www.cosn.org/mobilelead
www.iamlearn.org/
www.m-learning.org/

MOOCs

www.inc.com/welcome.html?destination=http://www.inc.com/issie-lapowsky/how-moocs-training-tomorrow-workforce.html
www.techrepublic.com/article/how-moocs-are-flattening-corporate-training-and-education/

Objectives

Bloom's Taxonomy: http://mailer.fsu.edu/~jflake/bloom.html
www.adprima.com/objectives.htm
www.google.com/url?sa=t&rct=j&q=&esrc=s&frm=1&source=web&cd=8&ved=0CD4QFjAH&url=http%3A%2F%2F
www.shrm.org/templatestools/samples/powerpoints/pages/settinggoalsandobjectives.aspx
www.structuredlearning.com%2Fuploads%2Fdocs%2Fsmart_objectives_article.pdf&ei=oW_RU87xHsTc8AG03IH4Bg&usg=AFQjCNEFPMMU1tYU_zjKZo5guvzjjnezmg&sig2=FXCQ8D-TRwj6G6-YP2paNg
www.web.uct.ac.za/projects/cbe/mcgman/mcqappc.html
www.wikihow.com/Write-Training-Objectives

On-the-Job Training

http://education-portal.com/academy/lesson/methods-for-training-employees-mentoring-on-the-job-job-rotation.html#lesson
http://humanresources.about.com/od/educationgeneral/g/on-the-job-training.htm
http://humanresources.about.com/od/new/tp/provide-job-training.htm

Performance Analysis

www.astd.org/Publications/Books/ASTD-Learning-System/~/media/4CEF80EB52A34B01838B77E59C76F65F.ashx
www.clarktrainingcomwww.hsa-lps.com
www.ISPI.org

ROI and CBA

ASTD.org
http://smallbusiness.chron.com/calculate-roi-training-40331.html
www.businesstrainingexperts.com/white_papers/training_return_on_investment_roi/How%20to%20Determine%20ROI%20-%20Non%20Manufacturing%20Environment.pdf
www.learnativity.con/roi-learning.html
www.school-for-champions.com/training/roi.htm
www.shrm.org/education/hreducation/documents/09-0168%20kaminski%20roi%20tnd%20im_final.pdf
www.slideshare.net/nusantara99/measuring-roi-of-training

Social Network–Based Learning

http://c4lpt.co.uk/resources/social-learning-handbook/100-examples-of-use-of-social-media-for-learning/
www.slideshare.net/RonniH/social-based-learning

Synchronous e-Learning (Virtual Classrooms)

American Center for the Study of Distance Learning: www.cde.psu.edu/acsde
Distance Learning: The Virtual University Gazette: Distance Learning Software: http://ilinc.com
Online Meeting Center: www.webex.com
USDLA: www.usdla.org
www.distance-educator.com
www.elearningguild.com%2FshowFile.cfm%3Fid%3D2930&ei=1HDRU_v7IsWe8QGSnoHQBw&usg=AFQjCNFRSDsltoQJdqYy3ASWP6bg5G7FjA&sig2=QkuDADH-E5W05r4wiyY85Q&bvm=bv.71667212,d.b2U
www.google.com/url?sa=t&rct=j&q=&esrc=s&frm=1&source=web&cd=12&ved=0CF0QFjAL&url=http%3A%2F%2F
www.learningsolutionsmag.com/articles/1197/synchronous-or-asynchronous-how-to-pick-your-training-delivery-method
www.talentlms.com/elearning/synchronous_vs_asynchronous_elearning

TBT (Misc.)

Technical Encyclopedia Online: www.webopedia.com
United States Distance Learning Association: www.usdla.org
Videocconferencing: www.imcca.org

Test Questions

https://testmoz.com/
https://www.easytestmaker.com/

www.cmu.edu/teaching/assessment/assesslearning/creatingexams.html
www.iub.edu/~best/pdf_docs/better_tests.pdf

Technology-Based Training

Computer Training Network: www.thectn.com/
www.allencomm.com
www.macromedia.com
www.multimediatrainingvideos.com/
www.refresher.com/atbtraining.html

Trainee Evaluation

http://edutechwiki.unige.ch/en/Learner_assessment
http://evaluationfocus.com/kirkpatrick-level-2-evaluation/
www.trainingcheck.com/help-centre-2/guide-to-training-evaluation/creating-evaluations-at-the-different-levels/level-2-learning/

Training Settings

Advisor 3.0 (Helps analyze training settings): www.bnhexpertsoft.com
http://trainingtoday.blr.com/employee-training-resources/How-to-Choose-the-Most-Effective-Training-Techniques

Transfer

http://evaluationfocus.com/kirkpatrick-level-3-evaluation/
www.astd.org/Publications/Newsletters/Learning-Circuits/Learning-Circuits-Archives/2005/05/Kirkpatricks-Level-3-Improving-the-Evaluation-of-E-Learning
www.trainingcheck.com/help-centre-2/guide-to-training-evaluation/creating-evaluations-at-the-different-levels/level-3-job-impact/

About the Author

George M. Piskurich, Ph.D., is an independent consultant based in El Paso, Texas. He provides consulting services and workshops in instructional design, performance improvement, and e-learning to clients throughout the country. He specializes in performance/training analysis, the design and development of self-directed/individualized learning programs for all levels of the organization, e-learning interventions, multiple-site training systems, telecommuting interventions, and knowledge centers.

Dr. Piskurich has been a presenter and workshop leader at over thirty conferences and symposia, including the International Self-Directed Learning Symposium, the Best of America Conference, and the ISPI and ASTD international conferences. He is an active member of both ISPI and ASTD, where he has held local and national leadership positions. In 1986 he was ASTD's "Instructional Technologist of the Year." He also won the "Best Use of Instructional Technology in Business" award in 1992 for his distributed SDL technical skills training design.

He has edited books on instructional technology, e-learning, Human Performance Technology, and program development, written books on self-directed learning, instructional design, training basics, telecommuting, and fly fishing, and authored many journal articles and book chapters on various topics, including customer service, structured mentoring, and corporate downsizing.

He can be reached at Georgepiskurich@gmail.com.

Index

A

Action learning: description of, 223; instructional games used for, 223

Action verbs: examples of appropriate task, 75–77; used for a job analysis, 74

Activities: asynchronous e-learning games and, 394–396; facilitator guide information on, 218–222; hints on developing classroom, 249–250; icebreakers, 213–214, 414; importance of using high-quality, 218; introduction, 174; issues to consider when using, 221–222; list of possible, 218–221; post-class, 177, 226–227; pre-class, 209; pre-instructional, 174; pre-tests, 174–175, 214–215; pre/post, 210–211; RAT (readiness assurance test), 454–455; sequencing, 173–177; trainee and supervisor pre-activities, 209–210; two key issues for trainee-centered, 175. *See also* Instructional games; Testing

ADDIE model: best learning interventions created using, 62; look for authoring system that adheres to the, 400; supervising instructional designer's monitoring throughout cycle of, 363. *See also* Analysis; Design; Development; Evaluation; Implementation

Administration (design document on), 156

Adult learning theory, 287

Affinity diagrams, 26

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland (Carroll), 73

Allen Communication, 67, 92

Allen, M., 394

The AMA Handbook of e-Learning (2003), 372, 378, 384, 401, 409, 430, 431

Analysis: Analysis Job Aid for organizing the, 103–104; asynchronous e-learning, 387–390; data-collection methods used for, 64–73; of motivation for comprehensive e-learning strategy, 371–372; SME role during the, 165; software packages for, 355; types of, 73–105; understanding the importance of, 73. *See also* ADDIE model

Analysis data-collection methods: focus groups, 65–68; hybrids, 72–73; interviews, 68–69; for job analysis, 88; listed, 65; observations, 70–72; overview of the, 64; surveys or questionnaires, 69–70; for task analysis, 86, 88

"Analysis paralysis," 168

Analysis software, 355

Analysis types: analysis job aid, 103–104; Analysis Job Aid for organizing, 103–104; competency analysis, 74, 99–102; computer-aided, 102–103; criticality analysis, 74, 81–84, 104; delivery analysis, 104, 108, 110–113, 128, 388; job analysis, 74–81, 83–84, 87–89, 100–102, 103; learning analysis, 74, 90–91, 104; learning needs, 103; listed, 74; task analysis, 74, 84–90, 104; trainee (audience) analysis, 74, 92–99, 104, 390

"Analyzing the Organization's Need for e-Learning" (Floyd), 372

Anonymous Questioning activity, 218

"Applying Graphic Design Principles" (King), 259

As-needed revisions, 338

Assessment: for choosing training needs to address, 39–42; organizational needs, 21–23; performance, 23–33; performance gap, 24–26, 33; training needs, 33–38; Virtual Facilitator Self-Assessment, 438–440

ASTD : *2013 State of the Industry Report* by, 3; mobile learning

ASTD *(continued)*
certificate program of, 457; website of, 355
Asynchronous e-learning: activities, games, and interactions for, 394–396; advantages and disadvantages of, 389–390; audience analysis for, 390; beta tests and pilots, 399–400; blended e-learning using, 368–369; creating organizational vision of, 373; definitions related to, 367–368; delivery analysis for, 388; delivery decision criteria for, 122; description of, 367; designing and developing good programs of, 373–374, 390–397, 404–408; determining organizational readiness for, 372; establishing policies and procedures for, 373–374; evaluation of, 385–387, 397–398, 403; graphics for, 396–397; hints on designing, 200–202, 404–405; implementation of, 369–370, 384–387; learner guides, 393–394; learner interfaces for, 398–399; learning content management systems (LCMSs) for, 361–362, 374–375; learning management systems (LMSs) for, 361–362, 374–378; monitoring and evaluation plan for, 385–387; organizational motivation for, 371–372; Preparing To Be An Asynchronous E-Learner Job Aid, 373; Questions For E-learning System Development, 405–406; rapid design shortcuts for, 385, 394, 396, 397, 401; repurposing current programs into, 401–403; ROI (return on investment) on, 386; Sample Program Design on, 376; scripts and storyboards for, 231–235, 391–392; Self-Directed Learning Plan for, 389; simple form of, 201–202; software used for, 400–401; some sad statistics on, 369–370; twenty-five significant comments made by e-learners on, 407–408; Web-Based Training Layout for, 391; Your Twenty Questions For E-learning Checklist, 406–407. *See also* E-learning; Synchronous e-learning
Attitudes. *See* Skills, knowledge, and attitudes (KSAs)
Audience: instructional design principle of target, 2; scope of project and, 151; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 156; trainee (audience) analysis of, 74, 92–99, 104, 390, 432–434
Audience Analysis Questions (For Mangers/Initiators), 94
Audience Analysis Report, 98
Audience Analysis Template, 95
Audio instruction: delivery decision criteria for, 127; different forms of, 127
Authoring software systems, 400–401
Authorware software, 400

B

Behavior Modeling activity, 218
Bell, C., 109
Benefits costs, 48
Berge, Z., 434
Beta Test/Pilot Review Checklist, 272–273
Beta tests: also called design tests, 264; asynchronous e-learning, 399–400; Beta Test Questions form on, 267–268; Beta Test/Pilot Review Checklist on, 272–273; description and purpose of, 264; for on-the-job training (OJT), 266; other considerations for, 265–266; pilots versus, 269–270; Running a Beta Test form on, 267; for self-instructional programs, 266–267; simulation used for, 264–265; summary of, 280. *See also* Pilots
Blended delivery systems: description of, 113–115; design outline for, 115–116; e-books used as part of the, 115
Blended e-learning, 368–369
Blended e-Learning (Mantyla), 369
Blended Level 1 Evaluation (form), 349–351
Board games, 223
Brainstorming activity, 218
Brethower, D., 29
Brockbank, B., 378
Business processes: design integration of, 12; evaluation level 3 on training applications to, 325–330; evaluation level 4 on impact of training on, 330–332; performance assessment consideration of, 24

C

Call center employees training needs report, 43–44
Card games, 224
Carey, L., 2
Carroll, L., 73
Case Study activities/games, 218, 224
Cash games, 224
Cause analysis: conducted after a performance gap assessment, 26; different methodologies used for, 26
CD-ROM-based training. *See* Computer/CD-ROM-based training
Chat rooms, 417, 431–432
Checklists: Beta Test/Pilot Review Checklist, 272–273; Checklist for Developing Print Material, 238; Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 256–257; Checklist for Reviewing Facilitator Guides or Trainer Manuals, 246–247; Classroom Training Checklist, 111; Criterion checklists, 182–184; delivery analysis, 110–113; E-Learning (Instructor Led or Self-Instruction) Checklist, 113; Field Trip Checklist, 306–309; Instructor Checklist, 291; Job Performance Aids Checklist, 113; On-The-Job Training Checklist, 111; Operations Department Final Checklist, 183–184; An Overhead Development Checklist, 247–248; Self-Instruction Checklist, 112; Self-Instruction Facilitator Checklist, 293; Synchronous

Class Initiation Checklist, 444–446; Technology-Based Training Checklist, 112; Trainer Certification Checklist, 182–183; Video Production Checklist, 261; Your Twenty Questions For E-learning Checklist, 406–407. *See also* Forms; Templates
Chunking: description of, 178; different instructional approaches to, 178; mobile learning (m-learning), 459–460
Classrooms. *See* Instructor-led classrooms
The cloud: advantages of using for training, 473; challenge of defining, 471–472; facilitator or designer applications of, 472; training cost savings of the, 472–473
Cloud computing, 472
Coaching programs: delivery decision criteria for, 127; example of expanded outline for a, 170–172
Colloquy activity, 218
Committee activity, 218–219
Communication/marketing plans: basic thoughts on creating, 297; components of a good, 297–298; description of, 296; general purpose of, 296; rapid design shortcut for, 298
Communications plans: communication/marketing plan for implementation, 296–298; Formal Design Document Template on, 149
Communities of practice (COPs): caution against using as a VLE, 469; creating social network learning, 465; description of, 468; tying courses and applications of, 468–469
Competency analysis: categories of standards used for, 100; comparing job/task analysis to, 100–102; definition and method to determine, 99; description of, 74, 99; questions to ask for, 99–100
Competitive advantage of ID (instructional design), 12
Completion test format: designing a, 189–190; Test Question Critiquing List form on, 195
Complex Design Document Template, 145–147
Complex Training Analysis Document, 57–61
Comprehensive Open Skill Test Design (Desmedt), 182
Computer-aided analysis: description of, 102–103; tools used for, 103
Computer game shells, 224
Computer projections: hints on designing, 249; ideas on graphics, 248
Computer training centers, 302
Computer/CD-ROM-based training: hints on designing, 199–200; hints on designing computer projections, 249; ideas on graphics, 248. *See also* Technology-based training (TBT)
Computer/DVD (multimedia) programs: basic development roles in, 255; Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development on, 256–257; hints on Better DVD (Multimedia) Program Development form on, 257–259; Operating a Learning Center form on, 304; rapid design shortcuts for development of, 255; scripts and storyboards development in, 255–256. *See also* Technology-based training (TBT)
Conditions (objective), 137–139
Conducting a Distributed Self-Instructional Implementation (form), 302–303
Confrontation Role Play activity, 221
Consistency of ID (instructional design), 12–13
Content: definition of, 9; design document on delivery and, 153; expanded outline of the, 170–172; gathering, 162–168; how objectives ensure complete, 129; review of, 280; sequencing the course, 172–173; Team Production Process Design Document example on delivery and, 157; web pages used for, 429–430
Content gathering: additional sources used for, 167–168; document-based consensus analysis used for, 168; prerequisite learning for, 166–167; rapid design hints on, 165–166, 168; selecting SMEs for, 162–163; when to know that enough is enough, 168; working with your SME during the, 163–164
"Content paralysis," 168
Content roadmaps: Content Roadmap Template, 170; description and function of, 169
Continuing Interaction Activity (form), 431–432
Coscarelli, W. C., 179
Cost-effectiveness: of the cloud for training, 472–473; instructional design advantage of, 9–10
Cost/benefit analysis (CBA): description of, 47; evaluation level 5 (ROI, return on investment) as part of the, 312, 332–334; a quick and dirty, 47–49; training costs and benefits, 49–54. *See also* Training costs
Costs, Benefits, and Productivity in Training Systems (Kearsley), 47
Course descriptions: Course Descriptions Template, 161–162; rapid design shortcut on, 162
Course Maintenance Planning (form), 342
Course maps: description and function of, 169; parts comprising, 169
Course Materials Reference List, 240
Courses : description of, 161–162; design document on length of, 152–153; instructional plan developed for the, 168–178; MOOCs (massive open online courses), 466–467; public, 358; repurposing current ones into asynchronous e-learning, 401–403; revisions based on evaluation, 338–344; training activities, 173–177, 209–214, 218–222, 249–250; tying communities of practice (COPs)

Courses *(continued)*
to, 465, 468–469. *See also* Programs; Training
Court Techniques Role Play activity, 221
Creative Training Techniques (Pike), 9
Criterion-based testing: description of, 179; good test questions for, 179; questions based on course objectives for, 180–181
Criterion checklists, 182–184
Criterion-Referenced Test Development (Shrock and Coscarelli), 179
Critical Incident activity, 219
Criticality analysis: Analysis Job Aid on characteristics of, 104; criticality matrix used for, 82; description of, 74, 81; form to combine job analysis and, 83–84; four factors examined during the, 81; other questions to determine task criticality, 82–83
Criticality matrix, 82
Critique activity, 219

D

Data collection: focus groups used for, 65–68, 92–93; hybrid methods used for, 72–73; interviews used for, 68–69, 93; job analysis, 88; methods listed, 65; observations, 70–72, 96, 167–168, 437; overview of, 64; on performance, 28–29; surveys or questionnaires used for, 69–70, 95, 335–337; task analysis, 86, 88
Debate activity, 219
Decision trees: e-learning inclusion of, 254; print-based manual inclusion of, 254–255
Defining Internet and Web-Based Training (Driscoll), 200
Delivery: constraints on, 116–120; design document on details of, 153–154; methods of, 109–127; MOOCs (massive open online courses), 467; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 157
Delivery analysis: Analysis Job Aid on characteristics of, 104; asynchronous e-learning, 388; checklists used for, 110–113; final criteria used for, 122–127; three concerns of, 128; variables to consider during, 108
Delivery constraints: availability of facilitators as, 119–120; availability of instructors as, 119–120; description and categories of, 116–117; questions for categories of, 117–119; Selecting Delivery Method by Project Constraints form on, 119; self-instruction issue as, 120–121
Delivery constraints categories: design, 117; logistical, 117; resources, 117, 118; stakeholder, 117–118; training methods, 117, 118
Delivery decision checklists: Classroom Training, 111; E-Learning (Instructor Led or Self-Instruction), 113; Job Performance Aids, 113; On-The-Job Training, 111; Self-Instruction, 112; Technology-Based Training, 112
Delivery decision criteria: for asynchronous e-learning, 122; for audio instruction, 127; for computer-and noncomputer-based performance support, 122; for lecture, lab, or classroom, 126; for linear video, 125; for mentoring, coaching, or on-the-job training, 127; for paper self-paced, 125; for synchronous e-learning, 124
Delivery decisions: checklists for making the, 110–113; final criteria for the, 122–127; general training delivery methods to consider for, 109–110; variables to consider when making the, 108
Delivery methods: audio, 127; blended delivery systems, 113–116; constraints on, 116–119; design document on, 153–154; instructor-led classrooms, 109, 110, 111, 126; job performance aids, 109, 110, 113, 123; on-the-job training (OJT), 109, 110, 111, 127; rapid design shortcut for, 109; self-instruction, 109, 110, 112, 125, 283–284; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 157; technology-based training (TBT), 109, 110, 112, 122, 124; training by documentation, 110. *See also* Course formats
Demonstration activity, 219
Denova, C. C., 185, 226
Deployment plan, 294–296
Design: asynchronous e-learning development and, 373–374, 390–397, 404–408; design documents for, 143–161; e-learning development and, 198–202, 390–397, 404–408; hints for social network-based learning, 464–466; hints on designing in various formats, 196–202; review of, 280; SME role during the process of, 165; synchronous e-learning considerations for, 413–414; synchronous e-learning repurposing and redesigning of, 415–416. *See also* ADDIE model; New design applications
Design components: course descriptions, 161–162; creating design documents, 143–161; delivery analysis and decision, 107–128; gathering content, 162–168; the instructional plan for adding structure, 168–178; objectives, 128–142; trainee evaluation (test questions and tests), 178–196
Design document details: 1: scope of project, 150–153, 156; 2: delivery, 153–154, 157; 3: objectives, 154, 158; 4: training materials, 154, 158; 5: who is involved, 154–155, 158; 6: topical outline, 155, 159; 7: administration and evaluation, 156, 160; 8: links, 156, 160–161
Design document templates: Complex Design Document, 145–147; Course Descriptions, 161–162; Design Document, 143–144; Formal Design Document, 147–150; Simple Design Document, 145
Design documents: creating formal course description

in, 161–162; description and purpose of a, 143; details of, 150–161; Team Production Process Design Document, 156–161
Design format hints: classroom, 196; e-learning, 198–202; on-the-job training (job aids), 196–197; satellite-based training and other telephonic formats, 202; self-instruction, 197–198
Design tests, 264
Design time/milestones: design document information on the, 151–152; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 156
Designers. *See* Instructional designers (IDs)
Designer's Edge software (Allen Communication), 67, 92
Designing in Various Testing Formats (form), 186–190
Desmedt, J., 182
Developing materials hints: Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 251–252; for classroom materials, 247–252; for computer/DVD-based training, 255; E-Learning Design hints on, 259–260; hints on Better DVD (Multimedia) Program Development form, 252–254; for on-the-job training (job-aids), 252–253; An Overhead Development Checklist, 247–248; for scripts, 255; for self-instruction, 254–255; for storyboards, 251; Video Shot List/Log form, 261
Development: asynchronous e-learning design and, 373–374, 390–397, 404–408; Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 251–252; e-learning design and, 198–202, 390–397, 404–408; end products of, 203–231; the facilitator guide, 205–231, 246–247; hints on developing material, 247–271; ISD Quality Review of, 240–246; of other media, 239–240; participant packages and other print materials, 235–239; rapid design shortcut on finishing the, 247; scripts and storyboards, 231–235. *See also* ADDIE model; Programs
Development end products: classroom training as, 204, 247–256; description of, 203; the facilitator guide as an, 205–231, 246–247; on-the-job training as, 204; self-instruction as, 204; technology-based training as, 204–205, 256–261
Development plan: Formal Design Document Template on, 149; SME role as part of the, 165
Dialogue activity, 219
Dick, W., 2
Digital cameras, 362
Directions performance gap assessment, 25
Discussion activity, 219
"Discussion Groups and Chat" (Williams), 431
Distance learning. *See* Technology-based training (TBT)
Distance Learning (Mantyla and Gividen), 109, 202
Distributed delivery for self-instruction, 284
Do I Need Instructional Design quiz, 15
Document-based consensus analysis, 168
Donovan, L., 384
Drill activity, 219
Driscoll, M., 200, 396
DVD (multimedia) programs. *See* Computer/DVD (multimedia) programs

E

E-learners: E-Learning Self-Assessment, 384; Preparing To Be An Asynchronous E-Learner Job Aid, 383; synchronous e-learning preparation by, 440–443; thoughts on preparing and motivating, 382; Tips for Interacting Successfully Online form for, 442–443; twenty-five significant comments on asynchronous e-learning by, 407–408; what they say about synchronous e-learning, 451–452. *See also* Interactions; Learners
E-learning: blended, 368–369; course overview for, 200; creating organizational vision for, 373; decision tree used in, 254–255; delivery of training through, 109, 110; designing, 198–202, 390–397, 404–408; determining a comprehensive strategy for, 371–373; E-Learning Design hints on, 259–260; E-Learning (Instructor Led or Self-Instruction) Checklist for deciding on, 113; establishing policies and procedures for, 373–374; evaluation criteria for, 348; evaluation level 1 (trainee reaction) instrument for, 321–324; Five Window E-Learning Storyboard form on, 235; Four-Column Storyboard Template for, 235; learning content management systems (LCMSs) for, 361–362, 374–375; learning management systems (LMSs) for, 361–362, 374–378, 463; Operating a Learning Center form on, 304–305; preparing your organization for, 378–380; Sample E-Learning Trainee Opinion Survey on, 347; self-direction learning issue of, 380–382; self-instruction distributed through, 121; selling points on, 378–421; some sad statistics on, 369–370. *See also* Asynchronous e-learning; Learning; Synchronous e-learning; Technology-based training (TBT)
E-Learning: Strategies for Delivering Knowledge in the Digital Age (Rosenberg), 370
E-Learning Design Hints (for asynchronous e-learning), 404–405
E-Learning Design Hints (for e-learning), 259–260
E-Learning Level 1 Evaluation Instrument (form), 321–324
E-Learning Self-Assessment (form), 384

E-learning systems: outstanding planning as the key to a successful, 370; some sad statistics on, 369–370; things to consider when creating, 369
E-learning vision, 373
E-mails: blended e-learning that uses, 368–369; hint on saving design time and implementation costs through, 364; mobile learning (m-learning) use of, 460; training review, 281–282
Editorial review, 280
Effective Training Delivery, 108
Electronic performance support system (EPSS), 359–360, 364
Electronic Performance Support Systems (Gery), 359
Embedded questions, 226
Embedded tests, 176
Employees: assessing training needs using input from, 33–36; assessment of incentives/rewards for, 25; assessment of individual performance by, 24; performance assessment considerations of the individual, 24; training needs analysis report for call center, 43–44. *See also* Organizations
Equipment. *See* Tools and equipment
Essay test format: designing a, 190; Test Question Critiquing List form on, 195
Evaluating e-Learning (Horton), 403
Evaluating Training Programs: The Four Levels (Kirkpatrick), 312
Evaluation: asynchronous e-learning, 385–387, 397–398, 403; costs of training, 50; design document on the course, 156; Formal Design Document Template on, 149; hints on conducting, 344–351; instructional design advantage for training effectiveness, 11–12; the key to good, 312–315; lack of informal learning quantitative, 471; program revisions following the, 338–344; rapid design shortcuts on, 314–315, 321, 325, 326, 332; reasons for conducting, 311–312; ROI (return on investment), 312, 332, 333–334, 386; Selection Criteria Worksheet for Level 4 Evaluation, 42; self-instruction packages, 334–338; of self-instruction programs, 334–338; SME role during, 165; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 160; trainee (test questions and tests), 178–196; training effectiveness, 11–12; types and levels of, 315–334. *See also* ADDIE model; Skills, knowledge, and attitudes (KSAs)
Evaluation hints: Blended Level 1 Evaluation, 349–351; for classroom, 344; e-learning program evaluation criteria, 348; multimedia program evaluation questions to ask, 347; for on-the-job training, 344; Sample E-Learning Trainee Opinion Survey, 347; for satellite-based training, 349; for self-instruction, 345–346; TBT program considerations, 348
Evaluation level 1 (trainee reaction): E-Learning Level 1 Evaluation Instrument, 321–324; how to conduct an, 316–317; overview of the, 315–324; rapid design shortcuts for, 321; Reaction Instrument 1, 318; Reaction Instrument 2, 318; Reaction Instrument 3, 319; Reaction Instrument 4, 319–320; self-instructional, 321
Evaluation level 2 (learning): description of, 324; evaluating your skills evaluation tests, 325; rapid design shortcuts for, 325
Evaluation level 3 (application): Level 3 Evaluation Instrument for Managers, 329–330; methods used for the, 326; overview of the, 325; performance checklists used for, 328–329; post-training interview, 326; rapid design shortcut for, 326; Transfer to Job Instrument 1, 326–327; Transfer to Job Instrument 2, 327; Transfer to Job Instrument 3, 328
Evaluation level 4 (business impact): overview of the, 330–331; questions to ask as part of the, 331–332; rapid design shortcuts for, 332
Evaluation level 5 (ROI, return on investment): asynchronous e-learning, 386; description of, 312, 332; issues to consider when calculating ROI, 333–334
Evaluation levels: 1: trainee reaction to the course, 315–324; 2: skills and knowledge mastery and retention (learning), 324–325; 3: transfer to the job/improvements in job performance (application), 325–330; 4: results (business impact), 330–332; 5: ROI (return on investment), 332–334
Expanded content outline: description of, 170; example from a coaching program, 170–172; rapid design shortcut for doing an, 170–172
Experience-based learning, 224

F

Facilitator Guide Development Job Aid (form), 229–231
Facilitator guide formats: "all in one," 208; decisions to make about, 207; example of three-column format lesson plan, 208; example of two-column, 207; mix and match, 209
Facilitator guide items: icebreakers, 213–214; introduction, 211–212; motivation section, 214; overview included in the introduction, 212; pass-out versus handout question, 215–216; pre-class activities, 209; pre-tests, 214–215; pre/post activities, 210–211; product: description of what the trainer is doing, 210; trainee and supervisor pre-activities, 209–210
Facilitator Guide Template (synchronous e-learning), 420

Facilitator guides: activities, 218–222; Checklist for Reviewing Facilitator Guides or Trainer Manuals, 246–247; content (the body) of the, 216; description and purpose of, 205; embedded questions, 226; Facilitator Guide Development Job Aid form, 229–231; formats used for, 207–209; instructional games, 222–225; internal summaries, 225–226; items included in the, 209–216; need to now versus need to know information in, 228–229; post-class activities, 226–227; procedures, 217; review of the, 229; Sample Facilitator Guide, 205–207; supplies list, 227–228; synchronous e-learning, 419–422
Facilitators: availability as delivery constraint issue, 120; definition of, 5, 8; disadvantages of synchronous e-learning for the, 412–413; hints on implementation for, 300–301; on-the-job training (OJT) trainer taking role of, 8, 121; Self-Instruction Facilitator Checklist, 293; SMEs (subject-matter experts) as flipped classroom, 455–461; synchronous e-learning training of, 434–440; T-3 ("train the trainer") program for inexperienced, 285–287; technological training for synchronous e-learning, 437; Virtual Facilitator Self-Assessment by, 438–440. *See also* Instructor-led classrooms; Trainers
Faculty Strategy Template, 290
Fast training needs analysis, 46
Feedback: performance gap assessment of, 25; Task Analysis Form on, 89
Field trips: adult learning through, 306; Field Trip Checklist, 306–309
Figuring Things Out (Zemke), 64
Fill-in-the-blank format. *See* Completion test format
First-level objectives, 139
First Things Fast: A Handbook for Performance Analysis (Rossett), 23
Fishbowl activity, 219
Five Window E-Learning Storyboard (form), 235
"5 Whys" cause analysis, 26
Flip charts, 250, 299
Flipped classrooms: description of, 453–454; design considerations related to, 454–455; rapid design shortcut related to, 457; RAT (readiness assurance test) activity for, 454–455; SMEs (subject matter experts) facilitators of, 455–461
Floyd, T., 372
Focus groups: assessing training needs using, 33–36; description of, 65; electronic bulletin boards used instead of a live meeting, 68; facilitating a, 67–68; methods used for handling a, 65–66; selecting participants for, 66–67; for trainee (audience) analysis, 92–93
Formal Design Document Template, 147–150
Forms : Audience Analysis Questions (For Mangers/Initiators), 94; Beta Test Questions, 267–268; Blended Level 1 Evaluation, 349–351; Conducting a Distributed Self-Instructional Implementation, 302–303; Continuing Interaction Activity, 431–432; Course Maintenance Planning, 342; Designing in Various Testing Formats, 186–190; E-Learning Design Hints (for asynchronous e-learning), 404–405; E-Learning Design Hints (for e-learning), 259–260; E-Learning Level 1 Evaluation Instrument, 321–324; E-Learning Self-Assessment, 384; Facilitator Guide Development Job Aid, 229–231; Five Window E-Learning Storyboard, 235; hints on Better DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 257–259; Instructional Designer's Pilot Observation Tool, 274–276; Instructor Feedback Observation Form, 288–289; Job Aid: Facilitating Virtual Interactions, 436; Job Aids: General Virtual Facilitator Skills, 435–436; Job Analysis Form, 83–84; Level 3 Evaluation Instrument for Managers, 329–330; Media Formats (synchronous e-learning), 426; Objective Checklist, 184; Observation Form, 72; Online Decision Job Aid, 450–451; Operating a Learning Center, 303–306; Pilot Observer Evaluation Sheet, 276–277; Pilot Participant Survey, 277–279; Pilot Presenter Evaluation, 279; Preparing to Be a Synchronous e-Learner, 441–442; Preparing To Be An Asynchronous E-Learner Job Aid, 383; Questions, 191–192; Questions For E-learning System Development, 405–406; Questions To Consider When Analyzing Your Organization's Readiness For E-Learning, 372; Reaction Instrument 1, 318; Reaction Instrument 2, 318; Reaction Instrument 3, 319; Reaction Instrument 4, 319–320; Running a Beta Test, 267; Sample Facilitator Guide, 205–206; Sample Program Design (asynchronous e-learning), 376; Selecting Delivery Method by Project Constraints, 119; A Self-Assessment of Personal Synchronous E-Learning Characteristics, 443; Self-Directed Learning Plan (asynchronous e-learning), 389; Seven Rules for Good Instructional Design tool, 365; Simple Two-Column Storyboard, 232–233; Store Manager Questionnaire, 335; Subject-Matter Expert Selection Form, 39–40; Survey on Self-Instructional Packages, 336–337; Task Analysis Form, 86–87, 88–89; Test Question Critiquing List, 193–195; Three-Column Storyboard for Technology-Based Storyboard,

Forms *(continued)*
233–234; Tips for Interacting Successfully Online, 442–443; Top Audience Characteristics, 97–98; Transfer to Job Instrument 1, 326–327; Transfer to Job Instrument 2, 327; Transfer to Job Instrument 3, 328; Video Shot List/Log, 261; Virtual Facilitator Self-Assessment, 438–440; Web-Based Training Layout (asynchronous e-learning), 391. *See also* Checklists; Templates
Forum activity, 219
Four-Column Storyboard Template, 235
Framegames templates, 224
Front-end analysis, 24

G

Gallup, D. A., 109
Games. *See* Instructional games
Games Trainers Play (Newstrom), 222
GamesLetter (Thiagi), 175, 223
Gathering content. *See* Content gathering
Gayeski, D., 162
Gery, G., 359
"Getting Inside an Expert's Brain" (Gayeski), 162
"Getting Ready for Synchronous e-Learning" (Hoffman), 409
Getting the Most from Online Learning (Piskurich), 440
Gividen, J. R., 109, 202
Goals: objectives versus, 130–131; scope of project and, 150–151; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 156. *See also* Objectives
Granular training, 357–358
Graphics: asynchronous e-learning, 396–397; ideas on using, 248; synchronous e-learning, 428; video, 258

H

Hall, B., 200
Handbook of HPT Message Design (Stolovich), 260
Handouts versus pass-outs, 215–216
Hanna, D., 446
Hard copies or pictures, 427–428
Hard costs, 49
Hartley, D., 378
Hartnett, J., 255
Hoffman, J., 409, 416
Holton, E., III, 20–21
Horton, B., 403
How to Wright Training Materials (Stoneall), 250
Human performance technologists (HPT): description of, 30; performance areas that can be improved on by, 30–31
Human resource (HR) department: gathering performance information from the, 28; organizational needs assessment on training by the, 21–23
Hybrid data-collection techniques, 72–73

I

IBM, 473
Icebreakers: description and purpose of, 213; short list of issues to consider for, 214; suggestions on types of, 213–214; synchronous e-learning use of, 414
Implementation: asynchronous e-learning, 369–370, 384–387; beta tests and pilots, 263–279; classroom, 282–283, 287–298, 299–300; communication/marketing plan for, 296–298; field trips, 306–309; program deployment plan for, 294–296; reviewing before, 279–282; self-instruction, 283–284; synchronous e-learning, 434–446; T-3 or "train the trainer," 284–287. *See also* ADDIE model
Implementation hints: for classroom, 299–300; for facilitators, 300–301; for on-the-job (1:1) training, 293–294, 301; for self-instruction, 302–306
Implementation plans: asynchronous e-learning, 384–385; Formal Design Document Template on, 149; SME role as part of the, 165
"Implementing e-Learning" (Donovan), 384
In-Baskets activity, 219
Incentives/rewards assessment, 25
Individual performance assessment, 24
Informal learning: description and challenge of, 469–470; lack of quantitative evaluation methodology for, 471; as self-directed, 471; strategies for utilizing, 470–471
Information: chunking, 178, 459–460; data-collection methods for gathering, 64–73; performance gap assessment of directions and, 25; sources of performance, 27–28
Inputs (Task Analysis Form), 89
Instructing for Results (Margolis and Bell), 109
Instructional design: advantages of, 9–13; definitions and terminology related to, 5, 8–9; description and ISD models of, 3–5; disadvantages of, 13–15; Do I Need Instructional Design quiz, 15; overview of the SME role in the, 165; as process for creating effective training, 1–2; providing an appropriate destination purpose of, 1; Seven Rules for Good Instructional Design tool for, 365; software packages for, 67, 92, 354–356; understanding the importance of, 2–3. *See also* Pre-instructional design activities; Rapid design shortcuts
Instructional design advantages: business integration, 12; competitive advantage, 12; consistency, 12–13; cost-effectiveness, 9–10; learning effectiveness, 11; time-effectiveness, 10–11; training effectiveness evaluation, 11–12
Instructional design disadvantages: overcoming the, 14–15; resources, 13–14
Instructional design theory, 2
Instructional designers (IDs): definition of, 8; Instructional

Designer's Pilot Observation Tool for, 274–276; responsibilities of, 362; senior, 362–363; supervising, 363–364
Instructional Designer's Pilot Observation Tool, 274–276
Instructional games: action learning through, 223; asynchronous e-learning activities and, 394–396; board games, 223; card games, 224; case studies, 218, 224; cash games, 224; computer game shells, 224; description and uses of, 175–176, 219, 222; experience-based learning, 224; framegames templates, 224; interactive storytelling, 224; kinesthetic learning devices, 224; magic tricks, 224; metaphorical simulation games, 224; puzzles, 224; rapid design shortcuts on, 224; read.me games, 224; role plays, 225; synchronous e-learning, 419; television games, 225; thought experiments, 225; tips on using, 222–223; video replay games, 225. *See also* Activities
Instructional plans: adding structure through the, 168–169; chunking the content, 178, 459–460; course maps as part of the, 169; creating a content roadmap, 169–170; expanded content outline as part of, 170–172; sequencing the content, 172–173; training activities added to the, 173–177
Instructional strategy (Formal Design Document Template), 148
Instructional Systems Design (ISD): Analysis, Design, Development, Implementation< and Evaluation phases of, 4; cyclic model of, 4; possible activities and outputs of, 6–7; spiderweb model of, 5; straight line model of, 4
Instructor Checklist, 291
Instructor Feedback Observation Form, 288–289
Instructor-led classroom implementation: Faculty Strategy Template, 290; Instructor Checklist, 291; Instructor Feedback Observation Form, 288–289; issues to consider for, 287; Self-Instruction Facilitator Checklist, 293; training the trainer for self instruction for, 291–293
Instructor-led classroom materials: development hints on activities, 249–250; development of print, 250–251; development of role plays for, 251–252; flip charts, 250, 299; hints on designing computer projections, 249; hints on development of, 247–253; ideas on graphics, 248; on-the-job training (job aids), 252–253; An Overhead Development Checklist on, 247–248
Instructor-led classrooms: Classroom Training Checklist for deciding to use, 111; Classroom Training Checklist to decide on, 111; delivery of training through, 109, 110, 111, 126; description of, 109; as end product of development, 204; hints on designing, 196; hints on developing material for, 247–253; hints on evaluating, 344; implementation issues for, 282–283; implementation needs for, 287–298; learning outcomes of, 110; logistical items to discuss during introduction in a, 299; making presentations in a, 299–300; T-3 ("train the trainer") for, 284–287. *See also* Facilitators; On-the-job training (OJT)
Instructors: definition of, 5; Instructor Checklist for, 291; Instructor Feedback Observation Form for, 288–289
Instruments: E-Learning Level 1 Evaluation Instrument, 321–324; Level 3 Evaluation Instrument for Managers, 329–330; to measure self-direction (self-efficacy), 381; Net-based survey, 70; Reaction Instrument 1, 318; Reaction Instrument 2, 318; Reaction Instrument 3, 319; Reaction Instrument 4, 319–320; for separating training issues performance issues, 36–38; supplies list on needed, 227–228; Transfer to Job Instrument 1, 326–327; Transfer to Job Instrument 2, 327; Transfer to Job Instrument 3, 328
Instruments for activities, 219
Interactions: asynchronous e-learning, 394–396; chat rooms, 431–432; continuous synchronous e-learning, 430–432; Continuing Interaction Activity, 431–432; interactive storytelling, 224; Job Aid: Facilitating Virtual Interactions, 436; m-learning program, 460; message boards, 430–431; synchronous e-learning mini-, 414–415; Tips for Interacting Successfully Online form on, 442–443. *See also* E-learners
Interactive storytelling, 224
Internal summaries: description and purpose of, 225; types and forms of, 225–226
Internet movie database, 364
Interviews: activities that include, 219; advantages of using, 69; assessing training needs using, 33–36; last question to ask during the, 69; one-on-one, 68; phone, 68–69; post-training, 326; rapid design shortcut for, 68; for trainee (audience) analysis, 93
Introduction (facilitator guide): on motivation, 214; overview to include in the, 212; purposes of an, 211; recommendations on, 211–212
"An Introduction to Competency Analysis and Modeling" (Marrelli), 99
Introductions: course activity on making, 174; facilitator guide, 211–212, 214; logistical items to discuss in a classroom, 299
Involvement. *See* Stakeholders
ISD Quality Review, 240–246

J

Job aids: hints on developing on-the-job training or, 252–253; Job Aid: Facilitating Virtual Interactions, 436; Job Aids: General Virtual Facilitator Skills, 435–436; An OJT Development Template, 253; Online Decision Job Aid, 450–451; Preparing To Be An Asynchronous E-Learner Job Aid, 383; rapid design shortcuts on developing, 252–253; for selecting media for training materials, 239–240; 70 percent rule on, 253–254

Job Aids activity, 220

Job analysis: Analysis Job Aid on characteristics of, 103; comparing competency analysis to task and, 100–102; data collection during a, 88; doing a, 78–79; form to combine criticality and, 83–84; Job Analysis Template (extended version), 102; Job Analysis Template (simple version), 81; job task characteristics and action verbs, 74; primary purpose of a, 74; product of a, 79–80; rapid design shortcut for, 81; videotaping SME for a rapid design shortcut, 87

Job Analysis Template (extended version), 102

Job Analysis Template (simple version), 81

Job performance aids: delivery of training through, 109, 110; Job Performance Aids Checklist for deciding on, 113; training delivered through, 109, 110

Job tasks: action verbs used to describe, 74–77; characteristics of, 74; questions to determine task criticality of, 82–83

K

Kearsley, G., 47

Kinesthetic learning devices, 224

King, B., 259

Kirkpatrick, D., 312

KISS principle, 377

Knowledge. *See* Skills, knowledge, and attitudes (KSAs)

Knowles, M., 287

L

Laboratory activity, 220

Leading Organizational Change (Holton), 20–21

Learner guides: asynchronous e-learning, 393–394; synchronous e-learning, 422–423

Learners: disadvantages of synchronous e-learning for the, 413; motivation of, 26, 31–32, 214, 371, 382; self-direction (self-efficacy) of, 382–384. *See also* E-learners

Learning: action, 223; adult learning theory on, 287; evaluation level 2 on skills and knowledge mastery and, 324–325; experience-based, 224; informal, 469–471; learning objects or object-oriented, 357–359; mobile (m-learning), 457–461; PBL (problem-based learning), 361; peer-to-peer, 466; preparing and motivating e-learners for, 382–384; self-direction (self-efficacy), 292, 380–384, 471; social network-based, 463–466. *See also* E-learning

Learning analysis: Analysis Job Aid on characteristics of, 104; description of, 74, 90–91; Learning Analysis Template, 91

Learning centers: computer training center form of, 302; hints on implementation of self-instruction, 302; implementation of delivery through, 283–284; Operating a Learning Center form on, 303–306; self-instruction delivered through, 121; training center form of, 302

Learning content management systems (LCMS): distinguishing between LMS and, 374–375; understanding advantages of, 361–362

Learning effectiveness, as instructional design advantage, 11

Learning interfaces: asynchronous e-learning considerations for, 399; importance to asynchronous e-learning design, 398–399

"Learning Management Systems" (Brockbank), 378

Learning management systems (LMS): asynchronous e-learning technology required to support, 378; comparing, virtual learning environments (VLEs) and, 463; design considerations of, 376–377; distinguishing between LCMS and, 374–375; as important aspect of work environment, 374; KISS principle as key to effective use of a, 377; sample program design using, 376; understanding advantages of, 361–362

Learning needs analysis, 103. *See also* Organizational needs

Learning objects (object-oriented learning), 357–358

Learning portal, 466–467

Lectora software, 400

Lecture activity, 220

Lecturette activity, 220

Lessons from the Cyberspace Classroom (Palloff and Pratt), 413

Level 3 Evaluation Instrument for Managers (form), 329–330

Linear video training: delivery decision criteria for, 125; description of, 125

Links: description and purpose of the, 156; design document on details of the, 156; management overview, 160; sales force training, 161; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 160–161; train-the-trainer training, 160

Listening Team activity, 220

Live and Online (Hoffmann), 416

Logistical delivery constraints, 117

Lost production costs, 48

Lost productivity cost, 10

M

M-learning. *See* Mobile learning (m-learning)
Magic tricks games, 224
Management, training needs assessment questions for, 34
Management overview link, 160
Managers, training needs assessment template for, 36
Mantyla, K., 109, 202, 369
Margolis, F., 109
Marketing/communication plan, 296–298
Marrelli, A., 24–25, 99
Massive open online courses. *See* MOOCs (massive open online courses)
Mastering the Instructional Design Process (Rothwell), 92
Matching test format: designing a, 188–189; Test Question Critiquing List form on, 194–195
Materials. *See* Training materials
Media: Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 256–257; Course Materials Reference List on different types of, 240; ISD Quality Review of both vendor and in-house programs for, 240–246; rapid design shortcut on finishing development of, 242; Sample of a Job Aid for Selecting Media form on, 239; synchronous e-learning, 425–430
Media Formats (synchronous e-learning), 426
Mental Imagery activity, 220
Mentoring: delivery decision criteria for, 127; training done in the context of, 121
Message boards, 430–431
Metaphorical simulation games, 224
Michael Allen's Guide to e-Learning (Allen), 394
Microsoft, 473
Mini-Case activity, 220
Mini-interactions (synchronous e-learning), 414–415
Missing Panel activity, 220
Mobile learning (m-learning): advantages and disadvantages of, 457–458; ASTD mobile learning certificate program on, 457; chunking information for, 459–460; description and growth of, 457; hardware and security issues of, 459; ideas for making it work, 460–461; in-house versus vendor designed, 458–459; rapid design shortcuts for, 460
The Modern Practice of Adult Education (Knowles), 287
Monitoring plan (asynchronous e-learning), 385–387
Monologue Role Play activity, 221
MOOCs (massive open online courses): delivery system required for, 467; description of, 466; learning portal similarity to concept of, 466–467; organizational use of, 467
Motivation: facilitator guide introduction on, 214; of organization for asynchronous e-learning programs, 371; performance gap assessment of, 26; poor performance causes related to, 31–32; thoughts on increasing e-learner's, 382
MP3 player technology, 364
Multimedia program evaluation, 347
Multiple-choice test format: designing a, 186–187; Test Question Critiquing List form on, 194

N

Needs analysis, 18
Needs assessment, 18. *See also* Organizational needs assessment
Needs assessment report: description and purpose of, 42–43; training needs analysis report for call center employees, 43–44; training needs assessment report, 44–47
Net-based survey instruments, 70
New design applications: the cloud, 471–473; COPs (communities of practices), 468–469; flipped classrooms, 453–457; informal learning, 469–471; mobile learning, 457–461; MOOCS (massive open online courses), 466–467; social network-based learning, 463–466; virtual learning environments (VLEs), 461–463. *See also* Design; Training
Newstrom, J., 222

O

Objective Checklist (form), 184
Objective levels: first-level, 139; second-level, 139; third-level, 139–140
Objective uses: to ensure that the training content is complete, 129; example of consequences of poorly defined objectives, 129–130; to give clear understanding of course expectations, 128; to help organize the course, 129; to provide description of what the course teaches, 129; summarizing the, 130
Objective writing: using behavioral verbs, 133–135; of first-and second-level objectives, 139; mistakes to avoid for, 130–133; review of your, 135, 140–141; standards and conditions criteria for good, 136–139; of third-level objectives, 139–140
Objective writing mistakes: to forget the second-and third-level objectives, 131–132; forgetting to write for the trainee, 133; incorrect time frames for objectives, 132–133; objectives versus goals, 130–131; picking the wrong behavioral verb, 136
Objectives : behavioral verbs used to write, 133–139; criterion-based test questions based on, 180–181; description of, 128; design document on the, 154; examples of both good and poorly constructed, 141–142; first-level, 139; mistakes made in writing, 130–133, 136; relate test questions to the, 179; second-level, 139; SMART and SMARTER, 142; SME reviews of the, 140–141; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 158; third-level, 139–140; uses or

Objectives *(continued)*
functions of, 128–130. *See also* Goals
Observations: disadvantages and advantages of, 71; gathering data through, 70–71; Observation Form, 72; as source of course content, 167–168; technological training for synchronous e-learning that includes, 437; for trainee (audience) analysis, 96
Off-the-shelf programs, 358
An OJT Development Template, 248
"On-the-Job Training" (Gallup), 109
On-the-job training (OJT): beta testing for, 266; delivery decision criteria for, 127; delivery of training using, 109, 110, 111, 127; as end product of development, 204; facilitator role taken by trainers of, 8, 121; handouts versus pass-outs in, 215; hints on designing, 196–197; On-The-Job Training Checklist to decide on, 111; pilots for, 270; training of on-the-job (1:1) trainers, 293–294, 301. *See also* Instructor-led classrooms
One-on-One Discussion activity, 220
One-on-one interviews, 68
147 Practical Tips for Teaching Online Groups (Hanna), 446
Online Decision Job Aid, 450–451
Online learning: advantages of, 447–448; blended e-learning incorporated into, 369; designing for organizations, 449–450; disadvantages of, 448–449; Online Decision Job Aid, 450–451; overview of, 446–447. *See also* Synchronous e-learning
Online learning. *See* Synchronous e-learning
Operating a Learning Center (form), 303–306
Operations Department Final Checklist (form), 183–184
Opportunities. *See* Problems and opportunities
Organizational needs: choosing which need to address, 39; determining your, 18–19; the occasional designer consideration of, 19–21; validating a, 39–42; whom to talk to and what to ask to determine, 19. *See also* Learning needs analysis
Organizational needs assessment: comparing training needs analysis and, 54–55; how to conduct an, 21–23; by the HRD department on training, 21–23; performance-related, 23–33; rapid design shortcut for, 23; retro-assessment, 23; training-related, 33–38. *See also* Needs assessment
Organizational needs validation: needs consideration questions to ask for, 41; questions to ask yourself for, 40–41; Selection Criteria Worksheet for Level 4 Evaluation, 42; Subject-Matter Expert Selection Form for, 39–40
Organizational review, 280
Organizations: analysis of motivation for comprehensive e-learning strategy by, 371–372; creating e-learning vision for, 373; designing online learning for, 449–450; establishing policies and procedures for e-learning, 373–374; MOOCs (massive open online courses) use by, 467; performance assessment considerations of the, 24; poor performance causes related to, 31–32; preparing it for e-learning, 378–380; Questions To Consider When Analyzing Your Organization's Readiness For E-Learning, 372. *See also* Employees
Outputs, Task Analysis Form on, 89
"Outside Services for Converting Audio and Video to the Web" (Palazzolo), 359
An Overhead Development Checklist, 247–248

P

Palazzolo, M., 359
Palloff, R., 413
panel activity, 220
Participant packages: Checklist for Developing Print Material, 238; description and development of, 235–238; rapid design shortcut on developing, 239; self-instruction materials to include in the, 254
Pass-outs versus handouts, 215
Peer-to-peer learning, 466
Performance: assessing benefits of improved, 29; categories and causes of poor, 31–32; separating training issues from issues of, 36–38; sources of information on, 27–28
Performance & Instruction journal, 24
Performance analysis, 24
Performance assessment: on benefits of improved performance, 29; description and purpose of, 23–24; instrument separating training from performance issues, 36–38; organization, business processes, and individual aspects considered in, 24; other terminology used for, 24; performance data collection and measurement used for, 28–29; performance gap, 24–26, 33; performance interventions based on, 29–32; performance opportunity, 27–28; questions to ask during, 32–33
Performance checklists: description and purpose of, 182; Objective Checklist, 184; Operations Department Final Checklist, 183–184; Trainer Certification Checklist, 182–183
Performance gap: assessing, 24–26; interventions for, 29–32; questions for a quick analysis of, 33
Performance gap assessment: cause analysis following the, 26; description of, 24; examples and areas included in the, 24–26; steps in a quick approach to, 26; two main questions to ask during the, 26
Performance Improvement Maps (Sanders and Thiagi), 30
Performance interventions: categories and causes of poor performance categories of,

31–32; non-training, 30–31; for performance gap, 29–30; training's relationship to other, 32. *See also* Training
Performance opportunity assessment: description and example of, 27; sources of performance information used in, 27–28
Performance support: delivery decision criteria for computer-and noncomputer-based, 122–123; electronic performance support system (EPSS), 359–360, 364; performance support-based "training," 359–361; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 158
"Performance Support Systems and Job Aids" (Williams), 109
Phone interviews, 68–69
Pick, B., 9
Pictures or hard copies, 427–428
Pilot Observer Evaluation Sheet (form), 276–277
Pilot Participant Survey (form), 277–279
Pilot Presenter Evaluation (form), 279
Pilots: additional considerations for, 271–272; asynchronous e-learning, 399–400; Beta Test/Pilot Review Checklist, 272–273; betas versus, 269–270; description of, 269; Instructional Designer's Pilot Observation Tool, 274–276; for on-the-job training (OJT), 270; Pilot Observer Evaluation Sheet form on, 276–277; Pilot Participant Survey form on, 277–279; Pilot Presenter Evaluation form on, 279; for self-instructional programs, 270–271; summary of, 280. *See also* Beta tests
Piskurich, G. M., 109, 254, 284, 379, 440
"Playing the Stock Market" (Hartnett), 255
Policies & procedures (P&P) for e-learning, 373–374
Poor instructional design, consequences of, 3
Post-class activities: description and types of, 177; facilitator guide information on types of, 226–227; two reasons for including, 177
Post-tests: description and purpose of, 176; main disadvantages of, 176–177; two key issues for, 176
Post-training interviews, 326
PowerPoint: pointers for presentations made with, 299–300; synchronous e-learning, 426–427
Practice: Practice Exercises activity, 220; technological training for synchronous e-learning that includes, 437
Pratt, K., 413
Pre-activities: class, 209; trainee and supervisor, 209
Pre-class activities, 209
Pre-instructional activities, 174
Pre-instructional design activities: assessing training needs, 33–38; choosing needs to address, 39–42; considering organizational needs, 18–23; needs assessment report, 42–47; performance assessment, 23–33; quick and dirty cost/benefit analysis (CBA), 47–54; training needs analysis, 54–62. *See also* Instructional design
Pre-tests: description and functions of, 174–175; facilitator guide information on, 214–215; one possible disadvantage of, 175
Preparing Learners for e-Learning (Piskurich), 379
Preparing the Learner for Self-Directed Learning (Piskurich), 254
Preparing To Be An Asynchronous E-Learner Job Aid (form), 383
Pre/post activities: description and purpose of, 210; recommendations o, 210–211
Prerequisite learning: description of, 166; three different examples of, 166–167
Print materials: Checklist for Developing Print Material, 238; description of, 235–238; pre-work assignments to include as part of the, 342
Print materials development: Checklist for Developing Print Material, 238; hints on process of, 250–251; rapid design shortcut on, 239
Problem-based learning (PBL), 361
Problems and opportunities: design document on delivery and, 154; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 157
Procedures: description and purpose of, 217; facilitator guide on, 217; rapid design shortcut on gathering and using, 217
Procedures & policies (P&) for e-learning, 373–374
Processes (steps), Task Analysis Form on, 89
Productivity, cost of poor training as lost, 10
Program Analysis Template, 61–62
Program deployment plan, 294–296
Program development costs, 48
Programs: coaching, 127, 170–172; development costs of, 48; ISD Quality Review of both vendor and in-house, 240–246; off-the-shelf, 358; Program Analysis Template, 61–62; repurposing current ones into asynchronous e-learning, 401–403; revisions based on evaluation, 338–344. *See also* Courses; Development
Project scope: audience, 151; design document details on the, 150–153; goals, 150–151; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 156
Public courses, 358
Puzzles, 224

Q

Quality control manuals, as source of course content, 167
Question and Answer activity, 220
Question banks, 185
Questionnaires: advantages of, 70; description of, 69; disadvantages of, 69–70; Net-based survey instruments used for, 70; Store Manager Questionnaire, 335
Questions For E-learning System Development (form), 405–406

Questions (form), 191–192
Questions To Consider When Analyzing Your Organization's Readiness For E-Learning (form), 372
Quiz activity, 220

R

Rapid Analysis: Matching Solutions to Changing Situations (Brethower), 29
Rapid design shortcuts: asynchronous e-learning, 385, 394, 396, 397, 401; audience analysis, 98; communication/marketing plan, 298; computer/CD-ROM-based training development, 255; course descriptions, 162; creating series of tests at different levels to give to trainees, 195–196; development of job aids, 253; digital cameras, 362; evaluation, 314–315, 321, 325, 326, 332; expanded content outline, 170; flipped classrooms, 457; gathering content, 165–166, 168; general training delivery method, 109; instructional games, 224; interviewing two people at a time, 68; job analysis, 81; learning objects/granular training, 357–358; miscellaneous tips on, 364–365; mobile learning (m-learning), 460; net-based surveys, 70; on nice to know versus need to know, 228–229; off-the-shelf programs, 358; organizational assessment, 23; participant packages and other print materials, 239; performance support-based "training," 359–361; problem-based learning (PBL), 361; public courses, 358; rapid prototyping, 356–357; reviews, 281, 282; revisions, 340; sequencing content, 173; Seven Rules for Good Instructional Design tool for, 365; 70 percent rule on job aids, 253–254; situational design, 364–365; software packages, 67, 92, 354–356, 400–01, 460; subject-matter experts (SMEs), 165–166, 192–193, 255; synchronous e-learning, 410, 415, 417, 427, 428, 429, 430, 446; technology vendors, 358–359; training delivery method, 109; training management systems/learning management systems (LMS)/learning content management systems (LCMS), 361–362; training materials, 217; training needs assessment, 38; understanding what an ID does, 362–364; what to do to finish the media development, 247. *See also* Instructional design
Rapid prototyping: considerations for using, 357; description of, 356
"Rapid Prototyping" (Tripp), 255
RAT (readiness assurance test), 454–455
Reaction Instrument 1 (form), 318
Reaction Instrument 2 (form), 318
Reaction Instrument 3 (form), 319
Reaction Instrument 4 (form), 319–320
Readiness assurance test (RAT), 454–455
Reading assignments, preparing for activities by using, 221
Read.me games, 224
Reflection activity, 221
Repurposing: asynchronous e-learning, 401–403; synchronous e-learning, 415–416
"Repurposing Materials for e-learning" (Richardson), 401
Resources: delivery constraints related to, 117, 118; as instructional design disadvantage, 13–14; performance gap assessment of, 25
Retro-assessment of organizational needs, 23
Reviews: Beta Test/Pilot Review Checklist, 272–273; beta tests, 264–270, 280; Checklist for Reviewing Facilitator Guides or Trainer Manuals, 246–247; content, 280; design, 280; editorial, 280; facilitator guide, 229; importance of performing, 279; ISD Quality Review, 240–246; pilots, 269–279, 280; pre-implementation, 279–282; rapid design shortcuts for, 281, 282; by SMEs of task analysis, 87; by SMEs of the objectives, 140–141; by SMEs on self-instruction programs, 335; summary of the various types of, 280; training review e-mail on performing, 281–282; of written objectives, 135, 140–141
Revisions: as-needed, 338; assigned individual or teams to perform, 340–341; controlling the, 341–342; Course Maintenance Planning, 342; evaluation findings on needed, 338; information for, 339–340; other considerations for, 343; planned, 338–339; rapid design shortcuts for, 340
Rewards/incentives, performance gap assessment of, 25
Richardson, C., 401
ROI (return on investment): description of, 53; evaluation to establish, 312, 332–334, 386; training, 53–54
Role plays: hints on developing, 251–252; instructional games using, 225; types of activities using, 221
Role Reversal Role Play activity, 221
Root cause analysis, 26
Rosenberg, M., 370
Rossett, A., 23
Rothwell, B., 92
Rummler, G., 27
Running a Beta Test (form), 267
Ruyle, K., 47

S

Sales force training link, 161
Salray costs, 48
Sample Facilitator Guide, 205–206
Sample Program Design (asynchronous e-learning), 376
Sanders, E. S., 30
Satellite-based training: hints on designing, 202; hints on

development of, 260; hints on evaluation of, 349; Operating a Learning Center form on, 305–306
Scope of project. *See* Project scope
Scripts: asynchronous e-learning, 231–235, 391–392; computer/DVD-based training, 255; description of, 231; hints on developing, 231–232; video, 258. *See also* Storyboards
Second-level objectives, 139
Selecting Delivery Method by Project Constraints (form), 119
Selection Criteria Worksheet for Level 4 Evaluation, 42
A Self-Assessment of Personal Synchronous E-Learning Characteristics (form), 443
Self-Directed Learning (Piskurich), 109, 284
Self-Directed Learning Plan (asynchronous e-learning), 389
Self-direction (self-efficacy): as asynchronous e-learning issue, 380; as component of learning, 292; as e-learning issue, 380; E-Learning Self-Assessment, 384; enhancing learner, 380–382; informal learning as, 471; instruments for measuring, 381; Preparing To Be An Asynchronous E-Learner Job Aid to increase, 383
Self-Instruction Facilitator Checklist, 293
Self-instruction materials: to include in the participant manual, 254; including decision trees in the, 254
Self-instruction packages evaluation: on compliance, 337; on currency and required changes, 337; description of, 334; on effectiveness, 337–338; level 1 (trainee reaction), 321; Store Manager Questionnaire, 335; of sufficiency, 335; Survey on Self-Instructional Packages, 336–337; of usability, 336
Self-instruction programs: assessing the sufficiency of, 329; beta testing of, 266–267; Conducting a Distributed Self-Instructional Implementation form on, 302–303; delivery decision criteria for paper self-paced, 125; distributed delivery of, 284; e-learning issues for, 380–382; electronic (distributed) form of, 121; as end product of development, 204; evaluation level 1 (trainee reaction) of, 321, 334–338; hints on designing, 197–198; hints on evaluating, 345–346; implementation issues for, 283–284, 302–306; learning centers delivery of, 121, 283–284, 302; Operating a Learning Center form on, 303–306; pilots for, 270–271; as possible delivery constraint issue, 119–120; Self-Instruction Checklist to decide on, 112; SME review and feedback on, 335; training through, 109, 110
Selling e-Learning (Hartley), 379
Senior instructional designers, 362–363
Sequencing content: description of, 172–173; rapid design shortcut for, 173; strategies for, 173; of training activities, 173–177
Seven Rules for Good Instructional Design tool, 365
70 percent rule on job aids, 253–254
Shrock, S. A., 179
Simple Design Document Template, 145
Simple Two-Column Storyboard (form), 232–233
Simulation Role Play activity, 221
Singh, H., 430
Situational design, 364–365
Skills, knowledge, and attitudes (KSAs): learning analysis on, 74, 90–91; performance gap assessment of, 25; poor performance causes related to deficit, 31–32; Task Analysis Form on, 89. *See also* Evaluation
Skit Role Play activity, 221
SMART objectives, 142
SMARTER objectives, 142
Social network-based learning: characteristics of, 463–464; description of, 463; hints for designing, 464–466; peer-to-peer learning form of, 466
Software packages: analysis software, 355; asynchronous e-learning authoring systems, 400–401; authoring systems, 400; *Designer's Edge* (Allen Communication), 67, 92; miscellaneous, 356; mobile learning (m-learning) support through, 460; overview of instructional design, 354–355; repurposing, 401–403; test development software, 355–356; ToolBook software, 400. *See also* Tools and equipment
Sound (synchronous e-learning), 428
Stakeholders: delivery constraints related to, 117–118; design document on who is involved as, 154–155; retro-assessment of organizational needs and role of, 23; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 158
Standardized certification tests, 167
Standards: objectives on adherence to, 136–137; Task Analysis Form on, 89
Steps. *See* Processes (steps)
Stolovich, H., 260
Stoneall, L., 250
Store Manager Questionnaire (form), 335
Storyboards: asynchronous e-learning, 231–235, 391–392; computer/DVD-based training, 255; description of, 232; Five Window E-Learning Storyboard form on, 235; Four-Column Storyboard Template, 235; items to include in the, 232; Simple Two-Column Storyboard form on, 232–233; Three-Column Storyboard for Technology-Based Storyboard form on, 233–234. *See also* Scripts
Storytelling (interactive), 224
Structure. *See* Instructional plans
Subject-matter experts (SMEs) : beta test role of, 264; blended-learning allowing learners to pose questions to, 368; checking for currency

Subject-matter experts (SMEs) *(continued)*
and accuracy tasks of, 340; conducting a task analysis by observing a, 84; definition of, 8–9; design document on who is involved as, 154–155; document-based consensus analysis by several, 168; as flipped classroom facilitator, 455–456; Formal Design Document Template on role of, 148; gathering content if you are the, 162; instructional design resources compared to training by, 13–14; instructional design role of the, 165; job analysis conducted by, 74–81; message board participation by, 430–431; online learning advantage that allows real-time access to, 447; phone interviews with, 68–69; prerequisite learning by, 166–167; rapid design shortcuts on effective use of, 165–166, 192–193, 255; review and feedback on self-instruction programs, 336; review of objectives by, 140–141; selecting for content gathering, 162–163; "SME-based training" by, 13; Subject-Matter Expert Selection Form for, 39–40; synchronous e-learning chats that include, 417; synchronous e-learning learn guides role of, 423; synchronous e-learning taught by, 410; task analysis review by, 87; task or job analysis by videotaping, 87; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 158; training by documentation method used by, 110; training of on-the-job (1:1) trainers who are, 293–294; working with your, 163–164
Summaries: description and purpose of, 177; examples of different types of, 177
Supervising instructional designers, 363–364
Supervisors' pre-activities, 209–210
Supplies list: description of, 227; example for SS 100: Principles of Supervision course, 227–228
Survey on Self-Instructional Packages (form), 336–337
Surveys: advantages of using, 70; description of, 69; disadvantages of using, 69–70; Net-based instruments for conducting, 70; rapid design shortcut for, 70; Survey on Self-Instructional Packages, 336–337; for trainee (audience) analysis, 95
Sustaining Distance Training (Berge), 434
Synchronous Class Initiation Checklist, 444–446
"Synchronous Collaboration" (Singh), 430
Synchronous e-learning: activities and chats to design into, 416–419; advantages of, 409–410; definition of online learning or, 409; delivery decision criteria for, 124; description of, 409; design considerations for, 413–414; disadvantages and misconceptions of, 410–413; Facilitator Guide Template for, 420; facilitator guides, 419–422; general technology considerations of, 423–425; graphics used for, 428; hints on designing, 200–202; implementation of, 434–446; learner guides, 422–423; learner training for, 440–443; media issues of, 425–430; need to develop mini-interactions as part of, 414–415; other thoughts and hints on, 452; rapid design shortcuts for, 410, 415, 417, 427, 428, 429, 430, 446; repurposing and redesigning, 415–416; simple form of, 201–202; trainee (audience) analysis, 432–434; what the learners say about, 451–452. *See also* Asynchronous e-learning; E-learning; Online learning
Synchronous e-learning implementation: facilitator training, 434–440; learner training, 440–443; Preparing to Be a Synchronous e-Learner form, 441–442; A Self-Assessment of Personal Synchronous E-Learning Characteristics form, 443; Synchronous Class Initiation Checklist for, 444–446; Tips for Interacting Successfully Online, 442–443
Synchronous e-learning media: Media Formats form on, 426; overview of, 425–426; PowerPoint, 426–427
Systematic Design of Instruction (Dick and Carey), 2

T

T-3 ("train the trainer"): Basic Classroom Facilitation Outline for, 285–287; description and purpose of, 284–285; rapid design shortcuts on, 287
Target audience design principle, 2
Task analysis: Analysis Job Aid on characteristics of, 104; comparing competency analysis to job and, 100–102; data collection during a, 88; data gathering for, 86; depth of, 85–86; description of, 74, 84; example of tire building tasks, 85; have a SME review the, 87; rapid design shortcut by observing an SME at work, 84; Task Analysis Form for, 86–87, 88–89; videotaping SME for a rapid design shortcut, 87
Tasks. *See* Job tasks
Technical manuals, as source of course content, 167
Technical Training (Schriver), 48
Technology-based training (TBT): delivery of training through, 109, 110; as end product of development, 204–205; hints on designing, 197–202; hints on evaluating, 351; performance support, 122; satellite-based training and other telephonic formats, 202, 260, 305–306, 349; self-instruction distributed through, 121; for synchronous e-learning facilitators, 437; Technology-Based Training Checklist to decide on, 112. *See also* Computer/CD-ROM-based

training; Computer/DVD (multimedia) programs; E-learning
Technology vendors: description and advantages of using, 358–359; general questions to ask your, 359
Telephonic course formats: hints on designing, 202; hints on development of, 260
Television games, 225
Templates: for asynchronous e-learning storyboard, 392–393; Audience Analysis, 95; Complex Design Document, 145–147; Content Roadmap, 170; Course Descriptions, 161–162; Design Document, 143–144; Facilitator Guide (synchronous e-learning), 420; Faculty Strategy, 290; Formal Design Document, 147–150; Four-Column Storyboard, 235; framegames, 224; Job Analysis (extended version), 102; Job Analysis (simple version), 81; Learning Analysis, 91; An OJT Development, 253; Program Analysis, 61–62; Simple Design Document, 145; Training Needs Analysis, 56–57; Training Needs Assessment for Managers, 36; Training Needs Assessment Report, 44–45; Training Tasks Analysis, 90. *See also* Checklists; Forms
Test Construction for Training Evaluation (Denova), 185, 226
Test development software, 355–356
Test formats: completion, 189–190, 195; Designing in Various Testing Formats form on, 186–190; essay, 190, 195; matching, 188–189, 194–195; multiple-choice, 186–187, 194; Questions form on examples of different types of, 191–192; true/false, 187–188, 193–194
Test Question Critiquing List (form), 193–195
Test questions: completion, 189–190; creating question banks for, 185; criterion-based testing, 180–181; Designing in Various Testing Formats form, 186–190; essay, 190; matching, 188–189; multiple-choice, 186–187; Questions form on examples of different types of, 191–192; rapid design shortcuts on creating, 192–193, 195–196; Test Question Critiquing List form, 193–195; thoughts on development of, 185–186; true/false, 187–188; writing fair, 179
Testing: beta, 264–268; criterion-based, 179–182; Designing in Various Testing Formats form on designing, 186–190; embedded tests, 176; performance checklist or criterion checklist, 182; post-tests, 176–177; pre-tests, 174–175, 214–215; rapid design shortcut on creating different levels of, 195–196; standardized certification tests, 167; training activities revolving around, 176. *See also* Activities
Thiagarajan, S. ("Thiagi"), 30, 175, 223
Third-level objective levels, 139–140
Thought experiments, 225
Three-Column Storyboard for Technology-Based Storyboard (form), 233–234
The Three R's of ROI (Ruyle), 47
Time cost calculations, 49
Time issues: design time/milestones, 151–152, 156; of planned revisions, 339; time-effectiveness as an instructional design advantage, 10–11; training time, 154, 157
Tips for Interacting Successfully Online (form), 442–443
ToolBook software, 400
Tools and equipment: for computer-aided analysis, 103; hard costs of, 49; Instructional Designer's Pilot Observation Tool, 274–276; performance gap assessment of, 25; Seven Rules for Good Instructional Design tool, 365; supplies list on needed, 227–228; Task Analysis Form on, 89. *See also* Software packages
Top Audience Characteristics (form), 97–98
Topical outlines: design document on the, 155; example of a, 155; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 159
Train-the-trainer training link, 160
Trainee (audience) analysis: additional data to consider for, 96–97; Analysis Job Aid on characteristics of, 104; asynchronous e-learning, 390; Audience Analysis Questions (For Mangers/Initiators), 94; Audience Analysis Report, 98; Audience Analysis Template, 95; data-gathering methods for a, 92–93, 95–96; description of, 74, 92; literacy as key issue in, 98–99; rapid design shortcut for, 98; synchronous e-learning, 432–434; Top Audience Characteristics form, 97–98
Trainee-centered activities. *See* Activities
Trainee evaluation: criterion-based testing used for, 179–182; issues to consider for, 178; performance checklist or criterion checklist for, 182–184; question banks for, 185; relate test questions to objectives for, 179
Trainees: evaluation level 1 on reaction to the course by, 315–324; pre-activities for supervisor and, 209–210; thoughts on preparing and motivating e-learners among, 382–384; trainee (audience) analysis of, 74, 92–99, 104; travel costs for, 49, 51–52
Trainer Certification Checklist, 182–183
Trainers: facilitator of on-the-job training (OJT) role taken by, 8, 121; mentoring role that can be taken by, 121; T-3 ("train the trainer"), 284–287; training on-the-job (1:1), 293–294; travel costs for, 49, 51–52. *See also* Facilitators

Training: granular, 357–358; lost productivity cost of poor, 10; mentoring role that can be part of, 121; of on-the-job (1:1) trainers, 293–294; organizational needs assessment conducted by the HRD department, 21–23; performance support-based, 359–361; relationship to other performance interventions, 32; separating performance issues from issues of, 36–38; "SME-based," 13; synchronous e-learning facilitators, 434–440. *See also* Courses; New design applications; Performance interventions
Training activities: instructional games, 175–176; introductions, 174; post-class, 177; pre-instructional, 174; pre-tests, 174–175; sequencing the course, 173–177; summaries, 177; testing, 176; trainee-centered, 175
Training benefits: calculating, 52; other associated, 52–53; ROI (return on investment), 53–54
Training by documentation: delivery of training using, 110; learning outcomes of, 110
Training centers, 302
Training costs: average for training resources and time for development, 50–52; items to consider when calculating, 49–50; travel-related, 49, 51–52. *See also* Cost/benefit analysis (CBA)
Training effectiveness evaluation, 11–12
Training links: management overview, 160; sales force training, 161; train-the-trainer training, 160
Training management systems, 361–362
Training materials: Course Materials Reference List for, 240; design document on the, 154; facilitator guide, 205–231; handouts versus pass-outs, 215–216; hints on developing, 247–261; job aid for selecting media for, 239–240; participant packages and other print, 235–239; rapid design shortcut on procedures for, 217; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 158
Training materials development hints: Checklist for DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 256–257; computer/DVD-based training, 255; E-Learning Design Hints, 259–260; hints on Better DVD (Multimedia) Program Development, 257–259; instructor-led classroom, 247–252; on-the-job training (job aids), 252–253; scripts, 255; self-instruction, 254; storyboards, 256; Video Production Checklist, 261; Video Shot List/LOG, 261
Training methods: delivery constraints related to, 117, 118; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 157
Training needs analysis: comparing needs assessment and, 54–56; Complex Training Analysis Document for more complete, 57–61; template for, 56–57
Training needs analysis report: fast training needs analysis, 46; final recommendations from your, 44; for call center employees, 43–44; outline template for a, 44–45; reporting your findings from the, 47; Training Needs Assessment Report, 45–46
Training Needs Analysis Template, 56–57
Training needs assessment: choosing which needs to address, 39–42; conducting the, 33–38; questions for individual contributors to training, 35; questions for management for, 340; reporting your findings from the, 47; training needs analysis report on the, 43–46
Training Needs Assessment for Managers Template, 36
Training Needs Assessment Report Template, 44–45
Training Tasks Analysis Template, 90
Training time: design document on delivery and, 154; Team Production Process Design Document example on, 157
Transfer to Job Instrument 1 (form), 326–327
Transfer to Job Instrument 2 (form), 327
Transfer to Job Instrument 3 (form), 328
Transforming Organizations Through Human Performance Technology (Rummler), 27
Travel-related training expenses, 49, 51–52
Triads Role Play activity, 221
Tripp, S. D., 255
True/false test format: designing a, 187–188; Test Question Critiquing List form on, 193–194
2013 States of the Industry Report (ASTD), 3

V

Video materials: synchronous e-learning, 429; Video Production Checklist on, 261; video replay games, 225; Video Shot List/Log form on, 261; writing scripts for, 258
Virtual Facilitator Self-Assessment (form), 438–440
Virtual learning environments (VLEs): Blackboard and Moodle's Web 2.0 personas of, 461; caution to not use COP as a, 469; comparing LMSs (learning management systems) and, 463; definition of, 461; functionalities and learning advantages of, 461–462

W

Web-Based Training: Using Technology to Design Adult Learning Experiences (Driscoll), 396, 461
Web-Based Training Cookbook (Hall), 200
Web-Based Training Layout (asynchronous e-learning), 391

Web pages (content), 429–430
"What Is Your Problems?: Seven Steps to Analyze and Define Performance Problems" (Marrelli), 24–25
"What's in It for Me?" (WII-FM), 214
Whiteboards, 427
WII-FM ("What's in It for Me?"), 214, 402
Williams, S. W., 109, 431
Worksheets, Selection Criteria Worksheet for Level 4 Evaluation, 42
Write Successful Video Scripts (*Info-Line*), 255

Y

Your Twenty Questions For E-learning Checklist, 406–407

Z

Zemke, R., 64

WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

Go to www.wiley.com/go/eula to access Wiley’s ebook EULA.